Step Ahead Series

Together to a bright future

CONNECT PLUS 4

Second Term



Name : ....

School : ....

Grade : ....

Class : ....

Teacher's name : ....

Contents



Theme (3)
My society

Unit 7

All around the world
حول العالم

Kaieteur Falls, Guyana

In this unit I will ....

- understand environments around the world.
- learn about renewable and non-renewable energy.
- form and use the present continuous.
- read about different energy sources.
- understand the meaning of words in context.
- compare and order high numbers.
- talk about how to help the environment.
- make a competition entry to improve our environment.

Objectives

Vocabulary	**Environments around the world:** coastal, desert, mountainous, polar, rainforest, rural, urban **A clean world:** air pollution, carbon dioxide, climate change, emissions, fuel, water pollution **Renewable and non-renewable energy:** generate, geothermal energy, hydroelectricity, kilowatt, solar energy, store, tidal energy, tide, waterwheels, wind turbines
Language	- Today we're talking about pollution. - What are we doing to stop it? - Scientists are finding new ways to travel and to use fuels. - Context as clue to the meaning of a new word or phrase
Reading	Descriptions of environments; a scientific report about energy sources; a text about how our environment allows different energy sources
Writing	A report about hydroelectricity at the High Dam
Speaking	Talking about changes we can make to help the planet
Listening	A podcast about ways to reduce pollution; a conversation about how to help the environment
Life skills	**Problem solving, accountability:** the importance of helping the environment
Values	**Appreciation of science** **Respect for the environment**
Issues and challenges	**Citizenship** **Environmental responsibility**
Integrated cross-curriculum topics	**Math:** comparing and ordering high numbers



Lesson 1 Our world

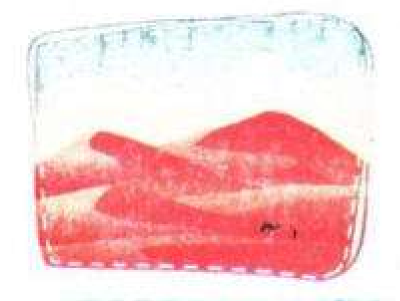
Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس






environments	coastal	mountainous	polar
بيئات	ساحلية	جبلية	قطبية






rural	urban	desert	rainforest
ريفية	مدنية - حَضَرية	صحراوية	غابة مطيرة

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

places	أماكن	sparsely populated	قليلة السكان
temperature	درجة الحرارة	densely populated	كثيفة السكان
weather	طقس	continent	قارة
the Arctic	القطب الشمالي	metropolitan area	منطقة العاصمة - منطقة حضرية
the Antarctic	القطب الجنوبي	traffic	المرور - الازدحام المروري

forest	غابة	reptiles	زواحف
swamps	مستنقعات	mammals	الثدييات
land	أرض	insects	حشرات
special ways	طرق خاصة	survive	يبقى على قيد الحياة

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
learn	يتعلم	learned (learnt)	look	ينظر	looked
form	يُكَوِّن - يُشَكِّل	formed	check	يفحص - يتفقَّد	checked
order	يُرَتِّب - يأمر - يطلب	ordered	use	يستخدم - يستعمل	used
talk	يتحدث - يتكلم	talked	compare	يقارن	compared
help	يساعد	helped	improve	يُحسِّن - يُطَوِّر	improved
visit	يزور	visited	describe	يَصِف	described
cover	يُغَطِّي	covered	live	يعيش	lived
listen	يستمع	listened	survive	ينجو	survived
rain	تُمطِر	rained	change	يُغَيِّر - يتغيَّر	changed
travel	يسافر	traveled	breathe	يتنفَّس	breathed

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
read	يقرأ	read	can	يستطيع	could
understand	يفهم	understood	find	يَجِد	found
make	يصنع - يجعل	made	write	يكتب	wrote
see	يرى	saw	get	يحصل على	got
think	يعتقد - يفكر	thought	choose	يختار	chose
do	يفعل	did	have to	يضطر أن - يجب أن	had to

Did you know? هل تعلم؟

The Amazon covers 40% of South America and is the world's largest rainforest. The second largest is the Congo in Africa.

تغطي غابات الأمازون حوالي 40٪ من قارة أمريكا الجنوبية، وهي أكبر غابة مطيرة في العالم، وثاني أكبر غابة مطيرة في العالم هي غابة الكونغو في أفريقيا.

Did you know? هل تعلم؟



It is harder to get enough oxygen when you breathe at the top of a high mountain. If you aren't used to being in the mountains, it can make you sick!

من الصعب أن تحصل على أكسجين كافٍ عندما تتنفس على قمة جبلٍ عالٍ. إذا لم تكن معتادًا على التواجدُ على الجبال، فمن الممكن أن تمرض!

Read and learn

There are different environments in our world

1. Rainforest environment



There are lots of trees, plants, and flowers here. Lots of animals live in these places. For example, there are insects, birds, reptiles ❶, and mammals ❷. It often rains and the temperature ❸ is hot.

2. Coastal environment



This environment is where the land is next to the sea. In some places there are beaches with sand, and sometimes there are swamps ❹ and forests. The Nile Delta is an example, and so is the Red Sea.

3. Desert environment



It is very dry in this environment. The animals and plants that live here have to find clever ways to survive ❺ without a lot of water. You can find these environments on every continent ❻, and they can be hot or cold.

4. Rural environment



There aren't many houses or buildings here, so this place often has more animals and plants. Not many people live here, so it is sparsely populated ❼. It can have lots of different kinds of weather, but it's a quiet place to live.

❶ زواحف ❷ ثدييات ❸ درجة الحرارة ❹ مستنقعات

❺ تبقي على قيد الحياة ❻ قارة ❼ قليلة السكان

5. Polar environment

There are two of these environments in the world: the Arctic ❽ and the Antarctic ❾. It is cold and windy here, with a lot of ice. Some animals have found ways to live here, but there aren't any trees or flowers.



6. Urban environment

This is a metropolitan area ❿ which is densely populated ⓫. Most people in the world live in this kind of environment. There are lots of buildings, and there can be a lot of traffic, too.



7. Mountainous environment

It can be difficult for people to live and travel in this high environment. They are very beautiful places, but they can be cold, with lots of rain or snow, and the weather can change quickly. The animals and plants that live here have to find special ways ⓬ to survive.



❽ القطب الشمالي ❾ القطب الجنوبي

❿ منطقة العاصمة ⓫ كثيفة السكان ⓬ طرق خاصة

Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

sparsely - densely - buildings - metropolitan

The urban environment is a ❶ .... area. It is ❷ .... populated. Most people in the world live in this kind of environment. There are lots of ❸ ...., and there can be a lot of traffic, too.

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

Arctic - survive - continent - environment

It is very dry in this ❶ .... The animals and plants that live here have to find clever ways to ❷ .... without a lot of water. You can find these environments on every ❸ ...., and they can be hot or cold.

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

coastal - desert - environments - urban

Ehab : What are you doing, Fady?

Fady : I'm reading a book about different ❶ ....

Ehab : What's your favorite environment?

Fady : The ❷ .... environment.

Ehab : Why?

Fady : Because there are lots of buildings, clubs, parks and other interesting places. What about you?

Ehab : I like the ❸ .... environment.

Fady : Why?

Ehab : Because I like living next to the sea.

4 Choose the correct answer:

1. Lots of trees, plants, flowers and animals live in the (urban - polar - rainforest) environment.
2. The (rural - mountainous - desert) environment is a very high environment.
3. In the (coastal - rainforest - desert) environment, the land is next to the sea.

4. In the (urban - rural - polar) environment, there are lots of buildings, and there can be a lot of traffic, too.
5. It's very dry in the (rural - polar - desert) environment.
6. The Arctic and the Antarctic are (coastal - rainforest - polar) environments.
7. The (desert - urban - rural) environment often has a lot of animals and plants.
8. Africa is the (country - continent - city) where we live.
9. The desert environment is (sparsely populated - densely populated - full of people).
10. There are (traffic - ice - swamps) in the coastal environments.
11. Lots of animals have to find clever ways to (die - run - survive) in the polar and desert environments.
12. Cairo is a (sparsely populated - densely populated - not populated) city.

5 Read the following text and answer the questions below:

There are lots of trees, plants, and flowers in the rainforest environment. Lots of animals live in these places. For example, there are insects, birds, reptiles, and mammals. It often rains and the temperature is hot.

The coastal environment is where the land is next to the sea. In some places there are beaches with sand, and sometimes there are swamps and forests. The Nile Delta is an example, and so is the Red Sea.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Sometimes there are beaches with sand in the (rainforest - polar - coastal) environment.
2. Trees, plants and flowers grow when there's a lot of (rain - wind - storm).

B Answer these questions:

3. Where can we find the coastal environment?
▶ ....
4. What's the weather like in the rainforest environment?
▶ ....

6 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. environment - often - It - rainforest - rains - in the.
   ▶ ....
2. is - The - populated - rural - sparsely - environment.
   ▶ ....
3. environment - do - in - What - live - you?
   ▶ .... ?
4. in - very - It - is - desert - dry - the.
   ▶ ....
5. be - Deserts - hot - can - cold - or.
   ▶ ....
6. urban - densely - The - is - populated - environment.
   ▶ ....

7 Write a paragraph of (40) words using the following guiding elements:

"My environment"

▸ Ideas to help you:

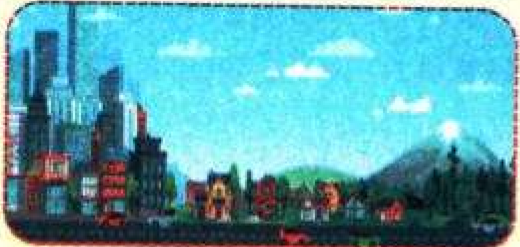
- *What kind of environment do you live in?*
- *What are the good and bad things about it?*
- *What kind of plants and animals are there in your environment?*







....
....
....
....
....
....





Lesson 2 Language

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



water pollution
تَلَوُّث المياه



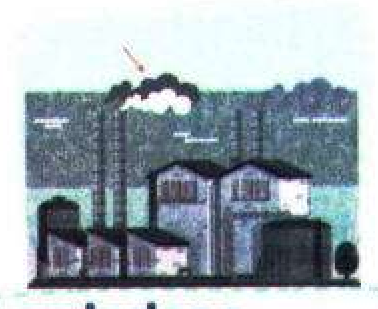
air pollution
تَلَوُّث الهواء



carbon dioxide
ثاني أكسيد الكربون (CO_2)



climate change
تَغَيُّر المناخ



emissions
انبعاثات



fuel
وقود

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

gas	غاز	**heat (n)**	حرارة
atmosphere	الغلاف الجوي - الجَو	**power**	طاقة - قوة
chemicals	مواد كيميائية	**factories**	مصانع
forest fires	حرائق الغابات	**volcanic eruptions**	انفجارات بركانية - ثورانات بركانية

dangerous	خطير	**scientists**	علماء
dirty	قذر - مُلَوَّث	**article**	مقالة - مقال
burn	يحرق	**podcast**	تدوين صوتي - بث صوتي
cause (v)	يُسَبِّب	**a long period of time**	فترة طويلة من الزمن

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
disappear	يختفي	disappeared	burn	يُحْرِق - يحترق - يشتعل	burned (burnt)
wait	ينتظر	waited	stop	يتوقَّف - يُوقِف	stopped
discover	يكتشف	discovered	try	يحاول	tried
collect	يجمع	collected	cause	يُسَبِّب	caused
pick up	يلتقط - يُمسِك	picked up	complete	يُكْمِل - يستكمل	completed

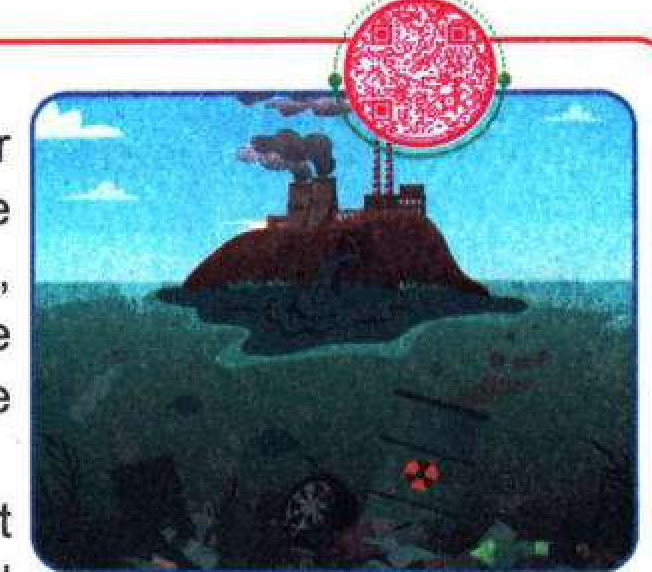
Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
put	يضع	put	wear	يرتدي - يلبس	wore
drive	يقود (مَرْكَبَة)	drove	ride	يركب	rode
throw ..... away	يرمي شيئًا - يتخلص من شيء	threw .... away	leave	يترك - يغادر	left

Definitions تعريفات SB Student's Book

water pollution	: when water is dirty because of chemicals or plastic
air pollution	: when the air is dirty; this can make people or animals sick
carbon dioxide	: a gas in the atmosphere known as CO_2. It can be dangerous when there is too much in the air
emissions	: these are made, for example, by factories, cars and lorries; they can cause air pollution
climate change	: when the weather and temperature change over a long period of time
fuel	: this is something we burn to make heat or power

Listening



Woman 1 : Hello, and welcome to our Clean World podcast ❶! We live in an amazing world, but the things that people do can damage ❷ the environment ❸.
Today we're talking about pollution - what is it, and what are we doing to stop it?

Woman 2 : There are two main types of pollution - air pollution ❹ and water pollution ❺. Air pollution is caused by the things that people do, such as driving cars and trucks, or making things in factories ❻.
When we burn fuels, it makes carbon dioxide emissions ❼. Over a long time, this can lead to ❽ climate change, because there is too much carbon dioxide in the atmosphere ❾. Things in the natural world, such as forest fires, or volcanic eruptions ❿, can also cause air pollution. Chemicals from factories or farms go into rivers or the sea to cause water pollution. There is also a problem with plastic pollution - there's a lot of plastic garbage ⓫ in rivers and oceans, and this is very bad for the animals that live there.

Woman 1 : Today, we know more about pollution than we used to, and we know how important it is to reduce ⓬ it. Scientists are finding new ways to travel and to use fuels. We can also change the things we do - for example, we can walk, cycle or use public transportation instead of ⓭ using cars. We also need to think about how we can use less plastic. Lots of people are trying to make our world a cleaner place!

❶ بث صوتي
❷ يُتلِف - يُدَمِّر
❸ البيئة
❹ تلوث الهواء
❺ تَلَوُّث المياه
❻ مصانع
❼ انبعاثات ثاني أكسيد الكربون
❽ يقود إلى
❾ الجو - الغلاف الجوي
❿ انفجارات بركانية
⓫ قمامة بلاستيكية
⓬ يُقَلِّل
⓭ بدلًا من



Did you know? هل تعلم؟

A plastic bottle can be in the sea for over 400 years before it disappears. It's important to recycle plastic, not throw it away!

يمكن للزجاجة البلاستيكية أن تبقى في البحر لأكثر من 400 عام قبل أن تختفي. لذا فمن المهم أن نعيد تدوير البلاستيك بدلاً من رميه.



Grammar Study

The present continuous tense
زمن المضارع المستمر



Affirmative الإثبات	Negative النفي	Interrogative الاستفهام
I → am playing	I → am not playing	Am → I playing ..... ?
He / She / It → is playing	He / She / It → isn't playing	Is → he playing ... ? / she playing .. ? / it playing ... ?
You / We / They → are playing	You / We / They → aren't playing	Are → you playing ... ? / we playing ..... ? / they playing ...?



Form: (am - is - are) + (v) فعل + ing   **يتكون من**

▶ Today, we're talking about pollution.

■ **We use it to express an action that's happening now.**

■ **يُستخدم للتعبير عن حدث يحدث الآن.**

▶ Scientists are finding new ways to travel and to use fuels.

■ **We sometimes use some words with present continuous.**

■ **أحيانًا ما تُستخدم كلمات معينة مع المضارع المستمر مثل:**



Keywords

now الآن	**at the moment** الآن - في الوقت الحالي	**Look** انظر
right now الآن - حاليًا	**today** اليوم	**Listen** استمع

Unit 7

▶ I'm reading English now.

▶ Look! He's running to school.

When verbs end in a single (e), omit the (e) letter before adding (ing).

عند إضافة (ing) إلى فعل منتهٍ بـ (e)، تُحْذَف الـ (e) قبل إضافة الـ (ing).

have → having	*write → writing*	*come → coming*
make → making	*ride → riding*	*drive → driving*
wave → waving	*wake → waking*	*shine → shining*

When verbs end in a consonant after a vowel, double the last consonant before adding (ing).

عندما يكون الفعل منتهيًا بحرفٍ ساكنٍ يسبقه حرف واحد متحرك قوي في النطق، نضاعف الحرف الأخير الساكن قبل إضافة الـ (ing).

run → running	*dig → digging*	*swim → swimming*
put → putting	*stop → stopping*	*cut → cutting*

In the negative form, we add (not) after (am - is - are).

عند النفي نضيف (not) بعد (am - is - are).

▶ He isn't driving an electric car. He's driving a gas car.

In the interrogative form, we use (am - is - are) at the beginning of the question or after the question word with the (v + ing).

عند عمل سؤال على المضارع المستمر، نبدأ السؤال بـ (am - is - are) أو نضع إحداها بعد كلمة الاستفهام مع (الفعل + ing).

- Are you reading now? ▶ Yes, I am.
- Is she listening to a podcast? ▶ No, she isn't.
- What are you doing now? ▶ I'm learning English.
- What's Hani doing? ▶ He's reading an article.

Exercises on Lesson 

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

reading - wearing - putting - picking

My name is Soha. I am on the beach today. I can see many people here. They are helping to stop pollution. They are ❶ .... up the garbage. The garbage can be dirty, so they are ❷ .... gloves. They are ❸ .... the plastic bottles in bags so they don't go into the sea.

2 Choose the correct answer: (Vocabulary)

1. (Water pollution - Air pollution - Climate change) happens when water is dirty because of chemicals or plastic.
2. (Carbon dioxide - Oxygen - Hydrogen) is a gas in the atmosphere known as CO_2.
3. (Air pollution - Climate change - Water pollution) happens when the weather and temperature change over a long period of time.
4. (Fuel - Pollution - Factories) is something we burn to make heat or power.
5. (Volcanic eruption - Air pollution - Water pollution) happens when the air is dirty. It can make people or animals sick.
6. They are (using - writing - cleaning) the beach because it is full of plastic bottles.
7. I like (walking - listening - watching) to podcasts.

3 Choose the correct answer: (Grammar)

1. I (am - is - are) eating my breakfast.
2. Aya (am - is - are) helping her mom.
3. They (am - is - are) playing computer games.
4. He (am - is - are) drawing a picture of a clean environment.

5. We (am - is - are) washing our dad's car.
6. Look, the cat (am - is - are) playing with the baby.
7. Today, we're (talk - talked - talking) about pollution.
8. What (happened - is happening - happen) now?
9. Lots of people are (trying - tried - try) to make our world a cleaner place.
10. What (has - is - does) she doing?
11. Look, that boy (is throwing - threw - throws) away garbage in the street.
12. Scientists are (found - find - finding) new ways to travel and to use fuels.
13. Listen, mom (called - calls - is calling).
14. What are you (do - doing - does), Ahmed?
15. (Are - Have - Do) they watching the match now?
16. It (is raining - rains - rained) at the moment.

4 Write sentences in the present continuous:



1. I - walk - to school
   ▶ ....
2. He - wait for - the bus
   ▶ ....
3. I - use - recycled plastic
   ▶ ....
4. We - learn - about climate change
   ▶ ....
5. They - drive - an electric car
   ▶ ....
6. Hana - watch - a TV program
   ▶ ....
7. I - read - an article about the environment
   ▶ ....
8. Tarek - listen - to a podcast
   ▶ ....

5 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. fuel - We - heat - make - to - burn.
   ▶ ....
2. dangerous - be - Carbon - can - dioxide.
   ▶ ....
3. today - Sarah - walking - school - to - is.
   ▶ ....
4. TV - watching - Hana - program - is - a.
   ▶ ....
5. bus - for - Adel - the - waiting - is. .
   ▶ ....
6. doing - you - now - are - What?
   ▶ .... ?
7. bags - She - collecting - is - plastic.
   ▶ ....
8. she - a - podcast - Is - listening - to?
   ▶ .... ?

6 Write an email of (40) words to your friend Manar:

▶ Tell her about the podcast you listened to yesterday. It was about pollution. Tell her how air pollution is dangerous, what causes air pollution, and how we can solve this problem. Your email address is malak@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is manar@school.com.

From:

To:

Subject:

....

....

....



Lesson 3 Energy around us

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



Renewable energies طاقات متجددة



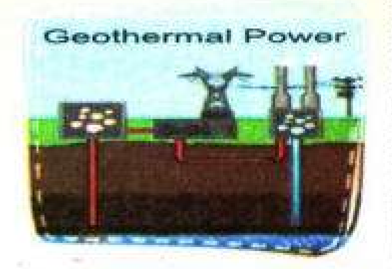
tidal energy
طاقة الأمواج



solar energy
الطاقة الشمسية



wind energy
طاقة الرياح



geothermal energy
الطاقة الحرارية المنبعثة من باطن الأرض

Non-renewable energies طاقات غير متجددة



fossil fuels
الوقود الحفري



coal
فحم



gas
غاز



oil
البترول

solar energy  uses → **solar panels**
ألواح شمسية



wind energy  uses → **wind turbines**
توربينات الرياح



tidal energy  uses → **wave turbines**
توربينات الماء



Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

natural resources	مصادر طبيعية	electricity	كهرباء
sources	مصادر	tide	المد والجذر
Earth	الكرة الأرضية	remains	بقايا
ground	أرض	movement	حركة

generate	يولد	is released	يُطلَق - يُبَث
store	يخزن	close to	بالقرب من
run out	يَنفذ	on the long run	على المدى البعيد

Definitions تعريفات (Student's Book)

turbine	: a machine to make energy
generate	: to make energy
store (v)	: to keep something for a period of time
tide	: when the level of the sea gets higher or lower

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
remain	يبقى - يظل	remained	generate	يُوَلِّد	generated
heat	يُسَخِّن	heated	store	يُخَزِّن	stored
need	يحتاج	needed	decide	يُقَرِّر	decided
guess	يُخَمِّن	guessed	circle	يضع دائرة حول (شيء)	circled
release	يُطْلِق - يُصْدِر	released	create	يُنْشِئ	created

Term 2

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
run out	يَنفد - ينتهي	ran out	keep	يُبقي - يحتفظ بـ	kept
go up	يرتفع - يعلو	went up	come from	يأتي من	came from
go down	ينخفض	went down	find	يجد	found

Tip!

Sometimes when we read a text, we find words which we don't understand. Look at the rest of the words in the sentence carefully. Can they help you understand the new words?

أحيانًا عندما نقرأ نص ، نجد كلمات لانفهمها. انظر إلى بقية الكلمات في الجملة بعناية. هل يمكن أن يساعدوك في فهم الكلمات الجديدة؟

Tip!

Look at how a new word is used in a sentence and decide if it is a verb or a noun. This helps you guess the meaning of new words.

انظر إلى كيفية إستخدام الكلمة الجديدة في الجملة وحدد ما إذا كانت فعل أو اسم، سوف يساعدك هذا أن تخمن معنى الكلمات الجديدة.



Read and learn

Energy around us

Fossil fuels ❶ are things like coal, gas and oil. These are burned in factories or used to make homes and buildings warm. However, they are non-renewable ❷: when they run out ❸, we can't find or make more of them. Fossil fuels are made from the remains ❹ of very old plants and animals that lived on Earth a long time ago. When we burn them, a lot of carbon dioxide is released ❺ into the atmosphere.

❶ الوقود الحفري
❷ غير متجددة
❸ ينفذوا
❹ بقايا
❺ يُطلق - يُبث

There are other kinds of energy we can use which are renewable ⑥: they don't run out. We can get renewable energy from natural resources ⑦ such as the wind, the sun, water, and heat inside the Earth. These kinds of energy don't make pollution, and, on the long run ⑧, they are better. There are many types of environments on Earth, and we can use different natural resources in different places. For example, a hot desert is a good place to get solar energy ⑨ from the sun, and there are large farms with lots of solar panels ⑩ that can make clean electricity ⑪. A coastal environment can get a lot of wind, so some places have a lot of wind turbines ⑫ in the sea, close to the coast. In some places, the sea goes up and down throughout the day. This is called a tide ⑬. In places where the tides are very big and strong, we can use tidal energy ⑭ from the moving water to make electricity. Wind and wave turbines work by movement ⑮. The wind or water make turbines move, and this moving energy generates electrical energy. You can store this energy, so if the sun isn't shining or the wind isn't blowing, we will still have electricity. In other places, it is very hot under the ground. These are good places for geothermal energy, as the ground can heat water.

⑥ متجددة
⑦ مصادر طبيعية
⑧ على المدى البعيد
⑨ الطاقة الشمسية
⑩ ألواح شمسية
⑪ كهرباء
⑫ توربينات الرياح
⑬ المد والجذر
⑭ طاقة الأمواج
⑮ بالحركة

In the future, we need to get more of our energy from renewable sources, and less from non-renewable sources.





Exercises on Lesson 3

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

burned - remains - coal - fuels

Fossil ❶ .... are things like coal, gas and oil. These are ❷ .... in factories or used to make homes and buildings warm. However, they are non-renewable: when they run out, we can't find or make more of them. Fossil fuels are made from the ❸ .... of very old plants and animals that lived on Earth a long time ago.

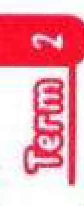
2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

solar - tidal - Renewable - fossil

When we burn ❶ .... fuels like coal, gas, and oil, carbon dioxide goes out into the atmosphere. This causes air pollution and make climate change worse. ❷ .... energy from natural resources is better for the environment and it won't run out. Some countries have a lot of coastal environments and they can create ❸ .... energy using the movement of the sea.

3 Choose the correct answer:

1. Coal, gas and oil are (renewable energy - solar energy - fossil fuels).
2. The (renewable - non-renewable) energy will run out one day.
3. A hot desert is a good place to get (tidal - wind - solar) energy.
4. The renewable energy doesn't make (electricity - pollution - power).
5. When we burn fossil fuels, a lot of carbon dioxide is (released - decided - worked) into the atmosphere.



6. We can get (tidal energy - solar energy - wind energy) from moving water.
7. The sun, wind and water are natural (turbines - fuels - resources).
8. We get (geothermal - solar - wind) energy from the heat under the ground.
9. The wind energy is a (renewable - non-renewable) energy.
10. When there's a lot of wind, we can get (wave power - wind energy - solar energy).
11. A turbine is a (source of energy - machine to make energy). SB
12. To generate is to (make - use) energy. AB
13. In some places, the sea goes (up and down - right and left) throughout the day. This is called a tide. SB
14. To store is to (make - keep) something for a period of time. AB
15. A tide is when (the level of the sea gets higher or lower - the sea gets hotter or colder). SB

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below:

There are many types of environments on Earth, and we can use different natural resources in different places. For example, a hot desert is a good place to get solar energy from the sun, and there are large farms with lots of solar panels that can make clean electricity. A coastal environment can get a lot of wind, so some places have a lot of wind turbines in the sea, close to the coast. In some places, the sea goes up and down throughout the day. This is called a tide. In places where the tides are very big and strong, we can use tidal energy from the moving water to make electricity.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. A hot desert is a good place to get (geothermal - solar - wind) energy from the sun.
2. Some places have a lot of wind (turbines - fuels - environments) to get energy.

B Answer these questions:

3. How can we get electricity from the solar energy?

▶ ....

4. What can you do with the tidal energy?

▶ ....

5 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. energy - make - The renewable - pollution - doesn't.

▶ ....

2. wind - A coastal - get - environment - can - a lot of.

▶ ....

3. from - fuels - What - made - fossil - are?

▶ .... ?

4. work by - wave - and - Wind - movement - turbines.

▶ ....

5. are - Fossil - factories - in - burned - fuels.

▶ ....

6 Read and choose the correct answer, a, b, or c:

Activity Book

1. A turbine is ....
   a. the power of the wind
   b. a machine that makes energy
   c. a form of energy
2. A turbine generates electrical energy by ....
   a. burning fossil fuels
   b. using the heat underground
   c. using the power of wind or water
3. If you store a type of energy, you can ....
   a. keep it for a period of time
   b. use it for a long time
   c. make non-renewable forms of energy




4. A tide is when the level of the sea gets ....

a. hotter or colder

b. deeper or more shallow

c. higher or lower

7 Write an email of (40) words to your friend Manar:

▶ Tell her about the different renewable and non-renewable energies you use in your country and the different environments that help you use the natural resources. Your email address is esraa@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is manar@school.net.

From:

To:

Subject:

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



Lesson 4 Writing

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس

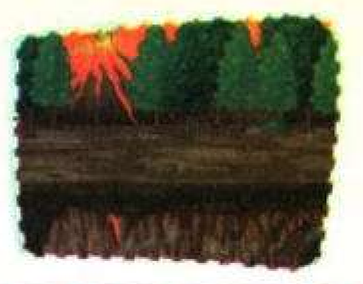
Report: Geothermal energy, Iceland



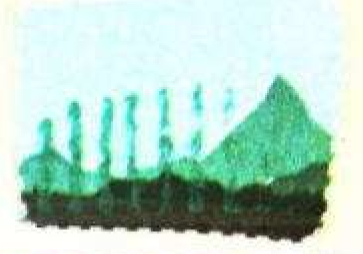
cold country
دولة باردة



hot springs
عيون مائية (ينابيع) ساخنة



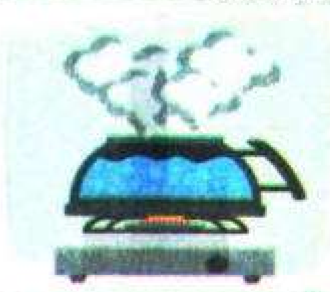
underground
تحت الأرض



holes
فتحات - ثقوب



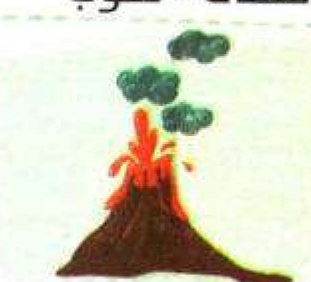
volcanoes
براكين



steam
بخار

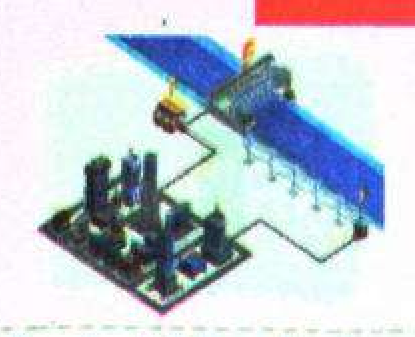


heat (v)
يُسَخِّن

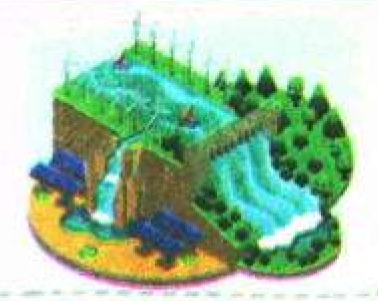


come up
ترتفع

Hydroelectricity



hydroelectricity - hydropower
الطاقة الكهرومائية



mechanical energy
طاقة ميكانيكية



electrical energy
طاقة كهربائية



the High Dam
السد العالي



generator
مُوَلِّد



location
موقع



waterwheels
سواقي

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

Iceland	دولة أيسلندا (في شمال أوروبا)	**the River Nile**	نهر النيل
engineer	مهندس	**machines**	آلات
get hot	يَسْخُن - يصبح ساخنًا	**flooding**	فيضان - طوفان

Definitions تعريفات SB Student's Book

location	: the place or position that something is in or where something happens
kilowatt	: a unit for measuring electrical power equal to 1,000 watts
waterwheel	: a large wheel that is turned by flowing water and used to provide the power for machines

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
heat	يُسَخِّن	heated	refer	يشير إلى	referred
explain	يشرح - يُوَضِّح	explained	illustrate	يُوَضِّح - يُبَيِّن	illustrated
show	يُظْهِر - يُبَيِّن	showed	generate	يُوَلِّد	generated
turn	يدور - يلفّ	turned	move	يُحرك	moved

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
get hot	يَسْخُن - يصبح ساخنًا	got hot	mean	يعني - يقصد	meant
come up	يتصاعد - يرتفع	came up	build	يبني	built
give	يعطي - يمنح	gave	find out	يعرف - يكتشف	found out
break down	يُقَسِّم	broke down	take	يأخذ - يستغرق	took

Tip!

- A report is a way to give information about a topic. It often has these features.
  A title - this tells you what the report is about.
  Photos - these illustrate the report and make it look interesting. A photo can help explain what you mean.
  Subtitles - these break down the information into smaller sections by topic.
  Facts and figures - a report uses these to show that information is true.
- التقرير هو طريقة لإعطاء معلومات عن موضوع معين. غالبًا ما يحتوي التقرير على الأركان الآتية:
  العنوان الرئيسي: ويخبرنا عن الموضوع الذي سيتناوله التقرير.
  الصور: وهي تفسر التقرير وتجعله يبدو شيقًا، فالصورة يمكن أن تساعد في توضيح وشرح ما تقصده.
  العناوين الفرعية: وهي تُقَسِّم المعلومات إلى أجزاء أصغر على حسب الموضوع.
  الحقائق والأرقام: يستخدم التقرير الحقائق والأرقام ليُوَضِّح أن المعلومات التي يسردها حقيقية.



Read and learn

Report: Geothermal energy, Iceland

Why Iceland?

Iceland is a cold country, but it has more than 600 hot springs ❶ and 200 volcanoes ❷. There is a lot of hot water underground ❸, and this is used to heat homes and to make electricity.



How does it work?

When water gets hot, it makes steam. Engineers ❹ in Iceland can make holes ❺ down to the hot water underground. Then steam ❻ comes up and it moves turbines to make electricity.

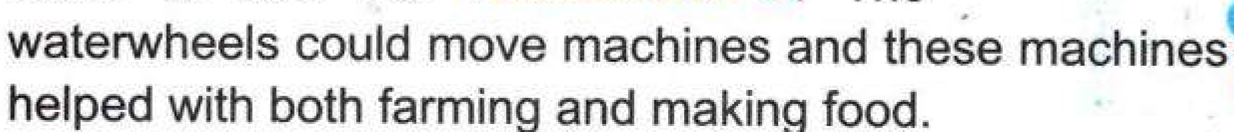
Why is it important?

100% of its electricity and heat comes from renewable sources.

❶ عيون مائية (ينابيع) ساخنة
❷ براكين
❸ تحت الأرض
❹ المهندسون
❺ فتحات - ثقوب
❻ البخار

Hydroelectricity

People have used hydroelectricity ❶ (also called hydropower) for a very long time. Hydroelectricity means using the energy from moving water to move machines or generate electricity. The Ancient Egyptians and Greeks ❷ used the energy in moving water to turn the waterwheels ❸. The



waterwheels could move machines and these machines helped with both farming and making food.

Now, we can use hydroelectricity to generate electricity. A hydroelectric dam uses the energy in falling water to turn a turbine. The mechanical energy ❹ of the moving turbine is changed to electrical energy ❺ by a generator ❻.

The High Dam was finished in 1971. It uses water from the River Nile to generate electricity. The location ❼ of Aswan made this a good place to build the dam, because it could stop the River Nile from flooding ❽. The dam has twelve large turbines inside. It generates more than 10 billion kilowatt hours of electricity a year!

❶ الطاقة الكهرومائية
❷ اليونانيون - الأغريق
❸ سواقي
❹ الطاقة الميكانيكية
❺ طاقة كهربائية
❻ مُوَلِّد
❼ موقع
❽ فيضان - طوفان

Activity Book Text

Kárahnjúkar Hydroelectricity Plant

محطة كاراهنجوكار لتوليد الطاقة الكهرومائية

Kárahnjúkar is a hydroelectricity plant ❶ in eastern Iceland. The hydroelectric plant is the largest power plant ❷ in Iceland. It took five years to build, from 2003 to 2007. Five dams ❸ were built across two rivers. This created three large reservoirs ❹ of water. Water from the reservoirs travels through 73 Kilometers of underground water tunnels ❺. Then it goes down a deep tunnel to the underground power station. The Kárahnjúkar Dam is the largest of the five dams. It is 193 meters high and 730 meters long. It generates more than 690,000 kilowatts of power a year. The power isn't used to heat homes. It is used for an industrial metal plant ❻.

❶ محطة توليد طاقة كهرومائية
❷ محطة طاقة
❸ خمسة سدود
❹ خزانات مائية ضخمة
❺ أنفاق
❻ مصنع معادن صناعية

Exercises on Lesson 4

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

electricity - waterwheels - Hydroelectricity - Fossil fuels

People have used hydroelectricity for a very long time. ❶ .... means using the energy from moving water to move machines or generate ❷ .... The Ancient Egyptians and Greeks used the energy in moving water to turn the ❸ .... The waterwheels could move machines and these machines helped with both farming and making food.

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

underground – volcanoes – electricity – springs

Iceland is a cold country, but it has more than 600 hot ❶ .... and 200 volcanoes. There is a lot of hot water ❷ ...., and this is used to heat homes and to make ❸ ....

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

Fossil fuel - finish - electricity - Aswan

Kareem : What's this picture, Ahmed?
Ahmed : It's a picture of the High Dam.
Kareem : Do you know where it is?
Ahmed : Yes. It's in ❶ ....
Kareem : When did they ❷ .... building it?
Ahmed : It was finished in 1971.
Kareem : How can it be useful?
Ahmed : It uses water from the River Nile to generate ❸ ....

4 Choose the correct answer:

1. Iceland is a cold (country - continent - city).
2. We can get water from (volcanoes - generators - springs).

3. It's very hot inside (rivers - volcanoes - dams).
4. When water gets hot, it makes (ice - snow - steam).
5. We can get (hydroelectricity - solar energy - wind energy) from moving water.
6. The mechanical energy is changed to electrical energy by a (generator - panel - waterwheel).
7. The (flooding - location - turbine) of the High Dam is in Aswan.
8. The High Dam stops the River Nile from (watering - generating - flooding).

5 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. more - Iceland - has - than - hot springs - 600.
   ▶ ....
2. is - underground - a lot of - water - There - hot.
   ▶ ....
3. electricity - hydroelectricity - We - use - can - to generate.
   ▶ ....
4. finished - was - The - in - 1971 - High Dam.
   ▶ ....
5. dam - turbines - has - The - twelve - large.
   ▶ ....

6 Read the following text and answer the questions below:



'Kárahnjúkar Hydroelectricity Plant'

Kárahnjúkar is a hydroelectricity plant (مصنع توليد طاقة كهرومائية) in eastern Iceland. The hydroelectric plant is the largest power plant (مصنع طاقة) in Iceland. It took five years to build, from 2003 to 2007. Five dams were built across two rivers. This created three large reservoirs (خزانات) of water. Water from the reservoirs travels through 73 Kilometers of underground water tunnels (أنفاق). Then it goes down a deep tunnel to the underground power station. The Kárahnjúkar Dam is the largest of

the five dams. It is 193 meters high and 730 meters long. It generates more than 690,000 kilowatts of power a year. The power isn't used to heat homes. It is used for an industrial metal plant.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Kárahnjúkar is a (solar - hydroelectricity - tidal) plant in eastern Iceland.
2. The plant took (three - four - five) years to build.

B Answer these questions:

3. How long are the underground water tunnels?

▶ ....

4. What is the power from the Kárahnjúkar Dam used for?

▶ ....

7 Write a paragraph of (40) words using the following guiding elements:

"The High Dam"

Ideas to help you:

▶ *Why Aswan?* ▶ *How does it work?* ▶ *Why is it important?*



....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....



Lessons 5&6 Math & Project



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس


Summer camp !

article
مقالة - مقال



project
مشروع



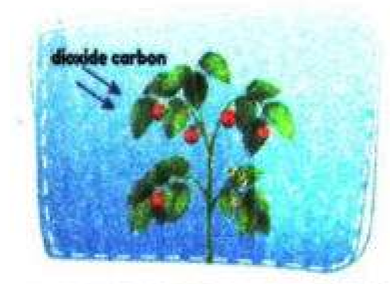
public parks
متنزهات عامة



protect
يحمي



plant (v)
يزرع



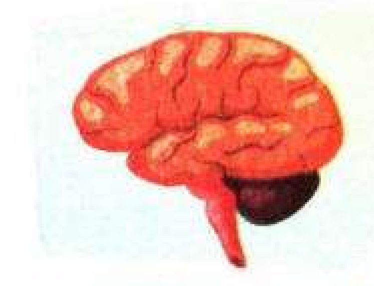
absorb
يمتص



take ... out
يُخرج



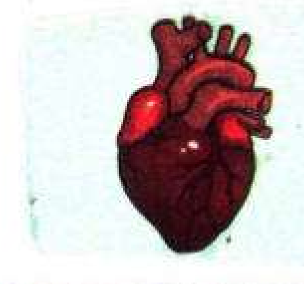
tonne
طن (1,000) كيلو



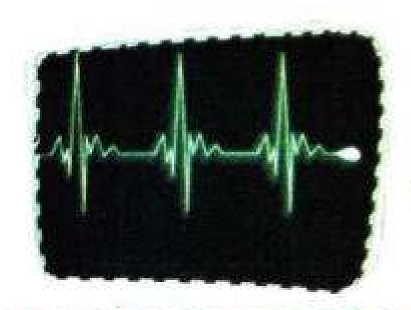
human brain
مخ الإنسان



cells
خلايا



heart
قلب



beat (v)
ينبض - يخفق



hairs
شَعْرَات - شَعْر



Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

garbage	قمامة	**better place**	مكان أفضل
lights	أضواء - أنوار	**green spaces**	مساحات خضراء
turn off	يُطْفِئ	**ideas**	أفكار
waste (v)	يُهْدِر - يُبَدِّد	**competition**	مسابقة
planet	كوكب	**prize**	جائزة
homes	مواطن - بيوت	**a year**	في العام - كل عام

Math

100 (one hundred)	مائة	**1,000,000** (one million)	مليون
1000 (one thousand)	ألف	**10,000,000** (ten million)	عشرة مليون
10,000 (ten thousand)	عشرة آلاف	**100,000,000** (one hundred million)	مائة مليون
100,000 (one hundred thousand)	مائة ألف	**1,000,000,000** (one billion)	مليار

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
absorb	يمتص	absorbed	drop	يُلقي - يرمي	dropped
protect	يحمي	protected	cause	يُسَبِّب - يتسبب في	caused
start	يبدأ	started	waste	يُهْدِر - يُبَدِّد	wasted
plant	يزرع	planted	recycle	يعيد تدوير	recycled
answer	يُجِيب - يجاوب	answered	agree	يتفق - يوافق	agreed
turn off	يُطْفِئ	turned off	disagree	لا يتفق - يعترض	disagreed
want	يريد - يرغب	wanted	persuade	يُقْنِع	persuaded

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
take ..... out	يُخرج	took ..... out	draw	يرسم	drew
beat	ينبض - يَخْفق	beat	say	يقول	said

لاحظ أن:

- الأرقام (hundred - thousand - million - billion) لا يجوز جمعها إذا جاء قبلها رقم.
  - five hundred
  - ten million
  - two thousand
  - three hundred billion
- أما إذا لم يأتِ قبلها رقم فيجوز جمعها.
  - hundreds of pupils
  - millions of dollars
  - thousands of people
  - billions of pounds



Read and learn

Planting trees



'Listen to this, Mom,' said Nessma one day after school. 'This article ❶ says that in 2019, Egypt started a project to plant one million trees in public parks and gardens all over the country. That's amazing!'

'You're right,' said Mom. 'Do you understand why it's important to plant trees?

Nessma wasn't sure. 'They look really nice, don't they? They give us fruit, and they can be homes for animals.'

'All those things are true, but trees are even more special than that,' said Mom. 'Some of the things that people do make carbon dioxide emissions. This causes air pollution and climate change. But forests can absorb ❷ carbon dioxide. That means they take it out ❸ of the atmosphere and make the air cleaner! Did you know that forests absorb about 2.6 billion tonnes ❹ of carbon dioxide every year?'

'Wow, that's a lot of carbon dioxide!' said Nessma. 'So trees are really important in protecting our planet!'

❶ مقالة
❷ تمتص
❸ تخرجه
❹ طن

Listen and say





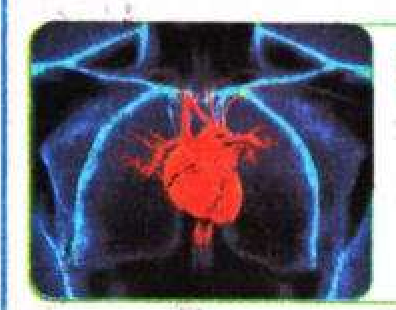
1. The average human brain has about 100 billion brain cells.

◀ متوسط مخ الإنسان يحتوي على حوالي 100 مليار خلية دماغية.



2. The average human has about 100,000 hairs on their head.

◀ متوسط رأس الإنسان يحتوي على حوالي 100,000 شعرة.



3. Your heart beats about 35 million times a year.

◀ ينبض قلبك حوالي 35 مليون مرة في العام.

Listening



So, the first question is: What can our country ❶ do to help the environment? That's interesting. I think our country can help by using more renewable energy ❷.

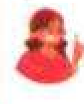
I agree. That would be a good way to use less fossil fuel ❸. I also think it's a good idea to plant more trees and protect the forests we have.



Yes, you're right. Forests help to protect ❹ the environment.



And what can I do to help the environment? Well, I can recycle plastic and not drop garbage ❺.



Yes, we shouldn't drop garbage, but I think the most important thing is to turn off lights ❻ and not waste electricity ❼.

❶ بلدنا - دولتنا
❷ الطاقة المتجددة
❸ الوقود الحفري
❹ في حماية
❺ يُلقي القمامة
❻ تطفئ الأنوار
❼ تُهدِر الكهرباء



Tip!

- When you work in pairs, take time to listen to your partner. Say if you agree or disagree. You can use phrases like these:

▶ **I agree.** ▶ **I'm not sure.** ▶ **I disagree.**

- عندما تعمل مع شخص آخر، خذ وقتك لتستمع إلى شريكك في العمل، وأخبره ما إذا كنت تتفق معه أو لا تتفق معه، ويمكنك استخدام عبارات كالعبارات الآتية:

◀ **أنا أتفق معك.** ◀ **أنا غير متأكد.** ◀ **أنا لا أتفق معك.**

Make our town a better place!



Our town is a great place to live, but what can we do to make the environment here better?

Do you want more green spaces to play in, cleaner streets, or less traffic? Make a poster with your ideas. There's a prize for the best idea!

Exercises on Lessons 5 6

1 Read and complete the conversations:



I agree - I disagree - I'm not sure

A : Fossil fuels are cleaner than renewable energy.
B : ❶ .... I don't think that's right.

A : I think it's better to recycle plastic than glass.
B : ❷ .... I think they are both important.

A : I think we should turn off lights and not waste electricity.
B : Yes, you're right. ❸ ....

2 Choose the correct answer:

1. We should (burn - plant - cut) trees. We need more trees everywhere.
2. The Earth is the (plane - planet - plant) where we live.
3. It's important to (protect - pollute - breathe) our environment.

4. Trees (absorb - generate - release) carbon dioxide.
5. Your (brain - head - heart) beats about 35 million times a year.
6. Turn (on - of - off) the lights when you leave the room.
7. You shouldn't drop (garbage - trees - ideas). Put it in the bin.
8. It's important not to (turn on - use - waste) electricity.

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

renewable - plant - fossil fuel - environment

Tamer : What can our country do to help the ❶ ....?

Hazem : That's interesting. I think our country can help by using more ❷ .... energy.

Tamer : I agree. That would be a good way to use less fossil fuel. I also think it's a good idea to ❸ .... more trees and protect the forests we have.

Hazem : Yes, you're right. Forests help to protect the environment.

4 Write the numbers. Then put them in the correct order from the smallest (1) to the biggest (7)

Activity Book

a. ten thousand .... ☐
b. one million .... ☐
c. one hundred million .... ☐
d. one thousand .... ☐
e. one billion .... ☐
f. one hundred thousand .... ☐
g. ten million .... ☐

5 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. trees - plant - How many - Egypt - will?
▶ ....?

2. can - Forests - carbon - absorb - dioxide.
▶ ....

3. cleaner - Forests - air - the - make.
▶ ....

4. do - we - can - the environment - to help - What?
▶ .... ?

5. trees - more - should - plant - We.
▶ ....

6. than - energy - Solar - cleaner - is - fossil fuels.
▶ ....

7. should - fewer - use - We - fuels - fossil.
▶ ....

8. lights - Turn off - don't - and - electricity - waste.
▶ ....

6 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

save - recycle - electricity - garbage

Nada : What can you do to help the environment?

Sara : Well, I can ❶ .... plastic and not drop ❷ ....

Nada : Yes, we shouldn't drop garbage, but I think the most important thing is to turn off lights and not waste ❸ ....

Sara : Yes, you're right. Turning off lights and not wasting electricity help to save energy.

7 Write a paragraph of (40) words using the following guiding elements:

"How can we make our town a better place?"

Ideas to help you:
- more green spaces
- cleaner streets
- less traffic
- more places to play and do sports

....

....

....







A Listening (8Ms)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (4Ms)



(نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (246) آخر الكتاب.)

1. There aren't many houses or buildings in the (urban - city - rural - town) environment.
2. The rural environment is a (noisy - quiet - loud - terrible) place to live.
3. There can be a lot of traffic in the (polar - desert - rural - urban) environment.
4. The urban environment is (densely populated - sparsely populated - empty - silent).

2 Listen and complete: (4Ms)

(نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (246) آخر الكتاب.)

1. We help to protect our ....
2. .... energy doesn't run out.
3. We can get renewable energy from .... resources.
4. Renewable energy doesn't make ....

B Reading (11Ms)

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box: (3Ms)

electricity - turbines - springs - steam

Iceland is a cold country, but it has more than 600 hot ❶ .... and 200 volcanoes. There is a lot of hot water underground, and this is used to heat homes and to make electricity. When water gets hot, it makes ❷ .... Engineers in Iceland can make holes down to the hot water underground. Then steam comes up and it moves ❸ .... to make electricity.



4 Read the following text and answer the questions below: (4Ms)

There are two of the polar environments in the world: the Arctic and the Antarctic. It is cold and windy in this environment, with a lot of ice. Some animals have found ways to live there, but there aren't any trees or flowers. There aren't many houses or buildings in the rural environment, so that place often has more animals and plants. Not many people live there, so it is sparsely populated. It can have lots of different kinds of weather, but it's a quiet place to live.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. The Arctic and the Antarctic are examples of the (rural - polar - coastal - urban) environment.
2. There aren't any (animals - trees - people - ice) in the polar environment.

B Answer these questions:

3. How many people live in the polar environment?
▶ ....
4. What is the weather like in the polar environment?
▶ ....

C The Reader (Shipwrecks)

5 A- Read and write T (True) or F (False): (4Ms)

1. Archaeologists were working at a site under the Red Sea. ( )
2. Thônis - Heracleion was a very old city. ( )

B Choose the correct answer:

3. The Red Sea can be dangerous because there are strong (ships - currents - shells - bricks) in it.
4. When ships have been under water for a long time, they can become artificial (storms - reefs - boats - tsunamis).



6 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. Listen, they (talk - talks - are talking - talked) about different environments.
2. Manar (am - is - are - were) coming with us.
3. What's Mom (cook - cooked - cooks - cooking)?
4. We are (helping - helped - help - helps) our environment to be a better place.

7 Order the words to make correct sentences: (2Ms)

1. does - trees - Why - a lot of - plant - Egypt?

▶ .... ?

2. important - plastic - is - recycle - It - to.

▶ ....

8 Write a paragraph of (40) words using the following guiding elements: (5Ms)

"Energy"

▶ Ideas to help you:

▶ *renewable energy* ▶ *non-renewable energy*

ENERGY SOURCES

RENEWABLE ENERGY

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Theme (3)
My society



Customs and traditions
عادات وتقاليد

Egyptian stick dancing festival in front of Luxor Temple

In this unit I will ....

- understand some traditional celebrations.
- learn about some traditional recipes.
- compare the present simple and present continuous.
- understand a conversation about clothes.
- read about Egypt's traditions.
- understand and write a tourist brochure.
- learn about traditional fables.
- write a story.

Objectives

Vocabulary	**Festivals and celebrations:** celebration, celebrate, charity, creation, fairgrounds, fast, feast, sacrifice, observe, prayer, sunset, sunrise **Traditional food:** beans, garlic, herbs, pastry, olive oil, spices, vinegar **Traditional clothes:** buttons, galabeya, hizam, kaftan, linen, loose, sandals, sleeves, striped **Traditional hospitality:** guest, host, generous, feast **Fables and folklore:** character, conflict, plot, resolution, secret, setting
Language	- We always eat it with bread. - We often eat hawawshi with salad. - Grandma cooked very well. - What are they wearing now? - It never has any meat in it. - I can easily show you, too! - Today I'm talking to Dr Samir.
Reading	A text about festivals; a story about traditional recipes; a text about cultural traditions in Egypt
Writing	A tourist brochure about your region giving facts and opinions
Speaking	Describing what people are wearing
Listening	A radio program about what people wore in the past; a description of the Abu Simbel Sun Festival
Life skills	**Collaboration:** giving reasons for opinions
Values	**Participation**
Issues and challenges	**Citizenship**
Integrated cross-curriculum topics	**Literature:** fables and folklore

Lesson 1 Important festivals



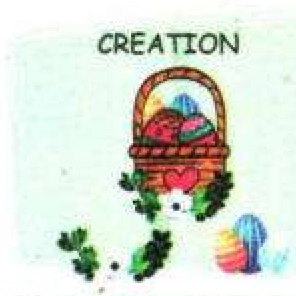
Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



celebrate
يحتفل



celebration
احتفال



festival of creation
احتفال الخَلْق



decorate
يُزَيِّن - يُزَخْرِف



feast
عيد - وليمة



Islamic festival
احتفال إسلامي



Hajj pilgrimage
فريضة الحج



prayers
الصلوات - الصلاة - دعوات

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

fairgrounds	ملاهي	**sunrise**	شروق الشمس
rides	ألعاب ركوب في الملاهي	**sunset**	غروب الشمس
lantern	فانوس	**give out**	يُوَزِّع
grateful	شاكر - ممتن	**sacrifice**	يضحي بـ

ancient Egyptians	المصريون القدماء	**traditional dishes**	أكلات تقليدية
new life	حياة جديدة	**glass jar**	برطمان زجاجي
start of spring	بداية الربيع	**bright**	لامع - براق
Coptic Easter	عيد الفصح القبطي	**electric candle**	شمعة كهربائية

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past
last	يدوم - يستمر	lasted
learn	يتعلّم	learned (learnt)
start	يبدأ	started
play	يلعب	played
boil	يسلق (البيض) - يغلي	boiled
paint	يُلوِّن	painted
visit	يزور	visited
want	يريد - يرغب	wanted

Present		Past
ask	يسأل - يطلب	asked
offer	يعرض	offered
enjoy	يستمتع	enjoyed
wash	يغسل	washed
compare	يقارن	compared
celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated
decorate	يُزَيِّن	decorated
sacrifice	يُضَحّي	sacrificed

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past
put	يضع	put
understand	يفهم	understood
write	يكتب	wrote
think	يفكر - يعتقد	thought
hear	يسمع	heard
find	يَجِد	found
give	يعطي - يمنح	gave
wake up	يستيقظ	woke up

Present		Past
spend	يقضي (وقتًا)	spent
make	يصنع - يجعل	made
give out	يُوَزِّع - يعطي	gave out
come up	تُشرِق	came up
go down	تَغْرُب	went down
say	يقول	said
stick	يلصق	stuck
hang	يُعَلِّق	hung

Present	Past	Present	Past
get ready يستعد	got ready	drink يشرب	drank
meet يقابل	met	ride يركب	rode
has - have عنده - يمتلك	had	wear يرتدي	wore

Definitions تعريفات SB Student's Book

prayer	: important words which you say to give thanks or ask for help
grateful	: feeling that you want to thank someone
fairgrounds	: an open area of land where people can enjoy rides
celebrate	: to spend time with others, being happy and having fun
give out	: to offer something

Read and learn

Did you know? هل تعلم؟

The ancient Egyptians had many festivals. Wepet Renpet was a festival marking the beginning of a new year. It celebrated the first flooding of the Nile. The ancient Egyptians celebrated it around mid-July.

كان للمصريون القدماء العديد من الاحتفالات. كان ويبيت رينبيت احتفالًا ببداية العام الجديد. وكان احتفالًا بالفيضان الأول للنيل. كان المصريون القدماء يحتفلون به في منتصف شهر يوليو تقريبًا.

Sham El-Nessim



I love celebrating ❶ Sham El-Nessim with my family. The festival is for the start of spring and it is very old. The ancient Egyptians also celebrated it, as a festival of creation ❷ and new life. Sham El-Nessim is always on the same day as Coptic Easter Monday.

❶ الإحتفال بـ
❷ خلق - إبداع



Because it is the start of spring, the weather at Sham El-Nessim is usually sunny and warm. I always wake up at sunrise ③ to get ready. Lots of people go with their family to meet friends in parks, gardens or beaches. We eat lots of nice food and play music and games. Sometimes there are fairgrounds ④ with rides for children - they are a lot of fun!

Before the day of the festival, we spend time preparing ⑤ lots of different traditional food ⑥, often until sunset ⑦! We also boil eggs, then paint and decorate them in different colors to make them look beautiful.

③ شروق الشمس
④ ملاهي
⑤ في إعداد
⑥ طعام تقليدي
⑦ غروب الشمس

Eid Al-Adha



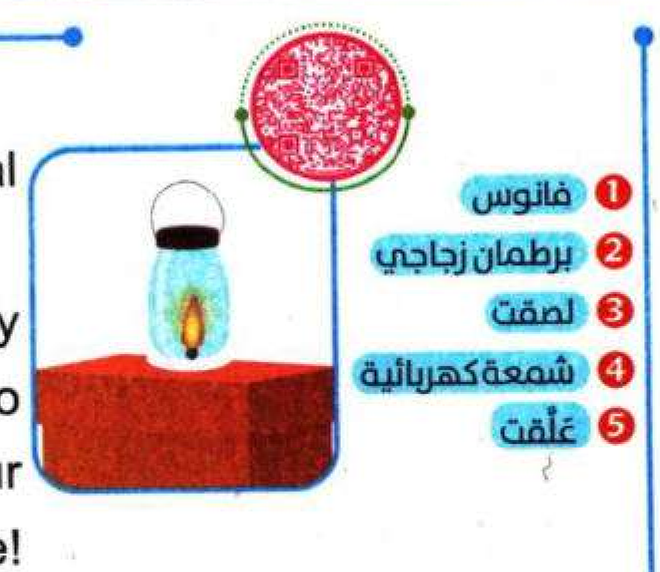


Eid Al-Adha usually lasts for four days, and it is a very important Islamic festival. It celebrates the time when Ibrahim (peace be upon him ①) listened to God in a dream. At Eid Al-Adha, many people sacrifice ② a sheep and eat some of its meat in a traditional dish called fatta. We give out ③ meat to our family and friends. During Eid Al-Adha, we go to the mosque for prayers ④ and we are grateful ⑤ for all the good things in our lives. We wear our best clothes ⑥ for the celebrations and we visit our family and friends. We give each other presents and we have a feast ⑦ together. Eid Al-Adha is during the month of Zu Elhijja when Muslims go to the Hajj pilgrimage ⑧.

① عليه السلام
② يضحي بـ
③ نوزع
④ صلوات - الصلاة
⑤ شاكرين - ممتنين
⑥ أفضل ملابس
⑦ وليمة
⑧ فريضة الحج

A lantern for Ramadan

This year for Ramadan I made a special lantern ❶. I washed a glass jar ❷ and stuck ❸ some colored paper on the side. My mom gave me a small electric candle ❹ to put inside. I hung ❺ it on the front door of our house. It is pretty and bright in the night time!





Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Choose the correct answer:

1. People (decorate - celebrate - create) Sham El-Nessim at the beginning of spring.
2. Eid Al-Adha is an important (fairground - lantern - festival) for Muslims.
3. Muslims go to mosques for (fasting - prayers - pilgrimage).
4. We are (grateful - careful - useful) to Allah for all the good things in our lives.
5. Many people wake up at (sunrise - sunset - moonlight) to get ready for work.
6. The children enjoyed lots of rides at the (library - sports centre - fairground).
7. At Eid Al-Adha, many people (boil - sacrifice - hang) a sheep or a cow.
8. In Ramadan, some people make (feasts - lanterns - rides). They are pretty and bright in the night time!
9. In Zu Elhijja, Muslims go to the Hajj (feast - fairground - pilgrimage).
10. Eid Al-Adha is a Muslim (festival - new year - prayers).
11. Sunrise is when the sun (comes up in the morning - goes down at night).



12. Sunset is when the sun (comes up in the morning - goes down at night).



2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

Eid Al-Adha - spring - sunrise - Sham El-Nessim

Samy : Good morning, Adel.

Adel : Good morning, Samy.

Samy : What's your favorite festival?

Adel : My favorite festival is ❶ ....

Samy : What does Sham El-Nessim celebrate?

Adel : It celebrates the start of ❷ ....

Samy : How do you celebrate Sham El-Nessim?

Adel : I always wake up at ❸ .... to get ready. I meet my friends. We eat traditional food and play games.

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

feast - grateful - pilgrimage - prayers

During Eid Al-Adha, we go to the mosque for ❶ .... and we are grateful for all the good things in our lives. We wear our best clothes for the celebrations and we visit our family and friends. We give each other presents and we have a ❷ .... together. Eid Al-Adha is during the month of Zu Elhijja when Muslims go to the Hajj ❸ ....

4 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

electric - feast - lantern - bright

This year for Ramadan I made a special ❶ .... I washed a glass jar and stuck some colored paper on the side. My mom gave me a small ❷ .... candle to put inside. I hung it on the front door of our house. It is pretty and ❸ .... in the night time!

5 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. celebrating - love - I - Sham El-Nessim - my family - with.

▶ ....

2. decorate - paint - eggs - People - and - at Sham El-Nessim.

▶ ....

3. Eid Al-Adha - important - an - festival - is - Islamic.

▶ ....

4. the Hajj - pilgrimage - go - Muslims - in Zu Elhijja - to.

▶ ....

5. for Ramadan - How - make - a lantern - you - do?

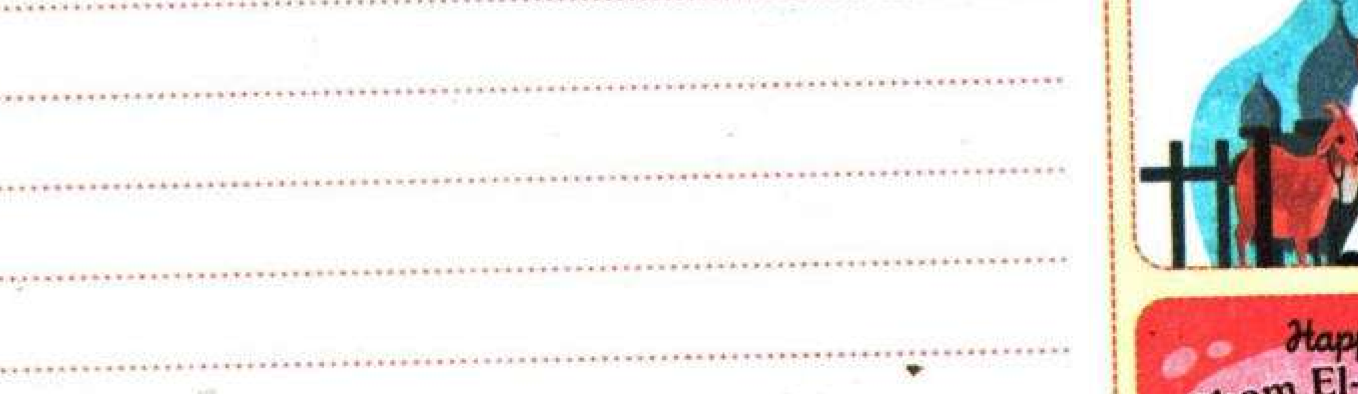
▶ .... ?

6 Write a paragraph of (40) words using the following guiding elements:

"My favorite festival"

▸ Ideas to help you:

- ▶ *What festival.*
- ▶ *What you often eat.*
- ▶ *What you wear.*
- ▶ *How you celebrate it.*



....

....

....

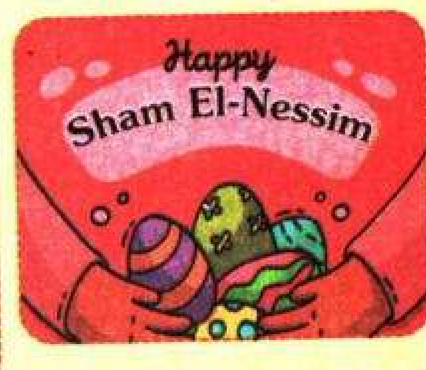
....

....

....

....

....

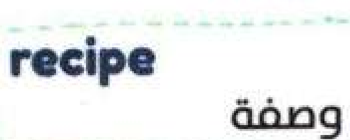




Lesson 2 Grandma's recipes

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس





recipe وصفة



cook book كتاب طهي



meal وجبة



dish أكلة



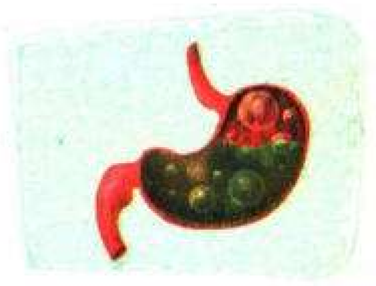
delicious food طعام لذيذ



oven فرن



layers طبقات



digest يهضم

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

beans	فول	**pastry**	فطائر - مُعَجِّنَات
garlic	ثوم	**bread**	خُبز
onions	بصل	**rice**	أرز
chilli	فلفل حار (شطة)	**meat**	لحم
spices	توابل	**beef**	لحم بقري
herbs	أعشاب	**lamb**	لحم الضأن
tomato sauce	صلصة طماطم	**fish**	سمك
lemon juice	عصير ليمون	**salad**	سَلَطَة
olive oil	زيت زيتون	**vinegar**	خل

carefully	بعناية - باهتمام - بحرص	**well**	بشكل جيد
easily	بسهولة	**hard**	صعب

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
cook يطهو - يطبخ	cooked	describe يَصِف - يشرح	described
look يبدو	looked	share يشارك (شيئًا مع شخص)	shared
digest يَهْضِم	digested	love يحب	loved
press يضغط	pressed	try يحاول	tried

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
choose يختار	chose	tell يُخْبِر	told
eat يأكل	ate	get يحصل على	got
take (time) يستغرق (وقتًا)	took (time)	show يُظْهِر - يُبَيِّن	showed



Read and learn



Did you know? هل تعلم؟

Bread was important in ancient Egypt. There are paintings in the tomb of Ty in Saqqara which show how people made it.

كان الخبز مهمًا في مصر القديمة. يوجد رسومات في مقبرة تي في سقارة تُظْهِر كيف كان يُعِدّه الناس. (مقبرة واح تي، وهو أحد كهنة أو موظفي الأسرة الخامسة في القرن الرابع والعشرين قبل الميلاد، تم اكتشافها عام 2018).

Grandma's cook book

Aya was visiting her grandma. Grandma was making a meal ❶, and Aya was sitting in the kitchen looking carefully ❷ at Grandma's books. Grandma cooked very well and she had her own cook book ❸.

It described ❹ different meals and had pictures of delicious food.

'Wow, Grandma,' said Aya. 'You have lots of different meals in your book!'

'Yes, I do,' said Grandma. 'I often share recipes ❺ with family and friends in other parts of Egypt. I like to try new things.

'These look delicious! Can you make all of these?'

'Yes, I can. And I can easily show you, too! What would you like to make?'

'Hmm, that's difficult,' said Aya. 'There are so many recipes to choose from ❻.'

❶ وجبة
❷ بعناية
❸ كتاب طبخ
❹ وَصَفَ
❺ أشارك وصفات
❻ لأختار منها

Ful Medames



This dish ❶ uses beans cooked with lemon juice, garlic ❷, onion, chilli ❸, and herbs ❹. It never has any meat in it. We always eat it with bread.

❶ أكلة
❷ ثوم
❸ فلفل حار
❹ أعشاب



Fatta

Fatta has layers ❶ of rice and bread with tomato sauce ❷, vinegar ❸, and meat. It takes a long time to digest ❹, so we don't eat it very often.



❶ طبقات
❷ صلصة طماطم
❸ خل
❹ تَهْضِم

Hawawshi

Hawawshi is delicious. It is made with bread and beef ❶ or lamb ❷. The meat is cooked with onion, herbs, and spices ❸. The bread is pressed together around the meat and cooked. We sometimes eat it with salad.

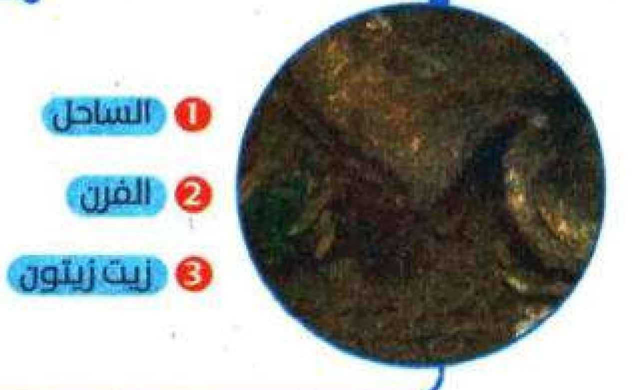
❶ لحم بقري
❷ لحم الضأن
❸ توابل



Sayadeya

People who live near the coast ❶ often make sayadeya. We use fish, which is baked in the oven ❷ with olive oil ❸, onion, tomatoes, herbs, and spices. It's delicious!

❶ الساحل
❷ الفرن
❸ زيت زيتون



Grammar Study

Adverbs of frequency ظروف التكرار

- **We can use adverbs of frequency with the present simple to say how often something happens. They can help to describe habits or routines.**

◀ يمكننا استخدام ظروف التكرار مع المضارع البسيط لنقول كم عدد مرات تكرار حدوث شيء ما. يمكن أن تساعد ظروف التكرار في وصف عادات أو أفعال متكررة الحدوث، مثل:

Adverb	Example
always 100%	We **always** eat Fatta with bread.
usually 80%	Faten is **usually** early for school.
often 60%	I **often** share recipes with family.
sometimes 30%	We **sometimes** eat Hawawshi with salad.
never 0%	Ful Medames **never** has any meat in it.

- **We use these words before the main verb or after (verb to be).**

◀ نستخدم هذه الكلمات قبل الفعل الأساسي أو بعد (**verb to be**).

- Fatta **always** has layers of rice and bread.
- We **usually** eat Ful Medames for breakfast.
- Hawawshi is **often** made with bread and beef or lamb.
- People **sometimes** eat Hawawshi with salad.
- I'm **never** ready to go out on cold nights.

always	دائمًا
usually	عادة
often	غالبًا
sometimes	أحيانًا
never	أبدًا

Remember تَذكَّر

Adjectives & Adverbs الصفات والظروف

Adjective	الصفة	Adverb	الظرف
careful	حريص - حَذِر	carefully	بحرص - بِحَذَر
easy	سهل	easily	بسهولة
good	جيد	well	بشكل جيد

Usage الاستخدام

- **The adjective describes a noun and precedes it, whereas the adverb describes a verb and follows it.**
- **الصفة تصف اسم وتأتي قبله، بينما الظرف يصف فعل ويأتي بعده.**

- He is a **careful** driver.
- It was an **easy** test.
- Grandma is a **good** cook.
- He drives **carefully**.
- I answered the test **easily**.
- Grandma cooks **well**.

Exercises on Lesson 

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

sauce - digest - dish - meat

I like ful medames. This ❶ .... uses beans cooked with lemon juice, garlic, onion, chilli, and herbs. It never has any meat in it. We always eat it with bread. I also like Fatta. Fatta has layers of rice and bread with tomato ❷ ...., vinegar, and meat. It takes a long time to ❸ ...., so we don't eat it very often.

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

hungry - fish - delicious - dish

Nora : Where do you live, Jana?
Jana : I live near the coast.
Nora : What is your favorite ❶ .... ?
Jana : It's sayadeya.
Nora : How do you cook it?
Jana : I use ❷ ...., which is baked in the oven with olive oil, onion, tomatoes, herbs, and spices.
Nora : Is it ❸ .... ?
Jana : Yes, of course.

3 Choose the correct answer:

1. I (always - never - sometimes) drink milk for breakfast. I like drinking it every morning.
2. I (never - sometimes - usually) brush my teeth before going to bed. I brush them 6 times a week.
3. They (always - sometimes - never) eat hawawshi. They eat it from time to time.
4. He (never - often - always) eats pizza. He doesn't like it.
5. She (always - never - often) phones her grandma. This happens four nights a week.
6. We (always eats - eat always - always eat) ful medames with bread.
7. People who live near the coast (often make - make often - often makes) sayadeya.
8. Hawawshi (always have - always has - has always) meat with bread.
9. Ful medames (has never - never has - never have) any meat in it.
10. This is a/an (quickly - easy - easily) recipe.
11. I can make this meal (easily - easy - quick).
12. Maha is a (good - well - slowly) tennis player.
13. She plays tennis (quick - good - well).



14. He was looking (careful - careless - carefully) at the book.

15. We are (carefully - careful - carelessly) when we cross the road.

16. Sayadeya is dad's favorite (oven - dish - plate).

17. This (recipe - layer - meal) shows you how to make fatta.

18. We eat three (layers - recipes - meals) every day.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below:

Hi! I'm Aya. In Ramadan, we have breakfast in the evening at sunset. There's always lots of delicious food! One of Ramadan's days, my mom made Fatta for breakfast. It has layers of rice and bread with tomato sauce, vinegar, and meat. It takes a long time to digest. Mom also made kunafa, with sweet pastry. We had it with soft cheese. I helped her in the kitchen. That night, there were lots of different things to eat, but the kunafa was my favorite.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. In Ramadan, we have breakfast in the (morning - evening - afternoon) at sunset.

2. Aya's mom made (sayadeya - fatta - hawawshi) for breakfast on one of Ramadan's days.

B Answer these questions:

3. Which food takes a long time to digest?

▶ ....

4. What was Aya's favorite food?

▶ ....

5 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. have - your cook book - You - meals - different - in.

▶ ....



2. Grandma - How - recipes - does - her - get?

▶ .... ?

3. important - was - Egypt - in - Bread - ancient.

▶ ....

4. make - you - What - to - would - like?

▶ .... ?

5. eat - bread - with - We - beans - always.

▶ ....

6 Write a paragraph of (40) words:

"What you have for breakfast"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



Lesson 3 Language

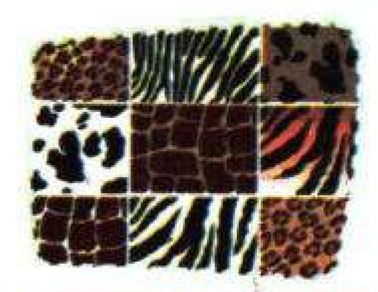
Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



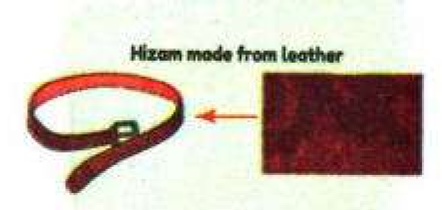
loose clothes
ملابس فضفاضة



linen
قماش الكتان



leather
جلد



made from
مصنوع من



galabeya
جلابية



striped kaftan
قفطان مقلم



sandals
صندل



shoes
حذاء

scarf (pl. scarves)
كوفيه



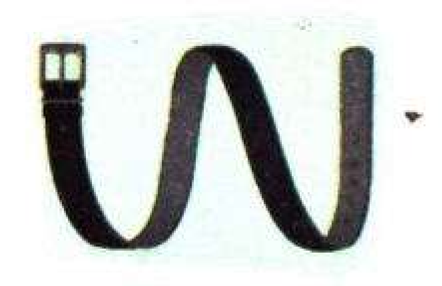
sash
حزام من القماش



sleeve
كُم



button
زِر - زرار



hizam
الحزام



jewelry
مجوهرات



Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
prefer	يُفَضِّل	preferred	correct	يُصَحِّح	corrected
happen	يَحْدُث	happened	live	يعيش	lived
complete	يُكمِل	completed	carry	يحمِل	carried
help	يساعد	helped	describe	يصف	described

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
wear	يرتدي - يلبس	wore	see	يرى	saw
keep	يحافظ على - يُبْقي	kept	sit	يجلس	sat

Why did ancient Egyptians wear white clothes?

Presenter: Hello and welcome to Radio Now ❶. What did people wear in the past, and what are they wearing now? Today I'm talking to Dr Samir today about clothes in Egypt - Hello, Dr Samir!

Dr Samir : Hello!

Presenter: So, when we think about ancient Egyptian clothing ❷, it's often quite simple ❸, isn't it?

Dr Samir : Yes, that's right - we have lots of old paintings that show people wearing loose white linen ❹. White is a good color to wear in hot weather, and loose linen clothes help to keep you cool.

Presenter: I see - and what other things did people wear at that time ❺?

Dr Samir : Many ancient Egyptians wore sandals on their feet ❻. These were made from leather. And they wore lots of jewelry ❼, too. It was important to look beautiful.

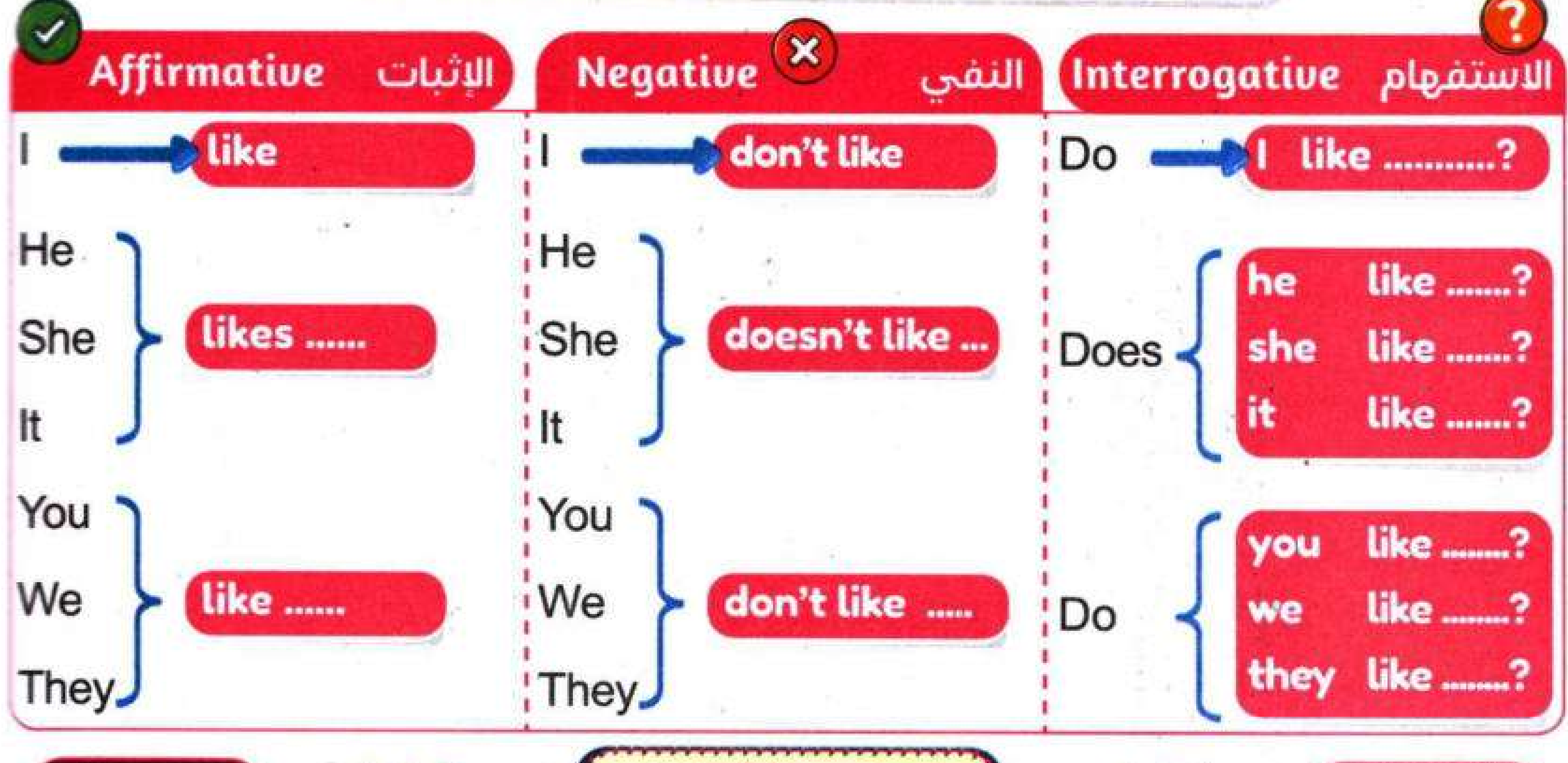
Presenter: So how are things different today?

❶ أهلًا بك في راديو الآن
❷ الملابس المصرية القديمة
❸ بسيط إلى حد ما
❹ الكتان الأبيض الفضفاض
❺ في ذلك الوقت
❻ في أقدامهم
❼ مجوهرات

Dr Samir : Well, there's a lot more color in traditional Egyptian clothing today, but many people still prefer loose clothing. In some parts of Egypt, it is traditional for men and women to wear the galabeya, which is long and loose, with long sleeves ⑧. Men sometimes wear a striped ⑨ kaftan over this with a hizam, which is a colored sash ⑩ around their body. Men and women also wear items ⑪ on their heads such as scarves ⑫ or different styles of hats. In some cities, though ⑬, men and women often wear more modern clothes, such as trousers and shirts, or dresses and skirts. too. It was important to look beautiful.

⑧ أكمام طويلة
⑨ مقلم
⑩ حزام ملون من القماش
⑪ أشياء
⑫ كوفيات
⑬ بالرغم من ذلك





Affirmative الإثبات	Negative النفي	Interrogative الاستفهام
I → like	I → don't like	Do → I like ....?
He / She / It → likes	He / She / It → doesn't like ...	Does → he like ....? / she like ....? / it like ....?
You / We / They → like	You / We / They → don't like	Do → you like ....? / we like ....? / they like ....?

Form: ▶▶▶ التصريف الأول للفعل. ◀◀◀ يتكون من

▶ Linen keeps you cool.

▶ In some places in Egypt, men sometimes wear a striped kaftan.

■ **We use it to express facts or habits.**

■ يستخدم المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن حقائق أو عادة (فعل متكرر الحدوث).

▶ I wear a blue uniform to my school.

▶ The sun comes up in the morning.

■ **We sometime use some words with the present simple tense.**

■ أحيانًا ما تستخدم بعض الكلمات الدالة على زمن المضارع البسيط مثل:

Key words

always	دائمًا	**sometimes**	أحيانًا	**never**	أبدًا - مطلقًا
often	غالبًا	**usually**	عادةً	**every (day - week...)**	كل

▶ We go to Alexandria every summer.

▶ Dad never drives to work. He always goes by train.

■ **We add (s or es) to the main verb if the subject is (He - She - It - singular noun).**

■ نضيف للفعل (s أو es) إذا كان الفاعل (أي اسم مفرد - He - she - It).

▶ Mom cooks us a different dish every day.

▶ The sun goes down in the evening.

■ **We add (es) to verbs that end in (ss - sh - ch - o - x).**

■ نضيف (es) للأفعال المنتهية بـ (ss - sh - ch - o - x).

go	→	*goes*	*brush*	→	*brushes*
watch	→	*watches*	*fix*	→	*fixes*

▶ Dad washes his car every two weeks.

■ **If the verb ends in (y) after a consonant, change (y) into (i) then add (es).**

■ لو انتهى الفعل بـ (y) مسبوقة بحرف ساكن، تقلب إلى (i) قبل إضافة (es).

fly	→	*flies*	*carry*	→	*carries*
hurry	→	*hurries*	*try*	→	*tries*

▶ She sometimes carries a heavy bag to school.

■ **In the negative form, we use (don't - doesn't) then the bare verb.**

■ عند نفي زمن المضارع البسيط نستخدم (don't - doesn't) ثم الفعل في المصدر.

▶ They don't prefer loose clothes.

▶ The galabeya doesn't have short sleeves.

■ **In the interrogative form, we use (do - does) at the beginning of the question or after the question word with the bare verb.**

■ عند عمل سؤال على المضارع البسيط نبدأ السؤال بـ (do - does) أو نضع إحداهما بعد أداة الاستفهام مع الفعل في المصدر.

Remember تذكر

He She It أي اسم مفرد } **does**	I You We They أي اسم جمع } **do**

- Do you like Hawawshi? ▶ Yes, I do
- Do Ali and Ehab play together? ▶ No, they don't.
- Does she have white dresses? ▶ Yes, she does.
- Does Tamer help at home? ▶ No, he doesn't.
- How do you go to school? ▶ I go by bus.
- What time does she go to bed? ▶ She goes to bed at ten o'clock.

Exercises on Lesson 

1 Choose the correct answer:

1. The sun (is coming up - come up - comes up) in the morning.
2. My uncle always (wear - wears - is wearing) dark colored shirts.
3. They usually (wake up - are waking up - wakes up) late on Friday.
4. Look, he (celebrate - celebrates - is celebrating) his birthday.
5. We (visit - are visiting - visits) our grandparents every Saturday.
6. I (eats - am eating - eat) breakfast before going to school every morning.
7. Dalia (is taking - take - takes) three sandwiches to school every day.
8. The sun (go - is going - goes) down in the evening.
9. Mom (isn't - doesn't - don't) like eating at restaurants.
10. They (aren't - don't - doesn't) talk loudly in the library.
11. He doesn't (use - uses - is using) buses. He has a car.

12. What does she (eat - eats - eating) for lunch?

13. (Do - Does - Is) Ahmed wear sandals?

14. (Are - Does - Do) you go to the park on the weekend?

15. They (get - gets - are getting) ready to go out now.

16. Mom often (make - makes - is making) very nice meals.

17. Every year, we (are traveling - travels - travel) to Alexandria by train.

18. What (is - do - does) a good color to wear in hot weather?

19. She sleeps on the weekend, but today she (help - helps - is helping) her mom.

20. Mona doesn't (play - plays - playing) computer games at night.

2 Complete the text with the correct form of the verbs in brackets:

Student's Book

Today Hana ❶ .... (wear) a blue dress. She usually ❷ .... (wear) a T-shirt and a skirt, but today ❸ .... (be) a special day. She ❹ .... (celebrate) Eid Al-Fitr with her family.
Today Adam ❺ .... (help) his mom make ful medames. They often ❻ .... (eat) meat but today they ❼ .... (make) a vegetarian recipe.

3 Read and choose the correct answer, a or b:

Activity Book

1. Fares is in the garden with his Dad. Fares ....

a. helps him b. is helping him

2. Dina's mom .... in an office every day.

a. works b. is working

3. Hello! .... for a bus?

a. Are you waiting b. Do you wait

4. We sometimes .... fish and rice for dinner on Saturdays.
   a. are having   b. have
5. .... three languages?
   a. Is your aunt Salwa speaking   b. Does your aunt Salwa speak
6. People .... warm clothes in winter because it's cold.
   a. usually wear   b. are usually wearing
7. Today, I .... loose clothes because it is very hot!
   a. wear   b. am wearing
8. What .... on the weekend?
   a. do you usually wear   b. are you wearing

4 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. sleeves - The - has - galabeya - long.
   ▶ ....
2. type - a - Sandals - shoe - of - are.
   ▶ ....
3. now - they - What - wearing - are?
   ▶ .... ?
4. hot weather - is - White - in - to wear - a good color.
   ▶ ....
5. dress - a - wearing - is - Hana - blue.
   ▶ ....
6. on - do - What - special days - wear - you?
   ▶ .... ?

5 Complete the text with the correct form of the verbs in brackets:

Activity Book

Nadia ❶ .... (live) in Luxor with her family. Today she ❷ .... (celebrate) Eid Al-Fitr with her family. She ❸ .... (wear) her best dress and new shoes. She usually

4 .... (go) to school on Thursday, but today is a holiday. The whole family is together. Grandma and Grandpa 5 .... (sit) in the living room. Nadia's brother, Khaled 6 .... (give) his grandparents some special cakes. Nadia 7 .... (carry) a plate of cookies. Mom often 8 .... (make) these cookies at Eid Al-Fitr. They are Khaled's favorite! Mom and Dad always 9 .... (give) Nadia and Khaled presents. Eid Al-Fitr is Nadia's favorite festival!

6 Write an email of (40) words to your friend Laura:

Tell her about the traditional clothes in your country. What do men and women often wear? Tell her about your favorite clothes and what you wear on your special days? Your email address is hana@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is laura@yahoo.com.

From:

To:

Subject:

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



Lesson 4 Welcome to Egypt

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



host
مضيف

guest
ضيف



welcoming visitors
الترحيب بالزائرين



Egyptian traditions
تقاليد مصرية



region
منطقة - إقليم



palace
قصر



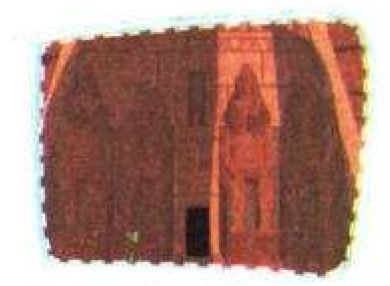
gods
آلهة



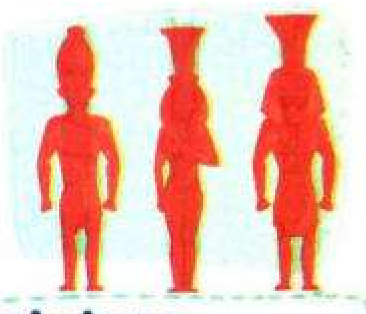
oasis
واحة



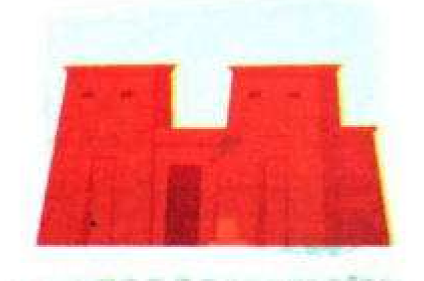
amazing sights
مشاهد (مناظر) رائعة



Sun Festival
مهرجان الشمس



statues
تماثيل



main temple
المعبد الأساسي



castle
قلعة



museum
متحف

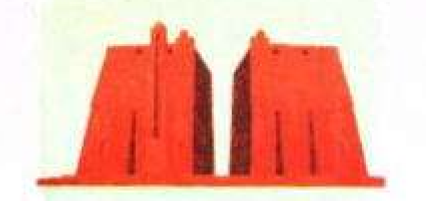
Famous places أماكن مشهورة



the River Nile
نهر النيل



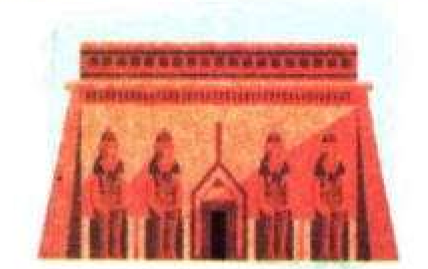
the Red Sea
البحر الأحمر



Luxor Temple
معبد الأقصر



Pyramids of Giza
أهرامات الجيزة



Abu Simbel Temple
معبد أبو سمبل



the Valley of the Kings
وادي الملوك



National Park
منتزه قومي

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

boat trip	رحلة بالقارب	**friendly**	ودود
scuba diving	الغوص بأنبوبة تنفس يخرج من سطح الماء	**famous for**	مشهور بـ
picnic	نزهة خلوية	**generous**	كريم - مِضياف
go camping	يذهب للتخييم	**celebrate**	يحتفل
reasons	أسباب	**information**	معلومات
opinion	رأي	**of course**	بالطبع
except	ماعدا	**cost**	يكلف - يتكلف

typical meal	وجبة مثالية	**stuffed vegetables**	خضار محشو
vegetable stew	شوربة خضار	**dried salted fish**	سمك مملح مجفف
soup	شوربة	**is served**	تُقَدَّم

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
support يدعم - يساند	supported	underline يضع خطًا تحت	underlined
answer يُجيب - يجاوب	answered	invite يدعو - يعزم	invited
camp يُخَيِّم (في مكان)	camped	bake يخبز	baked
stay يبقى - يظلّ	stayed	celebrate يحتفل	celebrated

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
cost يكلف - يتكلف	cost	shine تسطع - تُشْرِق	shone
bring يُحضِر - يجلب	brought	get up يستيقظ	got up
mean يعني	meant	sing يُغَنِّي	sang

Read and learn

Welcome to Egypt





Egypt is a fantastic country to visit! There is so much to see, such as the Pyramids of Giza, the old Luxor Temple, the Red Sea, and of course the River Nile. In all parts of the country, you can see amazing sights ❶, eat delicious food, and meet friendly people.

Visitors often like to learn about Egyptian traditions ❷ before they come. Egyptian people are famous for welcoming visitors with food and drink, and for inviting guests ❸ to their home.

❶ مناظر
❷ تقاليد مصرية
❸ ضيوف

If you are invited to an Egyptian family's home, it's a good idea to bring a present, for example chocolates or sweets. However, the host ❹ usually doesn't open the present at the time when they get it.

A traditional Egyptian meal is served with people sitting together around a table. A typical meal has rice, a kind of vegetable stew ❺, soup, stuffed vegetables ❻, and meat or chicken. Egyptians are very generous ❼ and are very happy when you ask for more food.

This means you enjoyed their delicious meal! Some Egyptian festivals have traditional food, too. At Eid Al-Fitr, people bake special cookies called kahk, with sugar ❽ on top. At Sham El-Nessim, people eat dried salted fish, called fesikh. If you visit Egypt at these times, you should try these dishes!

❹ المضيف
❺ شوربة خضار
❻ خضار محشو
❼ كرماء
❽ سكر

The Abu Simbel Sun Festival

Near Aswan, you can see the temples of Abu Simbel. Outside the temples, there are some very big statues ❶ of Ramses II and his wife Nefertari. Twice a year ❷, people celebrate the Abu Simbel Sun Festival there, on February 22nd and October 22nd , On these days, light from the sun at sunrise ❸ shines ❹ all the way inside the main temple, to the rooms inside. There are four statues inside the temple: those of Ramses, Ra, Amun, and Ptah. The sunlight shines on all of them except ❺ Ptah. He is always in the dark. People celebrate ❻ the Abu Simbel Sun Festival by getting up early to see the light inside the temple at sunrise. Then people eat, drink and sing to celebrate this special day.



❶ تماثيل
❷ مرتان في العام
❸ شروق الشمس
❹ يشرق
❺ ما عدا
❻ يحتفل

Exercises on Lesson 4

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

statues - temples - shines - Festival

Near Aswan, you can see the temples of Abu Simble. Outside the ❶ ...., there are some very big ❷ .... of Ramses II and his wife Nefertari. Twice a year, people celebrate the Abu Simble Sun ❸ .... there, on February 22nd and October 22nd. On these days, light from the sun at sunrise shines all the way inside the main temple, to the room inside.

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

guest - visit - Temple - Pyramids

Youssef : Hi. Is this your first visit to Egypt?
Tourist : Hi. Yes, it's my first ❶ .... to Egypt.
Youssef : How long will you stay here?
Tourist : I will stay here for one week.
Youssef : What places do you want to visit in Egypt?
Tourist : I will start with the ❷ .... of Giza.
Youssef : Don't miss the old Luxor ❸ ...., the Red Sea, and the River Nile.
Tourist : I won't. I'm sure it will be a great tour.

3 Choose the correct answer:

1. There are amazing (people - dishes - sights) in Egypt like the Pyramids of Giza.
2. (Visitors - Hosts - Teachers) come to Egypt from different parts of the world.
3. She (invented - invited - interviewed) lots of people to her wedding party last week.
4. Our neighbor is very (generous - poor - hard). He always gives us sweets and chocolate.

5. When we have (sisters - hosts - guests) at home, we welcome them warmly.
6. There's a big (statue - tomb - museum) in the middle of the square. It's for king Ramses II. It's very tall and huge.
7. Egypt is famous (of - for - from) the Pyramids of Giza.
8. Abu Simble (Museum - Statue - Temples) are in the south of Egypt.
9. The (guests - hosts - visitors) were very generous. They gave us lots of foods and drinks!
10. It's (light - dark - shine) inside. I can't see anything.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below:

Egypt is a fantastic country to visit! There is so much to see, such as the Pyramids of Giza, the old Luxor Temple, the Red Sea, and of course the River Nile. In all parts of the country, you can see amazing sights, eat delicious food, and meet friendly people. Visitors often like to learn about Egyptian traditions before they come. Egyptian people are famous for welcoming visitors with food and drink, and for inviting guests to their home.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. You can eat delicious (sight - people - food) in Egypt.
2. The Pyramids are in (Cairo - Giza - Luxor).

B Answer these questions:

3. What do visitors like to learn about? ▶ ....
4. What are Egyptian people famous for? ▶ ....

5 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. to visit - fantastic - is - Egypt - a - country.

▶ ....

2. much - There - see - to - is - so.

▶ ....

3. in Egypt - people - You - meet - can - friendly.

▶ ....

4. learn about - traditions - to - like - Visitors - Egyptian.

▶ ....

5. are - Egyptian - visitors - welcoming - famous for - people.

▶ ....

6. festivals - traditional - Egyptian - Some - have - food.

▶ ....

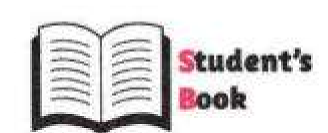
7. are - the temple - There - statues - four - inside.

▶ ....

8. shines - The sun - on - never - of Ptah - the statue.

▶ ....

6 Write a tourist brochure about your region:



▸ Ideas to help you:

- *Give information for visitors.*
- *Write about a festival.*
- *Say why you think visitors would enjoy it.*

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....





Lessons 5-6 Fables and folklore



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس






tale	shipwreck	shipwrecked	sailor
قصة - حدوتة	حطام سفينة	سفينة محطمة	بحار






special job	go on a journey	island	servant
مهمة خاصة	يذهب في رحلة	جزيرة	خادم

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

worried	قلق	successful	ناجح - موفق
frightened	خائف	safe	آمن
problems	مشاكل	terrible place	مكان مريع
Be patient.	كن صبورًا.	moral	درس أخلاقي - عظة

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
laugh	يضحك	laughed	return	يعود - يرجع	returned
travel	يسافر	traveled	look for	يبحث عن	looked for

Present		Past	Present		Past
pass down	يُمَرَّر - يتم تناقله	passed down	smile	يبتسم	smiled
join together	تتجمَّع - تجتمع	joined together	solve	يحلّ	solved
sacrifice	يُضَحّي	sacrificed	decide	يُقَرِّر	decided

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
get stuck in	تعلق في - تشبك في	got stuck in	take	يأخذ	took
get home	يعود للمنزل	got home	become	يُصبِح	became
fall into	يسقط في	fell into	send	يُرسِل	sent
fall down	يسقط	fell down	teach	يُدَرِّس - يُعَلِّم	taught
speak	يتحدث	spoke	leave	يغادر	left
sink	يغرق	sank	make into	يُحَوِّل إلى	made into
swim	يسبح - يعوم	swam	know	يعلم - يعرف	knew
begin	يبدأ	began	tell	يخبر	told

A good story has ...... القصة الجيدة لابد أن يكون لها العناصر الآتية

characters	: *people, animals or imaginary things.*	شخصيات
setting	: *where the story happens.*	مكان الأحداث
a plot	: *exciting events that join together.*	حبكة الرواية - سير الأحداث
conflict	: *a problem that the characters have to solve*	المشكلة التي يجب حلها - الصراع
resolution	: *when the problem is solved and the story ends.*	الحل ونهاية القصة



Read and learn

Did you know? هل تعلم؟

Fables and folklore are types of stories that are passed down from one group of people to another group of people. They teach us a lesson or "moral", and are often about animals, plants or things that happen in nature. There are many stories from ancient Egypt.

الأساطير (القصص الغير حقيقية) وقصص التراث الشعبي هي أنماط من القصص والتي تنتقل من مجموعة من الناس إلى مجموعة أخرى من الناس. إنهم يعلموننا درس أو عظة وهم في الغالب عن الحيوانات أو النباتات أو الأشياء التي تحدث في الطبيعة. يوجد الكثير من القصص من مصر القديمة.

ملحوظة هامة:

عند استخدام الحيوانات أو الطيور كشخصيات في القصة نعاملهم معاملة العاقل أي الضمائر التي تعود عليهم هي (He - She) أو (him - her).

The tale of the shipwrecked sailor



Long ago, the King asked an important man to leave Egypt for a special job. The man traveled with many other sailors, but he wasn't successful ❶. When he returned, he was frightened about what the King would say. His servant ❷ spoke to him.

'You must tell the King that you tried your best ❸,' he said.

'I don't want to say that I was not successful,' said the man.

'Listen to my story,' said the servant. 'I was a sailor, too. I went on a journey for the King with the best sailors in the country. But a storm ❹ came, and our ship sank. I fell into the sea, and swam to an island.I was alone and frightened. Then, I looked for ❺ food, and the island had food, water, and everything I needed.'

❶ ناجح - موفق
❷ خادم
❸ أنك بذلت قصارى جهدك
❹ عاصفة
❺ بحثَ عن



'Another storm began. I saw a **giant snake** ⑥ in the **waves** ⑦. His body was gold and his eyes were bright blue. I fell down as he spoke.'

'How did you get to this island?' said the snake. 'I couldn't speak.' The snake put me in his mouth and took me to the place where he lived. He asked me again how I got to the island, so I told him about the **shipwreck** ⑧.

'Don't be frightened,' said the snake. 'You'll stay on the **island** ⑨ for four months, and you'll be safe. Then people will find you and take you home. **Be patient** ⑩, and you'll return to your family.'

Then the snake told me what happened to him.

'Long ago, I lived on the island with my children and brothers. A star fell, bringing a **terrible fire** ⑪. I was the only one to live. But I stayed strong and patient, and things **became better** ⑫.'

'Thank you,' I said. 'When I get home, I will send you many presents.' The snake laughed. 'I don't need your presents. I have everything I need here.'

'I was on the island for four months, then a ship came, just as the snake said. The snake gave me special presents to take home.'

'Tell people in your city about me,' he said.

'I returned to my family, gave the presents to the King, and he was **pleased** ⑬. So, listen to my story. I was in a terrible place, but now I'm safe.'

The man heard the story, and smiled.

⑥ ثعبان ضخم
⑦ الأمواج
⑧ حطام سفينة
⑨ الجزيرة
⑩ كن صبورًا
⑪ حريق مريع
⑫ تحسنت
⑬ سعيدًا - مسرورًا

The moral of the tale
العظة من القصة

You should always be patient when something bad happen and be sure that the things will get better.

يجب عليك أن تكون دائمًا صبورًا عندما يحدث شيئًا سيئًا وكن على يقين أن الأمور ستتحسن.

Exercises on Lessons 5 6

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

island - storm - journey - sailor

I was a ❶ .... I went on a journey for the King with the best sailors in the country. But a ❷ .... came, and our ship sank. I fell into the sea, and swam to an ❸ .... I was alone and frightened. Then, I looked for food, and the island had food, water, and everything I needed.

2 Choose the correct answer:

1. When the ship (sailed - sank - moved), they all fell into the sea.
2. The (pilot - driver - sailor) works on a ship.
3. The (island - lake - pond) is a piece of land with water all around it.
4. When you are (lazy - quick - patient), good things come to you.
5. He wasn't (frightened - successful - worried), so he was sad.
6. My grandma always tells us a (book - tale - recipe) when we go to bed. Her stories are very interesting.
7. When the ship was (fixed - wrecked - repaired), the sailor couldn't return home.
8. We want to go on a (swim - problem - journey) to Turkey next summer vacation.
9. The (servant - king - prince) always does what his master wants him to do.
10. She was (frightened - successful - clever), so I told her to relax.

3 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. island - you - How - this - did - get to?

▶ .... ?

2. other sailors - many - traveled - The man - with.

▶ ....

3. worried - Why - man - was - important - the?

▶ .... ?

4. the King - for - went - I - on - a journey.

▶ ....

5. on - the island - How long - servant - the - was?

▶ .... ?

6. will - I - you - send - presents - many.

▶ ....

7. moral - the - of - is - What - the story?

▶ .... ?

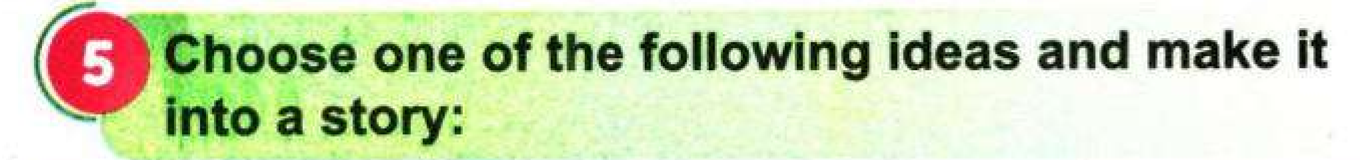


4 Read the story again and complete the table:



an island in the sea / people come and bring the servant home / a servant goes on a journey, but he is shipwrecked and meets a strange snake / the servant, the snake / the servant wants to go home, but he can't / I was in a terrible place, but now I'm safe

A good story has:	Examples
characters	*the servant, the snake*
setting	....
a plot	....
conflict	....
resolution	....





5 Choose one of the following ideas and make it into a story:

1. A family is traveling to see the Abu Simbel Sun Festival, but they have a problem on the journey.
2. A brother and sister want to decorate eggs for Sham El-Nessim, but they don't have any paint.
3. A brother and sister are visiting a new part of Egypt, and they don't know if they will like the food.

....

....

....

....

....

6 Write an email of (40) words to your friend Younes:

Tell him about the story you read in the library last week. Tell him the title of the story and your favorite character in it. Was the story interesting or not? Your email address is youssef@school.net. Your friend's email is younes@hotmail.com.

From:

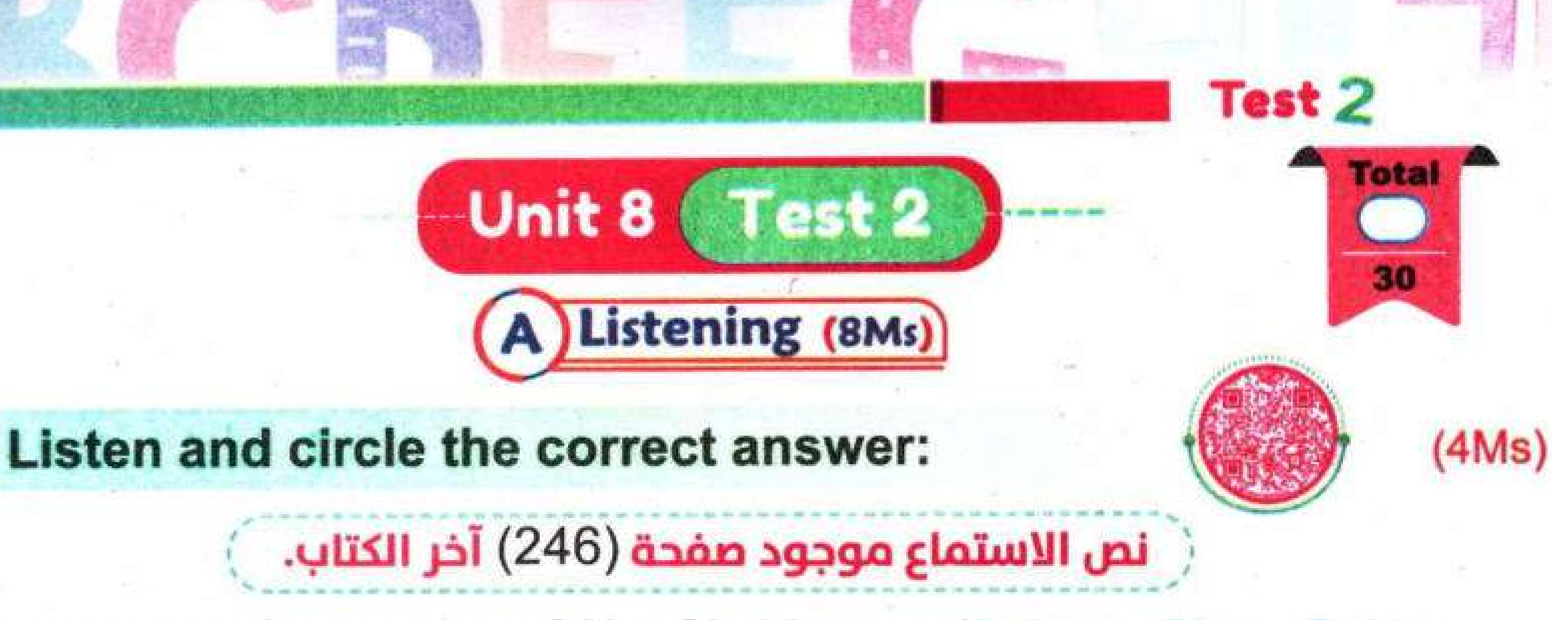
To:

Subject:

....

....

....



Unit 8 Test 2

Total
30

A Listening (8Ms)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (4Ms)

نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (246) آخر الكتاب.

1. You can see the temples of Abu Simble near (Sohag - Giza - Cairo - Aswan).
2. People celebrate the Abu Simble Sun Festival (once - twice - three times - four times) a year.
3. There are (four - five - six - seven) statues inside the temple.
4. People celebrate the Abu Simble Sun Festival there, on (January - February - March - April) 22nd.

2 Listen and complete: (4Ms)

نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (246) آخر الكتاب.

1. A .... Egyptian meal is served with people sitting together around a table.
2. A typical meal has rice, a kind of vegetable stew, soup, stuffed vegetables, and meat or ....
3. Egyptians are very ....
4. Egyptians are very happy when you ask for more ....

B Reading (11Ms)

3 Read and complete the dialouge with the words from the box: (3Ms)

dish - share - delicious - recipes

Aya : You have lots of different meals in your book, Grandma!

Grandma : Yes, I do. I often ❶ .... recipes with family and friends.

Aya : Can you make all of these ❷ .... ?

Grandma : Yes, I can. And I can easily show you, too!
Aya : Hmm, that's difficult. There are so many recipes to choose from.
Grandma : Don't worry. It will be easy. What would you like to make?
Aya : I like to try new things. These look ❸ .... !
Grandma : OK! Let's start now.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below: (4Ms)

Eid Al-Adha usually lasts for four days, and it is a very important Islamic festival. It celebrates the time when Ibrahim (peace be upon him) listened to God in a dream. At Eid Al-Adha, many people sacrifice a sheep and eat some of its meat in a traditional dish called fatta. We give out meat to our family and friends. We wear our best clothes for the celebrations and we visit our family and friends.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Eid Al-Adha usually lasts for (three - four - five - six) days.
2. At Eid Al-Adha, many people sacrifice a (bird - horse - hen - sheep).

B Answer these questions:

3. What do people eat at Eid Al-Adha?
   ▶ ....
4. What do people wear at Eid Al-Adha?
   ▶ ....

C The Reader (Shipwrecks)

5 A- Read and write T (True) or F (False): (4Ms)

1. A volcano destroyed the temple of Amun. (   )
2. The ship is the biggest and most exciting thing that the divers found. (   )

B Choose the correct answer:

3. The ship was waiting in the (street - port - airport - station) next to the temple of Amun.
4. Lots of ships use the (Dead - Mediterranean - Red - Caribbean) Sea.

D Writing (11Ms)

6 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. Men and women often (are wearing - wear - wears - doesn't wear) galabeya.
2. Today, I (talk - talks - doesn't talk - am talking) to Dr Samir.
3. She (celebrate - don't celebrate - is celebrating - celebrates) her wedding day on the fourth of July every year.
4. What does he (eat - eats - ate - eating) for lunch?

7 Order the words to make correct sentences: (2Ms)

1. often - jewelry - Ancient - beautiful - wore - Egyptians.

▶ ....

2. now, - What - Heba - doing - you - are?

▶ .... ?

8 Write an email of (40) words to your British friend Tom: (5Ms)

Tell him about Eid Al-Adha in Egypt. What does it celebrate? When does it happen? What do people do at Eid Al-Adha? How do you celebrate Eid Al- Adha with your family? Your email address is ahmed@hotmail.com. Your friend's email address is tom@yahoo.com.

From:

To:

Subject:

....

....



Unit 9

Our culture

ثقافتنا

Hot air balloons over th
Nile at Luxor

In this unit I will ....

- read about my cultural heritage.
- read a story about cultural artifacts.
- revise past simple verbs.
- form and use past continuous verbs.
- listen to information about tourism and archaeology.
- learn about and draw bar charts.
- write notes for an object in a museum.
- write a report about an archaeological site.

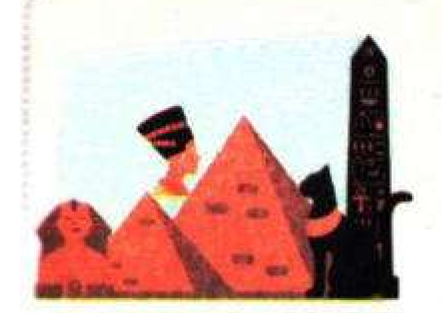
Objectives

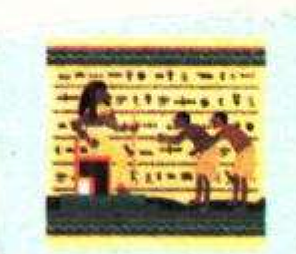
Vocabulary	**Cultural heritage:** agriculture, ancient Egypt, archaeologist, calendar, civilization, cruise, identity, irrigation, monument, site, temple **Cultural artifacts:** board game, bury, carve, clay, counter, engraving, mask, perfume, pottery, tool, vase **Drawing bar charts:** bar chart, horizontal, vertical
Language	- Akil and Ottah were happy. - Sara saw a senet game. - The children were playing a game. - The archaeologist was digging when she found an old box. **Sequences:** first, then, next, finally
Reading	**A text about heritage:** a story about an ancient game; fact files about museum artifacts
Writing	Interesting facts about ancient artifacts; a report about an archaeological site
Speaking	Talking about famous sites in Egypt and what you can see there
Listening	A description of traditional agriculture in Egypt; a text about tourism and archaeology in Egypt
Life skills	**Critical thinking:** understanding the importance of cultural heritage
Values	**Appreciation of science**
Issues and challenges	**Citizenship**
Integrated cross-curriculum topics	**Math:** bar charts

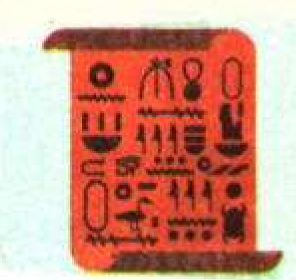


Lesson 1 What is heritage?

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس


heritage
تراث


identity
هوية

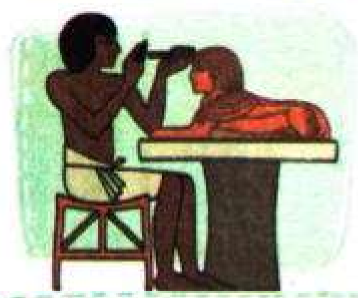

civilization
حضارة


temples
معابد


monuments
آثار


museum
متحف

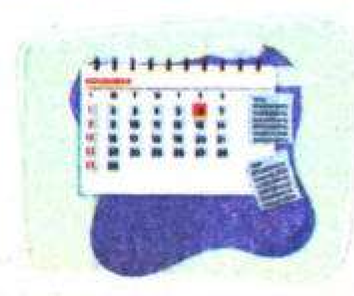

traditions
تقاليد


unique art
فن فريد (مميز)


archeologists
علماء آثار


historian
مؤرخ

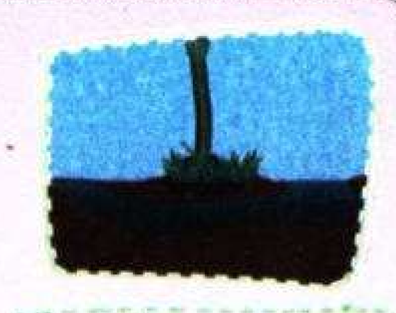

historical sites
مواقع تاريخية


calendar
نتيجة - تقويم


agriculture
الزراعة


farm - plant - grow
يزرع


soil
تربة


fertile - rich
خصبة





flooding season موسم الفيضان



growing season موسم الزراعة



harvesting season موسم الحصاد



crops محاصيل

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

growth	نمو	**interested in**	مهتم بـ - شغوف بـ
fields	حقول	**proud of**	فخور بـ
flood (v)	يفيض	**advanced**	متقدم
lead to	يؤدي إلى - يقود إلى	**objects**	أشياء
store safely	يخزن بأمان	**system**	نظام
during	خلال - أثناء	**connected to the Nile**	مرتبطة بالنيل

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
develop	يطور	developed	enjoy	يستمتع بـ	enjoyed
flood	يفيض	flooded	carry	يحمل	carried
last	يستمر	lasted	dance	يرقص	danced
farm	يزرع	farmed	include	يشتمل على	included
plant	يزرع	planted	store	يخزن	stored
connect	يرتبط	connected	explore	يستكشف	explored

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
lead to	يؤدي إلى	led to	come	يأتي	came
grow	يزرع	grew	build	يبني	built
cut	يقطع - يحصد	cut	see	يرى	saw
dig	يحفر	dug	know	يعرف	knew



Read and learn

Did you know? هل تعلم؟

The Rosetta stone is a special object that helped people understand hieroglyphics. It had the same words in two other languages that people could read, so they used these to translate the hieroglyphics! This is one of the ways we have learned about life in ancient Egypt.

حجر رشيد هو شيء مميز والذي ساعد الناس أن يفهموا اللغة الهيروغليفية. كان مكتوبًا عليه نفس الكلمات بلغتين أخرتين واللتين استطاع الناس قراءتهما؛ لذلك استخدموا هذه الكلمات لترجمة اللغة الهيروغليفية. وهذه هي إحدى الطرق التي علمتنا عن الحياة في مصر القديمة.

My heritage



A country's heritage ❶ is an important part of its identity❷. All countries have their own heritage, and it comes from its history and traditions. Heritage includes art, buildings, and objects❸ from the past, or things like food, music, and dancing. People in ancient Egypt built many amazing temples and monuments, and this is an important part of our heritage. They also developed agriculture❹ and some of the first calendars❺.

❶ تراث
❷ هوية
❸ أشياء
❹ طوروا الزراعة
❺ نتيجة - تقويم

Archaeologists have learned lots of interesting things about the civilization ⑥ of ancient Egypt by exploring ⑦ historical sites at places like Abu Simbel, Luxor, and Giza. I'm very interested in Egypt's heritage and I enjoy learning about it. I visit museums with my parents to learn about the things people did in the past. For example, did you know that the ancient Egyptians were one of the first civilizations to develop a system of writing? I'm very proud of my heritage.

⑥ حضارة
⑦ باستكشاف



Egypt's agricultural heritage





Agriculture is an important part of Egypt's heritage, too. The Nile used to flood ① every year, making the soil ② more fertile ③. This is why ancient Egyptians could farm the land and it led to a growth ④ in civilization. There were three seasons of farming in ancient Egypt, which were all connected to the Nile.

① يفيض
② التربة
③ أكثر خصوبة
④ نمو

The three seasons of farming

The flooding season ⑤

from June to September. The fields were full of water for four months.



The growing season ⑥

from October to February. The water went away and the soil was rich and fertile. Farmers planted lots of different crops.



The harvesting season ⑦

from March to May. Farmers cut the crops and stored them safely before the Nile flooded again.



⑤ موسم الفيضان ⑥ موسم الزراعة ⑦ موسم الحصاد



Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

objects - traditions - heritage - country

A country's ❶ .... is an important part of its identity. All countries have their own heritage, and it comes from its history and ❷ .... Heritage includes art, buildings, and ❸ .... from the past, or things like food, music, and dancing.

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

season - fertile - heritage - Nile

Omar : Hi, Ali. What are you doing?
Ali : Hi, Omar. I'm reading a book about agriculture in ancient Egypt.
Omar : Great! I know that agriculture is an important part of Egypt's ❶ ....
Ali : Sure. The ancient Egyptians were able to farm the land because of the River ❷ ....
Omar : How did the farmers use the Nile in agriculture?
Ali : The Nile used to flood every year, making the soil more ❸ .... This is why ancient Egyptians could farm the land.

3 Choose the correct answer:

1. A/An country's (heritage - calendar - agriculture) is an important part of its identity.
2. Heritage includes art, buildings, and objects from the (past - future - present).
3. Archaeologists have learned about the civilization of ancient Egypt by (including - developing - exploring) many historical sites.
4. The Nile used to (flood - store - plant) every year, making the soil more fertile.
5. The seasons of farming in ancient Egypt were (connected - developed - flooded) to the Nile.
6. Farmers cut the crops and stored them safely in the (flooding - growing - harvesting) season.

7. We use a (calendar - temple - site) to see what day, month or time of year it is.
8. A (heritage - civilization - archaeologist) is a large group of people who have their unique art, music, science, etc.
9. You can learn about how people lived in the past by visiting (museums - fields - farms).
10. (Historians - Archaeologists - Tourists) find out more monuments from time to time.

4 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

Activity Book

crops - flooded - growing - June to September - March to May - October to February

The ancient Egyptians were able to farm the land because of the River Nile. Every year, the Nile ❶ .... during the flooding season. The Egyptians couldn't farm the land because the fields were full of water. The flooding season lasted from ❷ ....
After the flood water went away, the soil was fertile and good for farming. This was the ❸ .... season. It lasted from ❹ ....
During this time, farmers planted their crops. They dug canals to carry water from the river to the fields.
During the harvesting seasons, farmers cut and stored their ❺ ....
It lasted from ❻ ....

5 Read the following text and answer the questions below:

A country's heritage is an important part of its identity. All countries have their own heritage, and it comes from its history and traditions. Heritage includes art, buildings, and objects from the past, or things like food, music, and dancing. People in ancient Egypt built many amazing temples and monuments, and this is an important part of our heritage. They also developed agriculture and some of the first calendars.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. People in ancient Egypt built many amazing (hotels - museums - temples).
2. The ancient Egyptians developed some of the first (clocks - calendars - watches).

B Answer these questions:

3. Why is heritage important?
▶ ....

4. What does heritage include?
▶ ....

6 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. heritage - Egypt's - I'm - in - interested - very.
▶ ....

2. do - farmers - What - in - grow - Egypt?
▶ .... ?

3. like - I - museums - visiting - my parents - with.
▶ ....

4. of writing - a system - developed - Ancient - Egyptians.
▶ ....

5. sites - you - would - Which - to visit - like?
▶ .... ?

6. to - the Nile - were connected - seasons - The farming.
▶ ....

7 Write an email of (40) words to your friend Jack:

▶ Tell him about Egypt's heritage. What does this heritage include? What did the ancient Egyptians build? How did the ancient Egyptians develop agriculture? Your email address is adel@school.net. Your friend's email address is jack@hotmail.com.

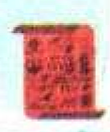
From:
To:
Subject:
....
....
....

Lesson 2 An ancient game



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس





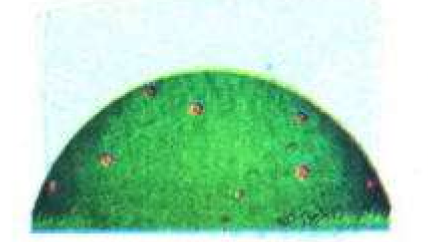
Egyptian artifacts
آثار (تحف) مصرية



rich people
الأغنياء



ordinary people
أناس عاديين



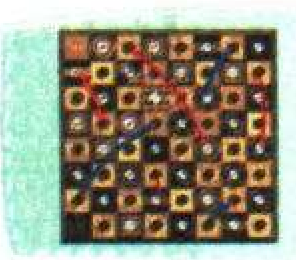
hill
تل




board game
لعبة تلعب على لوحة



wooden box
صندوق خشبي



squares on the top
مربعات على الأعلى



counters
أشكال

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

Prepositions

look after	يعتني بـ	walk away	يبتعد - يمشي بعيدًا
look up	يرفع نظره	fly away	يطير بعيدًا
look around	ينظر حوله	take out	يُخْرِج
look at	ينظر إلى	wave at	يُلَوِّح بيده لـ
look like	يشبه - يبدو	turn on	يفتح جهاز

- The following words are used to put sentences in order in a story.
- الكلمات الآتية تُستخدم لترتيب الأحداث في القصة.

first	أولاً - في البداية	then	ثم
next	ثم - بعد ذلك	finally	أخيرًا

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
walk away	يبتعد - يمشي بعيدًا	walked away	wave	يلوح - يشاور	waved
play	يلعب	played	move	يتحرك	moved
help	يساعد	helped	stop	يتوقف	stopped
walk	يمشي	walked	invent	يخترع	invented
look after	يعتنى بـ	looked after	study	يذاكر	studied
wonder	يتساءل	wondered	turn on	يفتح جهاز	turned on

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
read	يقرأ	read	take out	يُخرج	took out
do	يفعل	did	show	يظهر - يوضح	showed
find	يجد	found	sit	يجلس	sat
wear	يرتدي	wore	make	يصنع - يُعد	made
get	يحصل على	got	have	لديه - عنده	had

Read and learn

An ancient game

Akil often helped his dad look after their goats. One day, he was sitting under a tree. It was a hot day, and he was tired. Then he saw his friend Ottah, and waved at him ❶. Ottah was carrying a bag, and he looked happy when he saw Akil.





❶ شاور له



'Look, Akil! My dad made me a game!' He showed Akil a long wooden box ❷ with squares ❸ on the top. The box had beautiful pictures on the side ❹. Next, he took out some counters ❺ from his bag. Seven were tall, and seven were short.

'That looks fun! What do we have to do?' said Akil.

'We have to move the counters and see how far we can move. The winner ❻ is the first to get all their counters off the board ❼. Let's play!'

Ottah and Akil played happily under the tree. Then Akil looked up. 'Oh no!' he said. 'Ottah, where are my goats?'

Ottah and Akil looked around. The goats were walking away over a small hill ❽.

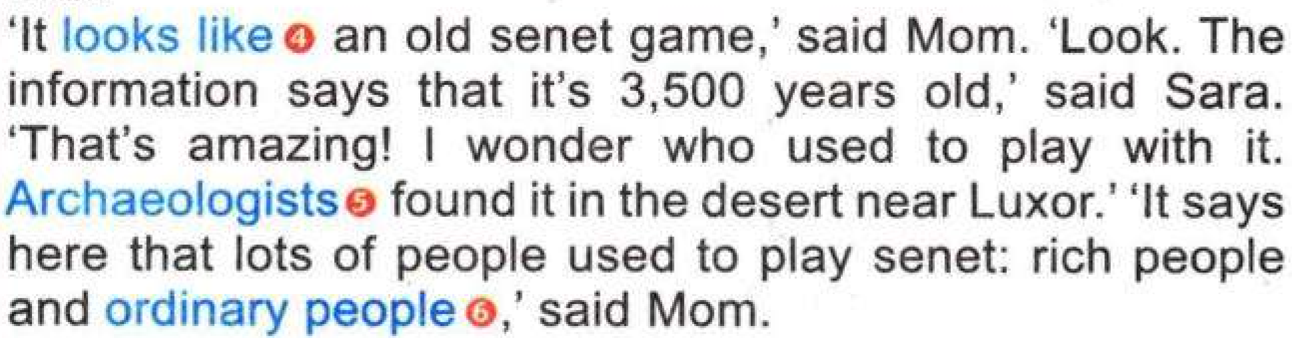
'Look, there they are!' Akil said. 'Quick! We have to get them!'

❷ صندوق خشبي
❸ مربعات
❹ على جانبه
❺ أشكال
❻ الفائز
❼ خارج اللوحة
❽ تل

What did Sara see in the museum?



Sara was in the museum ❶ with her mom and dad. They were looking at Egyptian artifacts ❷. There were lots of very old things and Sara was reading the information ❸ about each object. Finally, Sara stopped in front of a long wooden box. 'Mom, Dad, look at this!' she said. 'What is it?' asked Dad.



'It looks like ❹ an old senet game,' said Mom. 'Look. The information says that it's 3,500 years old,' said Sara. 'That's amazing! I wonder who used to play with it. Archaeologists ❺ found it in the desert near Luxor.' 'It says here that lots of people used to play senet: rich people and ordinary people ❻,' said Mom.

'Maybe children like me played with this game!' said Sara.

❶ متحف
❷ تحف مصرية
❸ معلومات
❹ تبدو كأنها
❺ علماء آثار
❻ أناس عاديين

Did you know? هل تعلم؟

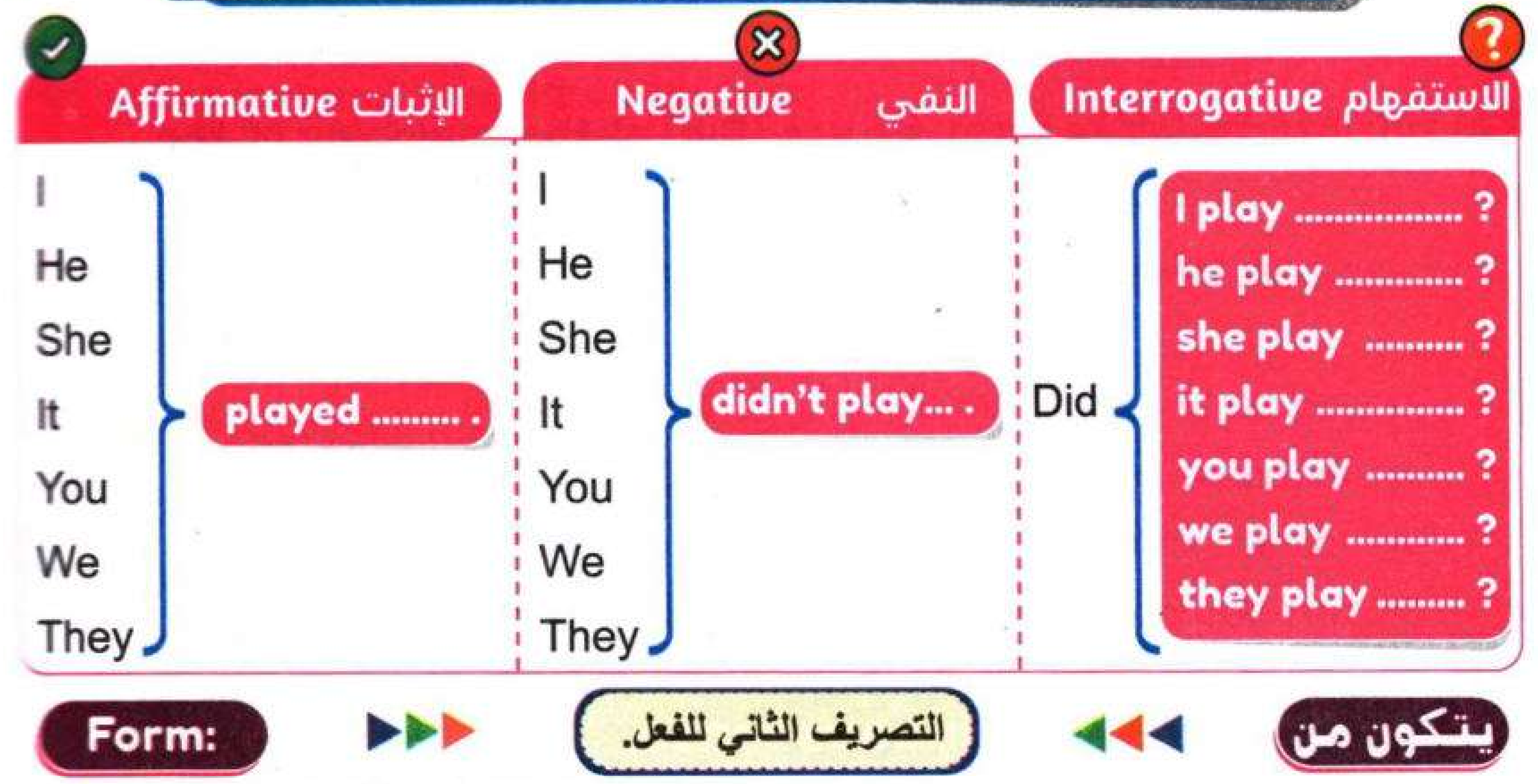
Senet is the world's oldest board game. Archaeologists found a senet game in Tutankhamun's tomb!

لعبة السينت هي أقدم لعبة تلعب على لوحة. علماء الآثار وجدوا لعبة السينت في مقبرة توت عنخ آمون.

Grammar Study



The past simple tense زمن الماضي البسيط



Affirmative الإثبات	Negative النفي	Interrogative الاستفهام
I / He / She / It / You / We / They } played	I / He / She / It / You / We / They } didn't play... .	Did { I play .... ?
		he play .... ?
		she play .... ?
		it play .... ?
		you play .... ?
		we play .... ?
		they play .... ?

Form: ▶▶▶ التصريف الثاني للفعل. ◀◀◀ يتكون من

- Akil saw his friend Ottah.
- Ottah showed Akil a long wooden box.
- He took out some counters from his bag.
- Ottah and Akil played happily under the tree.

We use it to express an action that happened in the past.

يستخدم للتعبير عن أحداث وقعت في الماضي.

- He looked happy when he saw his friend yesterday.

We sometimes use some words with the past simple as:

يستخدم للتعبير عن أحداث وقعت في الماضي.

Key words

yesterday	أمس	in the past	في الماضي
ago	منذ	last.... (week)	الأسبوع الماضي
in ... (date) ... (1990)	في	one day - once	ذات مرة - في يوم ما

- He bought a postcard yesterday.
- She was a baby eight years ago.

In the negative form, we use (didn't) before the bare verb.

ننفـي الماضي البسيط باستخدام (didn't)، ثم الفعل فـي المصدر.

- She didn't wear her new dress yesterday.
- Noha didn't go to school because she was ill.

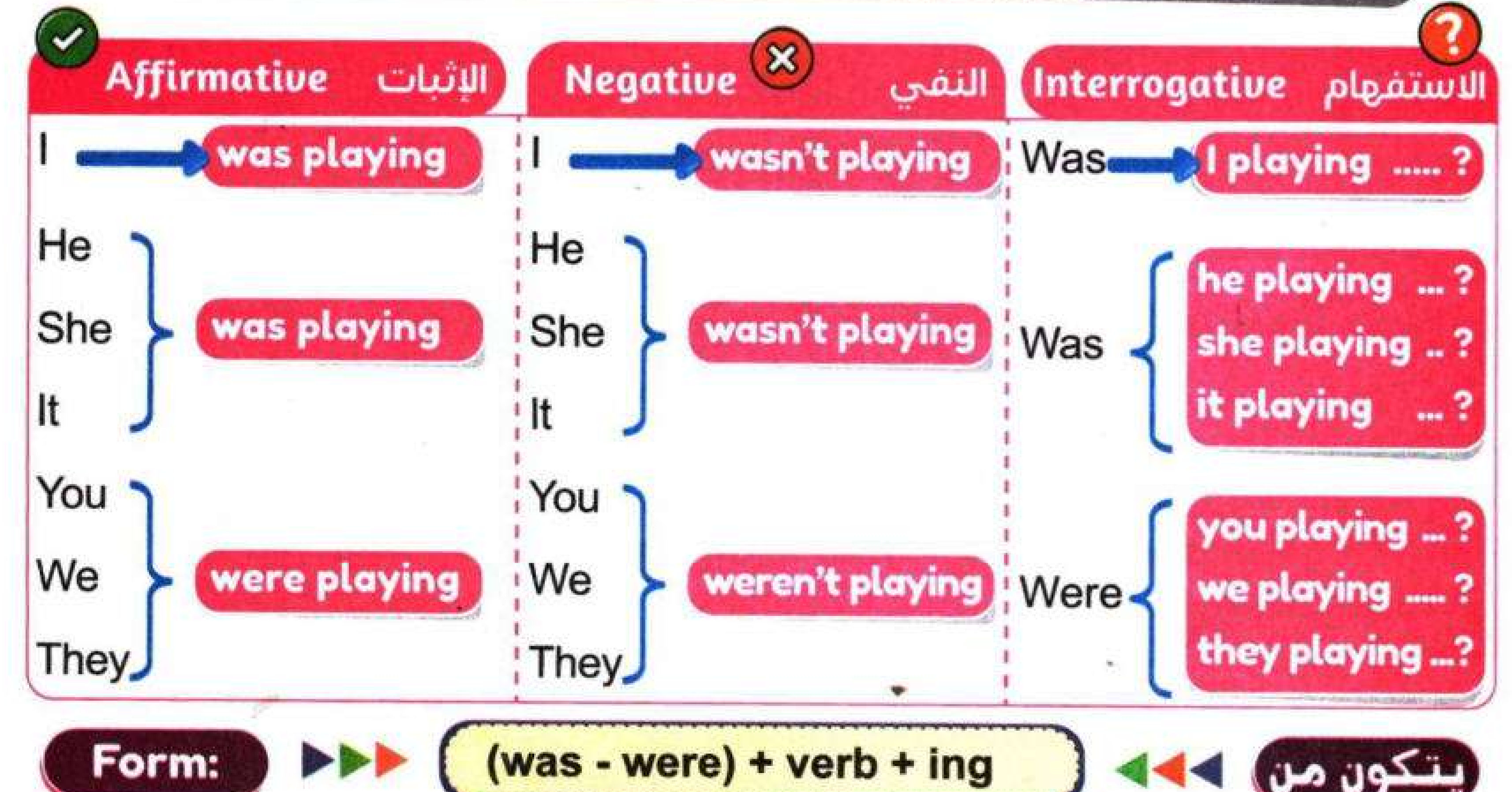
In the interrogative form, we use (Did) at the beginning of the question or after the question word with the bare verb.

عند عمل سؤال فـي الماضي البسيط, نبدأ السؤال بـ (Did)، أو نضعها بعد كلمة الاستفهام مع الفعل فـي المصدر.

- Did they go to a museum? — Yes, they did.
- Did she buy a new game? — No, she didn't.
- What did he do in the morning? — He went to school.
- What did you do last week? — I visited my grandmother.



The past continuous tense زمن الماضي المستمر



Affirmative الإثبات	Negative النفي	Interrogative الاستفهام
I was playing	I wasn't playing	Was I playing ..... ?
He / She / It was playing	He / She / It wasn't playing	Was he playing ... ? / she playing .. ? / it playing ... ?
You / We / They were playing	You / We / They weren't playing	Were you playing ... ? / we playing ..... ? / they playing ...?

Form: (was - were) + verb + ing **يتكون من**

- They were looking at Egyptian artifacts.
- Ottah was carrying a bag.
- The goats were walking away over a small hill.

- **We use it to express an action that was in the middle of happening at a stated time in the past.**
- يعبر عن حدث كان مستمرًا حدوثه في الماضي (استغرق حدوثه فترة من الوقت).
  - Sara was reading the information about each object.
  - He was sitting under a tree.

- **In the negative form, we use (not) after (was - were).**
- عند النفي نضع (not) بعد (was - were).
  - They weren't playing football at two o'clock.

- **In the interrogative form, we use (was - were) at the beginning of the question or after the question word with the (verb + ing).**
- عند عمل سؤال نبدأ بـ (was - were) أو نضع إحداهما بعد كلمة الإستفهام مع (الفعل + ing)

What were you doing yesterday?	I was working in the garden.
Were they playing football?	No, they weren't.

ملحوظة هامة:

كيف نميز بين اختيار الماضي البسيط والماضي المستمر.

أولاً: الماضي المستمر يستخدم مع الأفعال التي تستغرق فترة من الوقت عند حدوثها مثل الأفعال: (..... sleep - rain - walk - study - play - wait)

When عندما

ثانيًا: أحيانًا ما يستخدم الماضي المستمر للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرًا في الماضي عندما قطعه حدث آخر. فالحدث الذي كان مستمرًا نضعه في الماضي المستمر والحدث الذي قطعه نضعه في الماضي البسيط وأحيانًا ما نربط بينهما بالرابط (when)

(حدث كان مستمرًا وقطعه حدث آخر) ماضي مستمر ◀◀◀ ماضي بسيط + (عندما) When

- The archaeologists were digging when they found an old box.
- When the archaeologists found an old box, they were digging.
- فالحدث الذي كان مستمرًا هنا أن علماء الآثار كانوا يحفرون والحدث الذي قطعه أنهم وجدوا صندوق قديم.

- We were having dinner when dad came back home.
- When dad came back home, we were having dinner.
- فالحدث الذي كان مستمرًا هنا أننا كنا نتناول العشاء والحدث الذي قطعه أن الأب عاد للبيت.

Exercises on Lesson 2

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

first – box – bag – counters

Akil and Ottah are friends. One day, Ottah showed Akil a long wooden ❶ .... with squares on the top. The box had beautiful pictures on the side. Next, he took out some ❷ .... from his bag. Seven were tall, and seven were short. They moved the counters and saw how far they can move. The winner is the ❸ .... to get all their counters off the board.

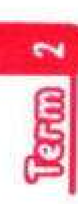
2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

senet - museum - ordinary - artifacts

Sara was in the ❶ .... with her mom and dad. They were looking at Egyptian ❷ .... There were lots of very old things and Sara was reading the information about each object. Finally, Sara stopped in front of a long wooden box. It looked like an old senet game. In ancient Egypt, lots of people used to play senet: rich people and ❸ .... people.

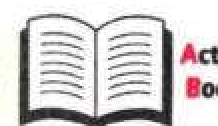
3 Choose the correct answer:

1. Farmers (grow - grew - grows) different crops in ancient Egypt.
2. They (enjoy - are enjoying - enjoyed) the party yesterday.
3. We (are learning - learned - learn) lots of useful things last week.
4. My uncle (came - come - comes) to our house at five. We were happy.
5. My friends and I (played - play - are playing) a board game last night.
6. She (doesn't - isn't - didn't) want to go to the park last Monday.



7. What did your sister (do - does - did) yesterday?
8. He didn't (went - going - go) out last weekend.
9. (Are - Did - Does) Ali study math yesterday?
10. Did she (help - helps - helped) her mom last Saturday?
11. I didn't (see - saw - sees) my friend Ahmed yesterday.
12. They (is - was - were) playing a game.
13. I (was - were - are) carrying a heavy box.
14. She (are - was - were) looking after her cat.
15. What (is - was - were) you doing at ten?
16. We (was - were - is) walking along the river last evening.
17. Ali (was - were - are) helping his dad wash the car.
18. Yasmin was (visit - visited - visiting) the museum yesterday.
19. They were (wore - wear - wearing) their best clothes at the party last Friday.
20. The archaeologists (dig - dug - were digging) when they found an old box.
21. I (studied - was studying - am studying) in the library when I saw Fares.
22. Mom (is making - made - was making) cookies when dad came home.
23. I (found - was finding - were finding) my lost pen. I was very happy.
24. I (was stopping - were stopping - stopped) to talk to my neighbor Omar.
25. We (took - was taking - were taking) a photo of the bird when it flew away.

4 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:



found - learned - turned on - was playing - was reading - saw - was sitting - was wearing - were looking

Sara and her parents ❶ .... at the Egyptian artifacts in the museum. Sara ❷ .... some information to her parents from the museum brochure. She ❸ .... that archaeologists often ❹ .... a senet game in Egyptian tombs with all the other artifacts. Sara wanted to find out more. First, she ❺ .... her phone and started to look online. Then she found something interesting. She ❻ .... a beautiful painting of Queen Nefertari, the wife of Ramses II. In the painting. Queen Nefertari ❼ .... a long white dress. She ❽ .... on a chair of black and gold, and she ❾ .... senet!

5 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. beautiful - The box - pictures - had - on the side.
   ▶ ....
2. was - the museum - Sara - in - dad - with her.
   ▶ ....
3. Sara - did - What - the museum - see - in?
   ▶ .... ?
4. looks - like - It - senet game - an - old.
   ▶ ....
5. is - oldest - board - Senet - game - the world's.
   ▶ ....

6 Complete the sentences using the words from the box: Activity Book

Finally - First - Next - Then

1. ...., Sara read some information in a museum brochure.
2. .... she wanted to find out more.
3. .... she turned on her phone.
4. ...., she found some interesting information about Queen Nefertari

7 Write an email of (40) words to your friend Sarah:

▶ Tell her about your visit to the museum last week. Who did you go with? What Egyptian artifacts did you see there? Did you enjoy your time or not? Your email address is reem@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is sarah@gmail.com.

From:

To:

Subject:

....

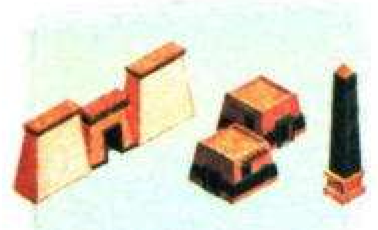
....

....



Lesson 3 Tourism and archaeology

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس

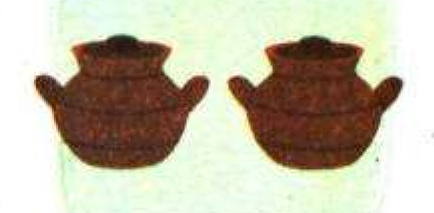






structures بنايات	**tools** أدوات	**masks** أقنعة	**perfume** برفان






pottery أواني فخارية	**clay** طين صلصال	**pots** أواني	**vases** فازات






tombs مقابر	**engravings** نقوشات	**paintings** رسومات	**cruise** رحلة نهرية

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

archaeological sites	مواقع أثرية	**capital city**	العاصمة
popular sites	مواقع هامة	**port**	ميناء
tourists	سياح	**piece of stone**	كتلة من الصخر
incredible	لا يصدق	**carve (v)**	ينحت
much simpler	أبسط كثيرًا	**bury (v)**	يدفن

Important historical sites أماكن تاريخية هامة

Giza		Saqqara	
the Pyramids	الأهرامات	the Step Pyramid	هرم زوسر المدرج
the Sphinx	أبو الهول		

Alexandria		Luxor	
the Roman Theater	المسرح الروماني	Temple of Karnak	معبد الكرنك
Qaitbay Citadel	قلعة قايتباي	Valley of the Kings	وادي الملوك
Library of Alexandria	مكتبة الإسكندرية		

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
visit	يزور	visited	decorate	يُزَيِّن - يزخرف	decorated
want	يريد - يرغب	wanted	carve	ينحت - ينقُش	carved
travel	يسافر	traveled	bury	يدفن	buried

Definitions تعريفات (Activity Book)

bury	: to put underground (تحت الأرض).
carve	: to cut using a sharp knife (سكينة حادة) or axe (بلطة).
cruise	: a holiday on a ship.



Read and learn

Where can you see engravings?



Lots of people visit Egypt every year because of the amazing archaeological sites ❶. Tourists want to see the large monuments ❷, pyramids, and temples. It is incredible ❸ to think that ancient Egyptians were building these amazing structures ❹ over 4,000 years ago, when civilizations ❺ in other countries were much simpler. Archaeologists ❻ have found lots of artifacts such as tools, pottery, vases, and masks. These can tell us about how people lived in ancient Egypt. For example, we know that ancient Egyptians used lots of pottery. They made pottery vases from clay, and they sometimes decorated them. They used them to hold water and food. They also made small pots for oil or perfume.

❶ مواقع أثرية
❷ آثار
❸ لا يصدق
❹ بنايات
❺ حضارات
❻ علماء الآثار

So, what are some of the most popular sites that tourists want to visit?

Giza

Sometimes when people think about Egypt, they think of the Pyramids and the Sphinx ❼ at Giza. They are famous all over the world. Archaeologists think that the ancient Egyptians built the Sphinx to protect the Pyramids. They carved it ❽ from one huge piece of stone.

❼ أبو الهول
❽ نحتوه

Saqqara



This is one of the biggest sites in Egypt. It has many tombs ❾, including one of the oldest pyramids in Egypt. Builders made this for King Djoser in about 2630 BCE. It is the Step Pyramid, and it is one of the oldest stone monuments.

❾ مقابر

Alexandria

There are lots of things to see in this **port** ⑩ city, including a Roman theatre, the old town, and Qaitbay Citadel. Alexandria used to be the **capital city** ⑪ of Egypt. It had the first Library of Alexandria, which is famous all over the world.

⑩ ميناء
⑪ العاصمة
⑫ رحلة نهرية
⑬ دفنوا
⑭ نقوشات

Luxor

Many tourists visit Luxor from a Nile River **cruise** ⑫. They can see the Temple of Karnak and the Valley of the Kings. Ancient Egyptians **buried** ⑬ their kings and queens here for thousands of years. You can see lots of paintings and **engravings** ⑭ in the temples. There are lots of other amazing things to see in Egypt. What would you like to visit?

Exercises on Lesson 3

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:



decorate - oil - clay - food

Ancient Egyptians used lots of pottery. They made pottery vases from ❶ .... They used them to hold water and ❷ .... They also made small pots for ❸ .... or perfume.

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

stone – Builders – tombs – King

Saqqara is one of the biggest sites in Egypt. It has many ❶...................., including one of the oldest pyramids in Egypt. ❷ .... made this for King Djoser in about 2630 BCE. It is the Step Pyramid, and it is one of the oldest ❸ .... monuments.

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

Giza - Luxor - cruise - Temple

Hany : Hi, Ahmed. What are you doing?

Ahmed : Hi, Hany. I'm inviting my friends to a river ❶ ....

Hany : Which city are you going to visit?

Ahmed : We are going to visit ❷ ....

Hany : What can we see there?

Ahmed : The ❸ .... of Karnak and the Valley of the Kings.

Hany : Great! Can I join you?

Ahmed : Yes, of course.

4 Choose the correct answer:

1. Lots of people visit the archaeological (tourists - sites - boats) in Egypt every year.
2. Some (painters - doctors - archaeologists) have found lots of artifacts such as tools, pottery, vases and masks.
3. Ancient Egyptians made pottery vases from (cotton - clay - leather).
4. Ancient Egyptians used pottery (masks - vases - tools) to hold water and food.
5. Ancient Egyptians made small pots for oil or (dresses - perfume - skirts).
6. Saqqara has many (pots - tombs - vases) including one of the oldest pyramids in Egypt.
7. You can see the (Roman Theatre - Sphinx - Pyramids) in Alexandria.
8. Many tourists visit Luxor for a Nile River (journey - cruise - trip).
9. I visited the (Valley of the Kings - Sphinx - Qaitbay Citadel) in Luxor last year.
10. Ancient Egyptians (buried - built - visited) three kings in the Pyramids of Giza.



5 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. The Pyramids - and - Giza - in - are - the Sphinx.
   ▶ ....
2. to - do - many tourists - How - Luxor - travel?
   ▶ .... ?
3. is - the biggest - sites - one of - in Egypt - Saqqara.
   ▶ ....
4. cruise - from - Many - tourists - visit Luxor - a Nile River.
   ▶ ....
5. engravings - you - can - see - Where?
   ▶ .... ?
6. visit - What - like - would - to - you?
   ▶ .... ?

6 Write a paragraph of (40) words using the following guiding elements:

"Alexandria"

Ideas to help you:

- *Where is it?*
- *Its history and importance.*
- *What is it famous for?*
- *Its popular sites.*

....
....
....
....
....

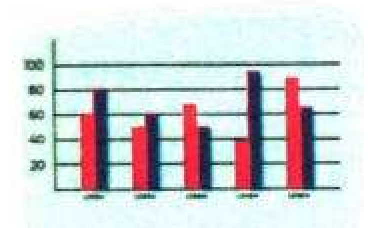




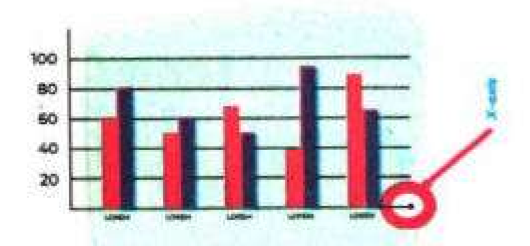


Lesson 4 Math

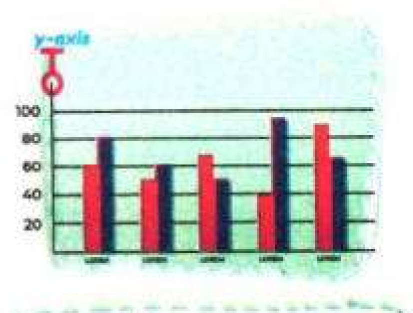
Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



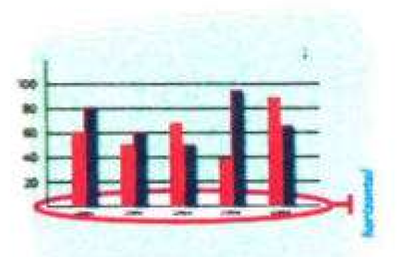
bar chart
رسم بياني



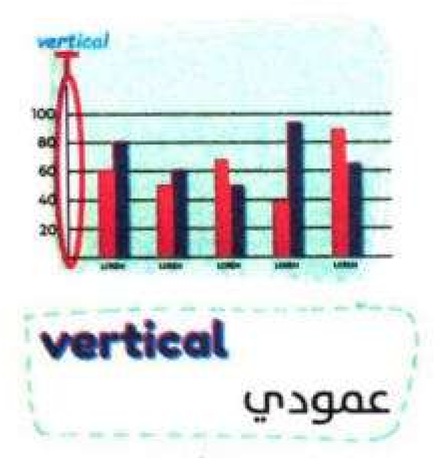
x-axis
محور ال س



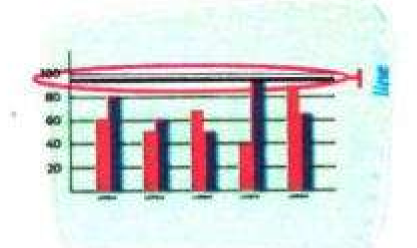
y-axis
محور ال ص



horizontal
أفقي - عرضي



vertical
عمودي



line
خط - سطر

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

International Museum Day	يوم المتحف العالمي	**design (v)**	يصمم
exhibitions	المعروضات	**plan (v)**	يخطط
project	مشروع	**decide**	يقرر

Definitions تعريفات SB Student's Book

x-axis	: the line across the bottom.
y-axis	: the line that goes up.

Term 2

Conjugation of Verbs

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
put	يضع	put	show	يُظهِر - يُبَيِّن	showed
can	يستطيع	could	tell	يُخبِر	told
go up	يرتفع (يصعد) لأعلى - يكون رأسيًا	went up	hold	يحتفظ بِ	held
go across	يمشي بالعرض - يكون أفقيًا	went across	get	يُحضر	got



Read and learn

What does Adam have to show?

Adam was doing his school project. 'This is a really interesting project, Mom!' he said. 'What do you have to do?' she asked.

'We're learning about International Museum Day ❶.

We have to design a new museum and say what is in it. There are many different exhibitions ❷ that show different things, and we have to show which the most popular exhibition is.'

'OK, so what are you going to put in your museum ❸?' Mom asked.

'Let me think,' said Adam. 'Maybe a room about art, and one about games.



Can you help me to plan it ❹?

'Ok! Let's get your paper, colored pens and a ruler!' said Mom.

❶ يوم المتحف العالمي
❷ معارض مختلفة
❸ في متحفك
❹ لكي أخططه

What's an axis?



Adam wanted to show the most popular exhibition in his museum. He used a **bar chart** ❶ to show how many people visited the exhibitions. The line across the bottom is calle the **x-axis** ❷. It is **horizontal** ❸. The x-axis here shows the different exhibitions. The **y-axis** ❹ is the line that goes up. It is **vertical** ❺. The y-axis here shows the number of visitors on one day in July.

❶ رسم بياني
❷ محور الـ س
❸ أفقي - عرضي
❹ محور الـ ص
❺ عمودي

Visitors in the new museum

60
50
40
30
20
10
0

Clothes and jewelry
Games
Art
Pottery
Homes
Tools and agriculture



Exercises on Lesson 4

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:



bar chart - Day - design - exhibition - show

Adam is learning about International Museum ❶ .... For his school project, he has to ❷ .... a new museum and say what is in it. Then he has to ❸ .... which is the most popular ❹ .... He decides to do this using a ❺ ....

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

games - project - play - design

Mom : What are you doing, Adam?

Adam : I'm doing my school ❶ ....

Mom : What do you have to do?

Adam : I have to ❷ .... a new museum and say what is in it.

Mom : What are you going to put in your museum?

Adam : Maybe a room about art or ❸ .... Can you help me to plan it?

Mom : Sure. Let's get your paper, colored pens and a ruler!

3 Read again and complete the sentences:



1. The line that goes across the bottom is .... It is called the ....

2. The line that goes up is .... It is called the ....

4 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. doing - Adam - was - project - school - his.

▶ ....

2. you - have - do - to - do - What?

▶ .... ?

3. in your museum - put - you - are - What - going to?

▶ .... ?

4. exhibition - most - had - Which - visitors - the?

▶ .... ?

5 Write an email of (40) words to your friend Amgad:

▶ Tell him about your school project about the International Museum Day. What do you have to do? What are you going to do in your museum? What do the exhibitions show? Your email address is adam@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is amgad@school.net.

From:

To:

Subject:

....

....

....

....

....

....

Lessons 5-6 Writing & project



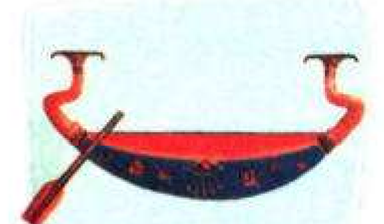
Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



skies
السماوات



gold mask
قناع ذهبي



solar boat
قارب شمسي



pharaoh
فرعون



report (n)
تقرير



newspaper
صحيفة



death
الموت



limestone
حجر جيري

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

Question Words

What	ما - ماذا	Which	أي
Where	أين	Who	من
When	متي	How	كيف
What time	متى (تسأل عن الساعة)	How old	كم عمر
Why	لماذا	How big	ما حجم

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
add	يُضيف	added	use	يستخدم - يستعمل	used
belong to	ينتمي إلى	belonged to	complete	يُكمِل	completed
believe	يُصَدِّق	believed	introduce	يُقَدِّم	introduced



Read and learn

Did you know? هل تعلم؟

The Grand Egyptian Museum has more than 5,000 items that belonged to the Pharaoh Tutankhamun

المتحف المصرى الكبير يحوي أكثر من 5,000 قطعة تخص الفرعون توت عنخ آمون.



Tip!

When you give information: **عندما تعطي معلومات:**

1. You often have to answer questions such as Who, What, When, Where, and How.

   1. فأنت في الغالب تجيب على أسئلة مثل من، ما، متى، أين وكيف،

2. You give facts, not opinions.

   2. فأنت تعطي حقائق وليست آراء.

3. Facts can include names, dates, and places.

   3. الحقائق من الممكنِ أن تشتمل على أسماء، تواريخ وأماكن.

4. Then you can add more interest by giving extra information. This might not answer a Wh- question, but it is something that people might want to know.

   4. ثم يمكنك إضافة إهتمام أكثر بتقديم المزيد من المعلومات. والمعلومات الإضافية لن تكون إجابة على الأسئلة البادئة بأداة إستفهام ولكنها شيئًا ما ربما يود الناس معرفته.

These are the museum notes.



1 Statue of Amenhotep III

What is it? the statue of Amenhotep III, his wife Tiye and their three daughters
How old is it? about 3,400 years old
What is it made of? Limestone
How big is it? 7 meters tall, 4.4 meters wide
Where is it from? Luxor

2 Pharaoh Khufu's solar boat



What is it? a wooden boat found in Pharaoh Khufu's tomb
How old is it? about 4,600 years old
What is it made of? Wood
How big is it? 42 meters long
Where is it from? Giza

3 Tutankhamun's mask



What is it? a gold mask
How old is it? over 3,000 years old
What is it made of? gold
How big is it? 54 cm tall
Where is it from? The Valley of the Kings

Exercises on Lessons 5 6

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

tomb - solar - ancient - boat

The Pharaoh Khufu's solar ❶ .... is a very famous monument. It's a wooden boat found in Pharaoh Khufu's ❷ .... It's called a solar boat because ❸ .... Egyptians believed that it would take the person across the skies after death.

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

limestone - gold - old - statue

Tourist : Could you tell me the name of this statue, please?
Tour guide : Sure. It's the ❶ .... of Amenhotep III, his wife Tiye and their three daughters.
Tourist : How ❷ ....is it?
Tour guide : It's about 3,400 years old.
Tourist : What is it made of?
Tour guide : It's made of ❸ ....
Tourist : Where is it from?
Tour guide : It's from Luxor.

3 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. is - of - What - made - it?
▶ ....?
2. has traveled - countries - other - to - mask - This.
▶ ....
3. is - Where - from - statue - the?
▶ ....?
4. old - the - mask - How - is?
▶ ....?
5. is - in - This - statue - the largest - Egypt.
▶ ....
6. oldest - is - Which - the - artifact?
▶ ....?

4 Write a report on the following topic:



Archaeologists were working in the desert when they found an amazing site. This is a very old city and nobody knew it was there.

1. When did archaeologists find this?

2. Where is it?

3. What did they find?

4. Why is this an important site?

....

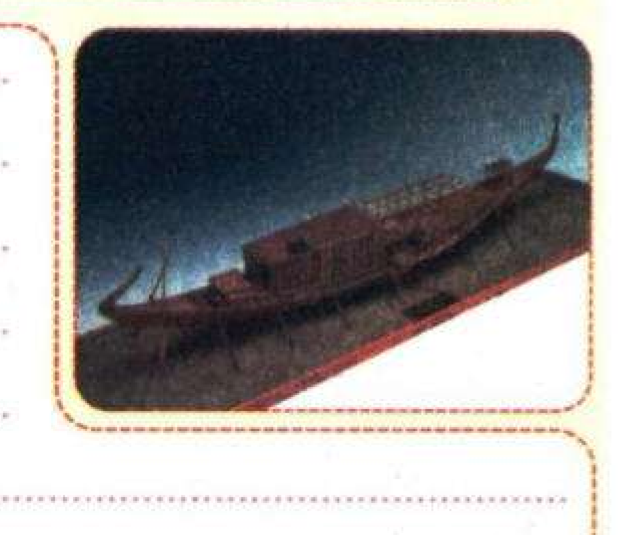
5 Write a paragraph of (40) words using the following guiding elements:

"Pharaoh Khufu's solar boat"

Ideas to help you:

- What is it? a wooden boat found in Pharaoh Khufu's tomb
- How old is it? about 4,600 years old
- What is it made of? Wood
- How big is it? 42 meters long
- Where is it from? Giza

....



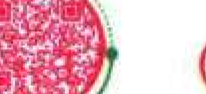
Unit 9 Test 3





A Listening (8Ms)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (4Ms)



نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (247) آخر الكتاب.

1. Luxor is full of different (ships - museums - traditions - monuments) from ancient Egypt.
2. Many tourists visit Luxor from a Nile River (flight - cruise - picnic - walk).
3. Ancient Egyptians (buried - explored - designed - dug) their kings and queens in the Valley of Kings for thousands of years.
4. You can see lots of paintings and (drawings - photos - engravings - tombs) in the temples.

2 Listen and complete: (4Ms)

نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (247) آخر الكتاب.

1. .... is an important part of Egypt's heritage, too.
2. The Nile used to .... every year, making the soil more fertile.
3. There were three........................... of farming in ancient Egypt.
4. The seasons of farming in ancient Egypt were all connected to the ....

B Reading (11Ms)

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box: (3Ms)

heritage - monuments - Archaeologists - civilizations

Lots of people visit Egypt every year because of the amazing archaeological sites. ❶ .... have found lots of amazing artifacts. Tourists want to see the large ❷ ...., pyramids, and temples. It is incredible to think that ancient Egyptians were building these amazing structures over 4,000 years ago, when ❸ ...., in other countries were much simpler.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below: (4Ms)

Archaeologists have learned lots of interesting things about the civilization of ancient Egypt by exploring historical sites at places like Abu Simbel, Luxor, and Giza. I'm very interested in Egypt's heritage and I enjoy learning about it. I visit museums to learn about the things people did in the past. For example, the ancient Egyptians were one of the first civilizations to develop a system of writing. I'm very proud of my heritage.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. I'm very interested in Egypt's (traditions - seasons - foods - heritage).
2. I visit (museums - temples - tombs - schools) to learn about the things people did in the past.

B Answer these questions:

3. How did archaeologists learn about the civilization of ancient Egypt?
   ▶ ....
4. What did the ancient Egyptians develop?
   ▶ ....

C The Reader (Shipwrecks)

5 A- Read and write T (True) or F (False): (4Ms)

1. The Red Sea allows ships to travel to Europe through the Suez Canal. (   )
2. You have to be good at surfing to visit a shipwreck. (   )

B Choose the correct answer:

3. There are storms, reefs, and strong currents in the Red Sea, which can make it (safe - nice - easy - dangerous). Sometimes ships hit the reefs and sink.
4. People come from all over the world to go wreck (swimming - diving - surfing - fishing) in the Red Sea.



D Writing (11Ms)

6 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. They (decorate - decorates - decorated - was decorated) their house for yesterday's party.
2. Mom (was - were - is - are) making special cookies for the feast last night.
3. It was a hot day, so they were (drink - drank - drinks - drinking) some cold water.
4. The archaeologists (explored - are exploring - explore - were exploring) a site when they found amazing artifacts.

7 Order the words to make correct sentences: (2Ms)

1. see - can - You - engravings - the temples - in.
   ▶ ....
2. famous - the world - Which - over - is - all - library?
   ▶ .... ?

8 Write a paragraph of (40) words using the following guiding elements: (5Ms)

"Tutankhamun's mask"

▸ Ideas to help you:

- ▶ What is it? a gold mask
- ▶ How old is it? over 3,000 years old
- ▶ What is it made of? gold
- ▶ How big is it? 54 cm tall
- ▶ Where is it from? - The Valley of the Kings

....
....
....
....



....
....

Theme (4)
I'm a responsible person

Unit 10

Connecting the world
الاتصال بالعالم



In this unit I will ....
- explore different means of communication.
- learn words connected to social media.
- understand and use should and shouldn't in sentences.
- read a story about social media.
- write a letter to a school newspaper.
- listen to a podcast about technological solutions.
- plan a new social media platform only for kids.

Objectives

Vocabulary	**Means of communication:** blog, instant message, electronic device, email, presentation, social, vlog, media account, social media platform, website **Technology:** electric car, scrubber, smog-free tower
Language	- You should check your work. - You shouldn't forget punctuation. **Punctuation marks:** periods, commas and question marks. - I don't have any free time today, but I am free this weekend. - She doesn't like reading or writing. - I like poetry and fiction.
Reading	A story about someone using social media; a letter to an editor
Writing	A letter to the editor of a school newspaper
Speaking	Giving advice about how to write a story; suggesting solutions to the problems of pollution; giving a presentation about how technology can help air pollution; planning a new social media platform for kids
Listening	A talk about the reliability of social media; a story about publishing your own story; a podcast about different technological solutions to problems in Egypt
Life skills	**Verbal and non-verbal Communication:** identifying forms of communication
Values	**Honesty, integrity**
Issues and challenges	**Globalisation**
Integrated cross-curriculum topics	**ICT:** keyboard skills

Lesson 1 Means of communication



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



means of communication
وسائل التواصل



social media platforms
منصات التواصل الإجتماعي



digital form
شكل رقمي



instant message (IM)
رسالة عاجلة



private message
رسالة خاصة



electronic devices
أجهزة إليكترونية



personal website
موقع شخصي



access websites
يدخل على المواقع



smoke signals
إشارات بالدخان



presentation
عرض تقديمي



email
بريد إلكتروني



account
حساب



blog
مدونة



vlog
مدونة فيديو



Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

send letters	يرسل خطابات	**users**	مستخدمين
share information	يتشارك المعلومات	**belong to**	ينتمي إلى - يخص
topic	موضوع	**post information**	يرسل معلومات
World Wide Web	شبكة الإنترنت العالمية	**regularly**	بانتظام

Definitions تعريفات AB Activity Book

vlog	: a personal website or social media account where someone regularly posts short videos
blog	: a personal website or social media account where someone regularly posts written articles.
email	: a digital letter.
website	: a set of pages on the internet about a person or a business.
presentation	: a way to share information with other people by talking about it.
electronic device	: a form of technology such as a smartphone, tablet, or laptop.

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
access يدخل إلى - يصل إلى (موقع إلكتروني)	accessed	plan يُخَطِّط	planned
post ينشر منشور على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	posted	explore يستكشف	explored
belong to ينتمي إلى	belonged to	use يستخدم - يستعمل	used
start يبدأ	started	share يشارك	shared
explain يُوَضِّح	explained	communicate يتواصل	communicated

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
understand	يفهم	understood	say	يقول	said
write	يكتب	wrote	send	يُرسِل	sent
know	يعلم - يعرف	knew	see	يرى	saw



Read and learn

Did you know? هل تعلم؟

More than 4 billion people use different types of social media around the world. This number is increasing every year.

أكثر من 4 مليار شخص حول العالم يستخدمون أشكال مختلفة للتواصل الإجتماعي، وهذا العدد يتزايد كل عام.

Did you know? هل تعلم؟

Ancient Egyptians used carrier pigeons to send messages to each other.

كان المصريون القدماء يستخدمون الحمام الزاجل لإرسال رسائل إلى بعضهم البعض.

Means of communication



Tarek

Do you know what we are talking about when we say means of communication ❶? These are different ways to send messages from one place to another place. In the past, people used smoke signals ❷ or birds to send messages to each other. Today, we use technology like electronic devices ❸ to help us send messages.

An email is a digital form ❹ of a letter. We send these electronic messages to people using electronic devices. You must have an email account to send these kinds of messages.

An instant message ❺ (or IM) is a message that you can send on a social media platform ❻. It is a private message ❼ so no one else can see it except the person you send it to.

❶ وسائل التواصل
❷ إشارات بالدخان
❸ أجهزة إليكترونية
❹ شكل رقمي
❺ الرسالة العاجلة
❻ منصة
❼ رسالة خاصة

A presentation [8] is a way to share information with others. When you give a presentation, you share information about something or explain something by talking about it.

A website is a home page on the World Wide Web. Websites are usually about one topic. Users can access [9] websites from different electronic devices like smartphones [10], tablets, and laptops.

A blog [11] is a special kind of website. It usually belongs to one person who posts information there regularly for others to read. There are blogs about many different topics like sports or cooking.

A vlog [12] is similar to a blog because it is a personal website where people post information for others. The difference is that on a vlog, people post videos they make instead of written texts [13].

8 عرض تقديمي
9 يدخل على
10 هواتف ذكية
11 مدونة
12 مدونة فيديو
13 النصوص المكتوبة

Listening

Teacher:

When you read blogs, watch vlogs, or take information from websites, it's very important to decide how reliable [1] the information is.

First, look at the date of the material [2]. You don't want to choose anything that is very old because the information may be different or even incorrect [3] now.

Make sure [4] you think about the person who created the material [5]. Is she or he an expert [6] or a professional [7], or just someone giving their opinion [8]? Basically [9], you want to get facts Check Vocabulary from experts. So, if they are using phrases like "I guess" or "I feel," they are probably [10] just giving their opinion.

1 مصداقية
2 تاريخ المحتوى
3 غير صحيح
4 تأكد
5 صنع المحتوى
6 خبير
7 محترف
8 يبدون رأيهم
9 في الأساس
10 من المحتمل
11 مراجعة الحقائق

You can also use special websites that are used for checking facts [11]. There are a lot of different ones online, and they can help you decide what true and what's not. Ask your teacher which ones you should use.

Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

messages - communication - signals - electronic

Means of ❶ .... are different ways to send messages from one place to another place. In the past, people used smoke ❷ .... or birds to send messages to each other. Today, we use technology like ❸ .... devices to help us send messages.

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

birds - technology - devices - messages

Tamer : Do you know what are the means of communication?

Ali : Sure. They are different ways to send ❶ .... from one place to another.

Tamer : What did people use to send messages in the past?

Ali : They used smoke signals or ❷ ....

Tamer : What do people use today to send messages to each other?

Ali : They use ❸ .... like electronic devices.

Tamer : Thanks, Ali.

Ali : You're welcome.

3 Choose the correct answer:

1. Laptops, tablets and smartphones are (vlogs - emails - electronic devices).
2. A (vlog - blog - website) is a personal website or social media account where someone regularly posts short videos.

3. A (website - vlog - blog) is a personal website or social media account where someone regularly posts written articles.
4. An (account - email - website) is a digital letter.
5. A (vlog - presentation - website) is a set of pages on the internet about a person or a business.
6. A (blog - presentation - vlog) is a way to share information with other people by talking about it.
7. An (email - website - electronic device) is a form of technology such as a smartphone, tablet, or laptop.
8. Emails and websites are means of (communication - education - presentation).

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below:

Do you know what we are talking about when we say means of communication? These are different ways to send messages from one place to another place. In the past, people used smoke signals or birds to send messages to each other. Today, we use technology like electronic devices to help us send messages. An email is a digital form of a letter. We send these electronic messages to people using electronic devices. You must have an email account to send these kinds of messages.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Means of communication are different ways to send (conversations - messages - greetings) from one place to another place.
2. You must have an email (form - keyboard - account) to send emails.

B Answer these questions:

3. How could people send messages in the past?
▶ ....
4. How do people send messages today?
▶ ....



5 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. do - Why - people - presentations - give?
   ▶ ....

2. devices - electronic - use - We - send messages - to.
   ▶ ....

3. send - can - you - an - Where - instant message?
   ▶ ....

4. website - of - kind - a special - is - A blog.
   ▶ ....

5. people - access - can - How - websites?
   ▶ ....

6 Write a paragraph of (40) words using the following guiding elements:

"The means of communication I use"

▶ Ideas to help you:

▶ *Facebook* ▶ *Twitter* ▶ *Instagram* ▶ *WhatsApp* ▶ *Telegram*



....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



Lesson 2 Giving advice

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



writer
كاتبة



keyboard
لوحة مفاتيح



touch type
يكتب على لوحة المفاتيح بسرعة جدًا



adventure
مغامرة



incredible
لا يصدق - مُدهِش



backpack
حقيبة تُحمل على الظهر



prepare
يُعِد - يُجهِز



publish
ينشر (مقالاً - كتابًا)

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

word processor	معالج الكلمات	**adult**	شخص بالغ
writing program	برنامج للكتابة	**checklist**	قائمة
spelling mistakes	أخطاء هجاء	**break (n)**	راحة - استراحة
sit up straight	يجلس معتدلًا (بشكل مستقيم)	**local newspaper**	صحيفة محلية

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
open up يفتح	opened up	want يريد - يرغب	wanted
hand ..... to يعطي شيئًا لشخص في يده	handed ..... to	prepare يُحَضِّر - يُجَهِّز	prepared

Present	Past	Present	Past
touch type يكتب على لوحة المفاتيح بسرعة جدًا	touch typed	hand يسلم	handed
correct يُصَحّح	corrected	practice يتدرَّب	practiced
publish ينشر (مقالًا - كتابًا)	published	change يُغَيِّر	changed
remember يتذكر	remembered	check يفحص - يراجع	checked

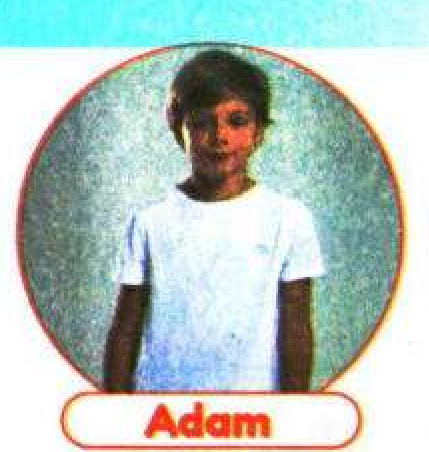
Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
let يَدَع (يترك) شخصًا يفعل شيئًا	let	take a break يأخذ استراحة	took a break
hurt يُؤذي - تؤلم	hurt	mean يعني (يقصد شيئًا بكلامه)	meant
get home يصل (يعود) للمنزل	got home	keep يُبقي - يجعل	kept
get better يتحسَّن	got better	tell يُخبِر	told
sit up straight يجلس معتدلًا (بشكل مستقيم)	sat up straight	forget ينسى	forgot

Read and learn

What does Adam love to do?

Adam got home from school, and sat down at his desk. He took his pencil, notebook, and eraser out of his backpack ❶, and opened up his notebook. Adam loved to write. He was working on a new story about a boy who goes on a great adventure ❷ around Africa.


Adam


Adam's mom

❶ حقيبة تُحمل على الظهر
❷ مغامرة
❸ الصحيفة المحلية

Adam's mom is a writer at the local newspaper ❸. She got home at 6 o'clock.

'Hi Mom,' Adam said. 'Do you want to read my new story?'

'Of course I do, honey.'

Adam handed ❹ his notebook to his mom. She sat down and started reading it. After a while, she said, 'This is an incredible story, Adam. You should let more people read it.'

'What do you mean?' Adam asked.

'You know, you should prepare it to share with others.'

'OK, but how do I do that, Mom?'

'First you should touch type ❺ it.'

'OK, we're learning how to type at school. Is that when you try to type without always looking at the keyboard?

'That's right. It might sound ❻ difficult, but if you practice, you'll get better and better at it. It's much quicker than writing with a pen, and it's easier to correct or change your work.'

'I can do that, Mom.'

'Just remember to sit up straight and keep your feet on the floor. You don't want to hurt your neck or back ❼. And take a break every 10 or 15 minutes.'

'Yes, that's what my teacher told us,' said Adam,

'Then, you can ask the school to publish ❽ it in the school newspaper, or even publish it yourself online.'

His mom handed the notebook back to him. 'Look at the last page. I made a checklist ❾ for you.'

❹ سلم - ناول
❺ تكتبها على الكمبيوتر
❻ يبدو
❼ رقبتك أو ظهرك
❽ تنشرها
❾ قائمة

Did you know? هل تعلم؟

- There are different words that are contractions in English. Shouldn't is one example: **shouldn't** = **should** + **not**.
- يوجد كلمات في اللغة الإنجليزية تُكتب إختصارًا. كلمة (**shouldn't**) هي واحدة من هذه الكلمات.

Publishing Checklist قائمة النشر

- You shouldn't write your story by hand. You should use a word processor or writing program, and try to touch type.

◄ لا يجب أن تكتب قصتك بخط اليد، يجب أن تستخدم معالج كلمات أو برنامج للكتابة وحاول أن تكتب على لوحة المفاتيح بأسرع ما يمكن.

- You shouldn't have any spelling or grammar mistakes. You should check your spelling. Or you should ask an adult to check it for you.

◄ لا يجب أن يكون هناكَ أي أخطاء هجاء أو أخطاء نحوية. يجب أن تراجع الكلمات إملائيًا أو تطلب من شخص كبير أن يراجعها لك.

- You shouldn't forget punctuation. You should check your work.

◄ لا يجب أن تنس علامات الترقيم. يجب أن تراجع ما كتبته.

- You shouldn't work too long without a break. And you should sit up straight with your feet on the floor.

◄ لا يجب أن تعمل طويلاً بدون راحة. ويجب أن تجلس مستقيم الظهر وقدماك على الأرض.



Grammar Study





Giving advice إسداء النصح



should + inf. (المصدر)

- **We can give advice by using (should). We use it to talk about things that are good for us to do.**

- **يمكن إسداء النصح باستخدام (should) وتتبع بمصدر الفعل.**

- This is an incredible story. You should let more people read it.
- You should prepare it to share with others.



shouldn't + inf. (المصدر)

- **We can give advice by using (shouldn't). We use it to talk about things that are not good for us to do.**
- يمكن إسداء النصح باستخدام (shouldn't) وتتبع بمصدر الفعل.

▶ You shouldn't work too long without a break. You should take a break every 10 or 15 minutes.
▶ You shouldn't hurt your neck or back.
▶ You shouldn't have any spelling or grammar mistakes.

Exercises on Lesson 2



1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

adventure - backpack - hospital - newspaper

Adam got home from school, and sat down at his desk. He took his pencil, notebook, and eraser out of his ❶ ...., and opened up his notebook. Adam loved to write. He was working on a new story about a boy who goes on a great ❷ .... around Africa. Adam's mom is a writer at the local ❸ .... She always reads his stories and advices him how to write easily.

2 Choose the correct answer: Vocabulary

1. Adam's mom is a (doctor - writer - teacher) at a local newspaper.
2. (Touch typing - Publishing - Learning) is much quicker than writing with a pen.
3. You should sit up straight and keep your (hands - feet - arms) on the floor while writing.
4. You should take a (break - neck - back) every 10 or 15 minutes while writing.
5. You shouldn't write your story by (word processor - hand - writing program). It's a very old way.

3 Complete the conversation with (should or shouldn't):



Fares : Hi, Tarek. What ❶ .... we do to make our neighborhood greener?

Tarek : Hi, Fares. I think we ❷ .... have more recycling bins. Everyone ❸ .... recycle their plastic bottles.

Fares : That's a good idea, but we need more garbage bins, too. People ❹ .... drop garbage.

Tarek : Yes, that's really bad. Also, we ❺ .... plant more trees. Then the streets would be cooler.

Fares : Trees clean the air, too. People ❻ .... cut down trees.

Tarek : I agree.

4 Choose the correct answer: (Grammar)



1. You (should - shouldn't) use a capital letter at the beginning of each sentence.
2. You (should - shouldn't) choose a title for your story.
3. You (should - shouldn't) use handwriting if you want the school to publish your story in the newspaper.
4. You (should - shouldn't) ask a friend to read your story before you publish it.
5. You (should - shouldn't) be afraid to ask your teacher for help.
6. You (should - shouldn't) hide your writing. Share it with your friends!

5 What should and shouldn't you do on publishing something: (Grammar)



1. You (should - shouldn't) write your story by hand.
2. You (should - shouldn't) use a writing program.
3. You (should - shouldn't) try to touch type.
4. You (should - shouldn't) check your spelling.
5. You (should - shouldn't) have any spelling or grammar mistakes.
6. You (should - shouldn't) ask a grown-up to check the spelling and grammar for you.
7. You (should - shouldn't) check your work.

8. You (should - shouldn't) forget the punctuation.
9. You (should - shouldn't) work too long without a break.
10. You (should - shouldn't) sit up straight with your feet on the floor.

6 Order the words to make correct sentences:



1. a title - You - for - should - your story - choose.
   ▶ ....
2. person's - copy - shouldn't - You - another - work.
   ▶ ....
3. spelling and - check - your - grammar - should - You.
   ▶ ....
4. story - a friend - should - You - ask - to read - your.
   ▶ ....
5. shouldn't - by hand - your - write - You - story.
   ▶ ....
6. your - on the - put - You - school website - should - story.
   ▶ ....

7 Write an email of (40) words to your friend Radwa:

▶ Tell her how to write a story. What should she do? What shouldn't she do? Should she write it by hand or use a word processor? Give her advice about the spelling and grammar mistakes and punctuation. Your email address is rania@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is radwa@yahoo.com.

From:

To:

Subject:

....

....

....

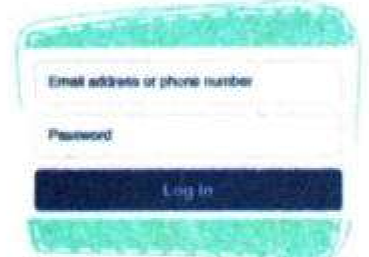


Lesson 3 Reading

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



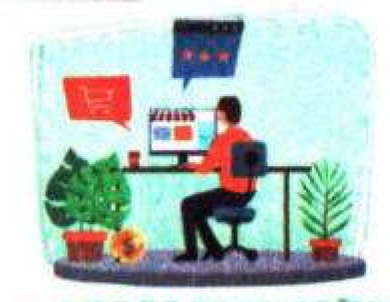
sign up
يشترك - يفتح حساب



sign in (into)
يسجل الدخول



cyberfriends
أصدقاء انترنت



online
عبر الإنترنت



nasty comments
تعليقات سيئة



settings
إعدادات - ضبط



account
حساب



post videos
ينشر مقاطع الفيديو

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

hobby	هواية	**best friends**	أعز الأصدقاء
photography	التصوير الفوتوغرافي	**social media**	وسائل التواصل الإجتماعي
private	شخصي - خاص	**set up (an account)**	يُنْشِئ (حساب)
cool	ظريف - لطيف	**later**	فيما بعد
make fun of	يسخر من	**bell**	جرس

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
sign in (into) يَسَجِّل دخول	signed in (into)	watch يشاهد	watched
sign up يشترك - يَسَجِّل	signed up	talk يتحدّث	talked

Term 2

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
set up (an account) يُنْشِئ (حساب)	set up	ring يرنّ	rang
make fun of يَسْخَر من	made fun of	go straight to يذهب مباشرةً إلى	went straight to
think يُفَكّر	thought	speak يتحدث	spoke
feel يشعر	felt	know يعرف	knew



Read and learn

Youssef goes online

The 2 o'clock bell rang. Youssef and his best friend Wael started walking home from school together.

' You're thirteen now, aren't you?' asked Wael.

'Yeah. Why?'

'That means you can sign up ❶ for a social media account like me.' Youssef thought about this idea for a minute. 'I guess ❷ I'll have to ask my parents first. What do you use your account for?'

❶ تشترك - تفتح حساب
❷ أعتقد
❸ أصدقاء انترنت

'I post videos. I also made some cyberfriends ❸ online,' said Wael. 'But who are these cyberfriends? Do you really know them?' he asked. 'No, but I can watch their videos. Some of them are so cool!' 'I'll think about it. See you tomorrow!' said Youssef.

Youssef got home from school and his mom was in the kitchen. 'Hi, honey. How was school today?'

'Good! Mom, can I get a social media account? Wael has one and he says it's really cool.' Do you think you're old enough, Youssef?' 'Yes. And I need it for my group project.

Youssef's dad helped him set up ❹ his account after dinner. He went straight ❺ to his room and made his first video. He introduced himself and talked about his favorite hobby, photography. Then he posted it.

The next morning, he signed into ❻ his account. There were some comments ❼ from people he didn't even know, and some of the comments were nasty ❽. One person said horrible things about the way Youssef spoke English, and someone else made fun of Youssef's hair and clothes. He felt really sad.

Youssef told his mom about the bad comments. 'I think there are some things you need to learn about using social media,' she said. 'Sign into your account and go to the settings ❾. First, we need to make your page private ❿. That means only your friends can see your videos. Now, let's turn off ⓫ the comments. That way people can't say bad things about you. If you want, you can turn them back on later ⓬.' 'Thanks, Mom. I'm going to make a new video now and see what happens.'

❹ يؤسس - يقيم
❺ مباشرة
❻ دخل على
❼ تعليقات
❽ سيئة
❾ إعدادات - ضبط
❿ شخصي - خاص
⓫ نغلق
⓬ تعيد تشغيلهم لاحقًا

Exercises on Lesson 

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

signed - comments - posted - set

Youssef's dad helped him ❶ .... up his account after dinner. He went straight to his room and made his first video. He introduced himself and talked about his favorite hobby, photography. Then he posted it. The next morning, he ❷ .... into his account. There were some ❸ .... from people he didn't even know, and some of the comments were nasty.

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

sport - hobby - account - online

Youssef : Hi, Wael. Could you help me, please?

Wael : Hi, Youssef. Sure. What do you want?

Youssef : I want to open a social media ❶ ....

Wael : Why do you want a social media account?

Youssef : To post videos and make new friends ❷ ....

Wael : What do you want to talk about in your videos?

Youssef : I want to talk about my favorite ❸ ...., photography.

Wael : Okay. Let's open a social media account for you.

Youssef : Great!

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:



comments - photos - posted - private - social media - video

Nahla has a new ❶ .... account. Her older brother Faisal helped her to set up her account. She wants to be a wildlife photographer when she grows up. So, she posts ❷ .... of flowers, trees, birds, and animals on her account. Nahla's account is ❸ .... so only her friends and family can see it. Her friends like her photos and they always write nice ❹ .... about them. Nahla has started making a short ❺ ...., too. She ❻ .... her first video on her account yesterday.

4 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. talked - favorite - He - about - hobby - his.

▶ ....

2. you - What - for - do - your account - use?

▶ ....?

3. clothes - of - fun - made - Someone - Youssef's.

▶ ....

4. I - a - account - Can - social media - get?

▶ ....?

5. your videos - see - friends - your - can - Only.

▶ ....

6. is - Do - think - bad - social media - you?

▶ ....?

7. to - need - private - We - your page - make.

▶ ....

5 Write a paragraph of (40) words using the following guiding elements:

"Social Media"

Ideas to help you:

- Its importance.
- Types of social media.
- Good and bad things about it.

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Lesson 4 Writing



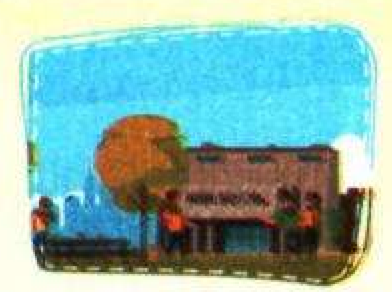
Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



reports
تقارير



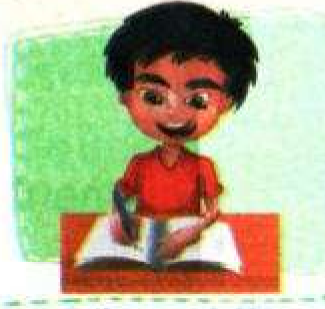
poetry
شِعر



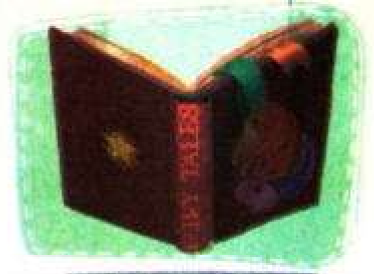
high school
المدرسة الثانوية



college
كُلية



writing skills
مهارات الكتابة



fiction
قصة - رواية



free time
وقت فراغ



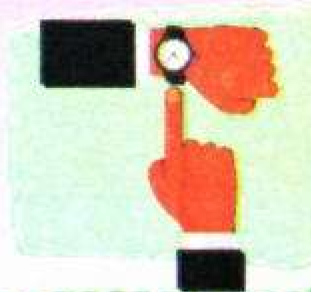
global community
مجتمع عالمي



create
يُنشئ



improve
يُحَسِّن



currently
حاليًا



perfect idea
فكرة مثالية (رائعة)

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

fourth-grade student طالب في الصف الرابع	**after-school club** نادي (أنشطة) ما بعد المدرسة
for fun للاستمتاع	**general** عام

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
join	ينضم	joined	improve	يُحَسِّن	improved
finish	يُنهي - ينتهي من	finished	agree	يتفق - يوافق	agreed
create	يُنشئ	created	share	يشارك	shared

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
get hot	يَسْخُن - يصبح ساخنًا	got hot	mean	يعني - يقصد	meant
come up	يتصاعد - يرتفع	came up	build	يبني	built
give	يعطي - يمنح	gave	find out	يعرف - يكتشف	found out
break down	يُقَسِّم	broke down	take	يأخذ - يستغرق	took

Writing tip!

TIP

Use these tips when you write a letter to the editor of a newspaper:

- Start your letter with 'Dear Editor,'.
- Finish your letter with 'Sincerely yours,'.
- Say why you are writing in the first sentence.
- Give a couple of examples to support your idea.

استخدم هذه الخطوات عندما تكتب خطاب لمحرر صحيفة:

- إبدأ خطابك بـ "Dear Editor," ومعناها عزيزي المحرر.
- إنهي الخطاب بـ "Sincerely yours" ومعناها تفضلوا بقبول فائق الإحترام.
- قل الهدف من كتابة الخطاب في أول جملة.
- اعطي مثالين لتدعيم فكرتك.



Read and learn



How to write a letter
كيف تكتب خطاب

Greeting and name
التحية واسم المرسل إليه

1. نادي (أنشطة) كتّاب ما بعد المدرسة
2. طالب في الصف الرابع
3. لذلك
4. حاليًا
5. شعر
6. نحسن
7. المدرسة الثانوية
8. الكلية
9. المجتمع العالمي

Dear Editor,

The letter body
نص الخطاب

I am writing because I think that the school should create an after school writers' club ❶. Don't you think this is a good idea?

As a fourth-grade student ❷, I like to write short stories and reports about things that I think are interesting. I write for my projects and for fun. I don't have time to write in the morning, but I do have time to write after school. Some of my friends are also interested in writing after school. So, that's why ❸ I think that an after-school club is a perfect idea.

There are lots of other clubs like the games club, the science club, and the cooking club. Currently ❹, there is no story writing or poetry ❺ writing club at our school. First, we should create one general writing club.

If we improve ❻ our writing skills now, it will help us in the future in high school ❼ and at college ❽. It will also help us write, publish, and share our ideas with our global community ❾. Don't you agree?

Sincerely yours,
Ending
خاتمة

Amira El-Sayyed

4th grade
Signature
توقيع

Grammar Study

in - at



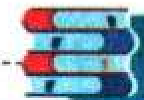
لاحظ أن: يستخدم حرف الجر "in" قبل الآتي:

- in the morning
- in the afternoon
- in the evening
- in the future
- in the past

بينما يستخدم حرف الجر "at" قبل الآتي:

- at school
- at college

"interesting - interested"



interesting (adj)

- If an adjective ends in (-ed), it describes how a person feels.

◆ الصفة المنتهية بـ (ed) تصف كيف يشعر الشخص (في الغالب تستخدم لوصف عاقل).

- These short stories are interesting.

interested (adj)

- If an adjective ends in (-ing), it describes the thing that makes the person feel like that.

◆ الصفة المنتهية بـ (ing) تصف الشيء الذي جعل الشخص يشعر بهذا (في الغالب تستخدم لوصف غير العاقل).

- My sister is interested in reading short stories.

and - or - but

and و

■ تستخدم في الجمل المثبتة

- I write stories and reports about things that I think are interesting.

or أو

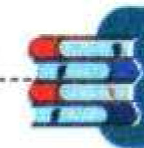
■ تستخدم في الجمل المنفية أو الإستفهامية.

- There is no story writing or poetry writing club at our school.
- Do you want to drink tea or coffee?

but لكن

■ تربط بين جملتين يعبرا عن التناقض.

- I don't have time to write in the morning, but I do have time to write after school.



Punctuation Marks
علامات الترقيم

1 The comma (,)

▶ We use them:

- after (**Yes** - **No**), after and before (**please**), to separate words or phrases in a list.

- تستخدم بعد كلمات (**Yes** - **No**) وقبل و بعد كلمة (**please**) وعندما نريد أن نفصل بين كلمات أو عبارات في قائمة وعندما نريد أن نفصل بين جملتين يربط بينهما رابط.

▶ I need flour, butter, eggs and sugar for the cake.

▶ Yes, I'd like some juice, please.

2 The apostrophe (')

▶ We use them:

- to show when a letter is missing from a word or to show possession.

- تستخدم عوضًا عن حرف في كلمة أو عند الاختصار للملكية.

▶ That's my mother's car.

3 The full stop (.)

▶ We use them:

- at the end of the sentence.

- تستخدم في نهاية الجملة الخبرية.

▶ My family bought a new car.

4 The question mark (?)

▶ We use them:

- at the end of the question.

- تستخدم في نهاية الجملة الاستفهامية (السؤال).

▶ Where are you going?

▶ Do you like fish?

5 The exclamation mark (!)

- at the end of a sentence to show a strong feeling or emphasize the meaning of the sentence.
- نستخدم علامة التعجب (!) في نهاية الجملة لنظهر الشعور القوي أو التأكيد على معنى الجملة.

▶ The new electric train is very fast!

▶ I love Egypt!

▶ That's interesting!

▶ She's very happy!

Exercises on Lesson 

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

projects - club - reports - interesting

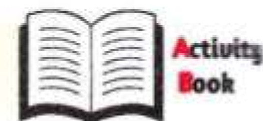
My name is Amira. I'm a fourth-grade student, I like to write short stories and ❶ .... about things that I think are interesting. I write for my ❷ .... and for fun. I don't have time to write in the morning, but I do have time to write after school. Some of my friends are also interested in writing after school. So, that's why I think that an after-school ❸ .... is a perfect idea. It's a great fun.

2 Choose the correct answer:

1. I don't have any free time today, (or - and - but) I am free this weekend.
2. She doesn't like reading (or - and - but) writing.
3. I like poetry (or - and - but) fiction.
4. I don't have time to write in the morning, (or - and - but) I do have time to write after school.
5. There are lots of other clubs like the games club, the science club, (or - and - but) the cooking club.

6. I write stories (or - and - but) reports about things that I think are interesting.
7. There is no story writing (or - and - but) poetry writing club at our school.
8. Do you want to drink tea (or - and - but) coffee?

3 Circle the correct answer:



1. I can't write short stories (and - or) articles.
2. Would you like to help us (? - .)
3. There aren't any after-school clubs (at - on) our school.
4. There's a newspaper, (and - but) there isn't a magazine.
5. You can help us write puzzles (. - ,) stories, and games.
6. I go to a photography club (but - and) a sports club.

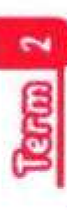
4 Write the missing mark or word. Some marks or words can be used more than once:



. / , / ? / and / at / but / in / or

1. Do you do the recycling .... the morning ☐
2. Dear Editor ☐ / Yours faithfully ☐
3. Do you like to eat fruit .... vegetables ☐
4. We study environmental science .... school .... the afternoon ☐
5. Nations (الدول) are working together, ... there are still a lot of environmental problems ☐







5 Read the following text and answer the questions below:



Dear Editor,

I am writing because I think we should open a social media account for the fourth grade students. Will you help us?

We could use our social media account to write about life in the fourth grade. We could write about school or life in general. We would like to interview students in fifth and sixth grade. Some of my friends would like to post their photos and videos. My other friends would like to create games, puzzles, and artwork.

A social media account would be fun and could improve our technology skills at the same time.

We could use our social media account to contact fourth grade students in different countries. We could ask students to send us articles about life in their country.

We could learn a lot about different cultures, but we need to learn how to use the internet safely first. I think this is a great idea and I hope you agree. Can you help us?

Sincerely yours,

Tarek Hussein

Fourth grade

1. What does Tarek want the editor to help him to do?
   ▶ ....
2. What would they write about?
   ▶ ....
3. What do some of his friends want to learn to do?
   ▶ ....
4. Who would he like to contact?
   ▶ ....
5. What would they learn about?
   ▶ ....

6 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. reports - to write - like - I - short stories - and.
   ▶ ....
2. projects - for her - Amira - and - writes - for fun.
   ▶ ....
3. interested - friends - My - are - writing - in.
   ▶ ....
4. grade - fourth - the - is - Amira - in.
   ▶ ....
5. today - I - have - don't - free time - any.
   ▶ ....
6. fiction - likes - She - poetry - and.
   ▶ ....

7 Write a letter to the editor of your school newspaper:

Student's Book

"Ask the school to create a new club that you want to join."

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Lessons 5-6 Solutions to problems in Egypt

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



outdoor
خارج (البيت)



indoor
داخل (البيت)



scrubber
جهاز تنقية الغاز





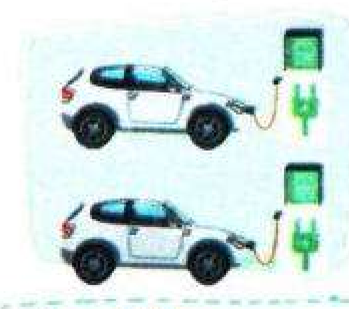
smog-free towers
أبراج خالية من الضباب الدخاني



harmful
ضار



catch dust
تلتقط الغبار



electric cars
سيارات كهربية



greening
زراعة الحوائط بالنباتات الخضراء

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

green walls	حوائط خضراء	**apartment building**	عمارة (مبنى سكني)
provide	يمد - يزود	**factories**	مصانع
cause (v)	يسبب	**nature**	الطبيعة
take turn	يأخذ دور - يتناوب الأدوار	**jewelry**	مجوهرات

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
research يبحث - يقوم ببحث علمي	researched	form يُكَوِّن	formed
collect يجمع	collected	design يُصَمِّم	designed

Term 2

Present		Past	Present		Past
number	يُرَقِّم	numbered	cause	يُسَبِّب	caused
repeat	يُكَرِّر	repeated	provide	يمد - يزود	provided



Read and learn



Did you know? هل تعلم؟

The first electric car was invented in the 1830s in Scotland by the inventor Robert Anderson.

أول سيارة كهربية أخترعت في الثلاثينيات في أسكتلندا بواسطة المخترع روبرت أندرسون.

The presentation tips ما يجب عليك عمله في العرض التقديمي

- Be confident.
- Smile.
- Make eye contact with the class. If you are nervous, look at a friend first.
- Speak slowly. Don't talk too loudly or too softly.
- Don't move around a lot. Keep your feet in the same place.
- Use phrases like:
  - Good morning / afternoon, everyone.
  - Today I'm going to talk about ..
  - Let's start with …
  - Now let's look at …
  - To finish / To sum up …
  - Are there any questions?
  - Thank you very much.

- كن واثقًا.
- ابتسم.
- قم بعمل تواصل بالعين مع الفصل. فإن كنت متوترًا، انظر إلى صديق في البداية.
- تحدث بروية. لا تتحدث بصوتٍ عالٍ ولا صوتٍ منخفض.
- لا تتجول كثيرًا. ثبت أقدامك في نفس المكان.
- استخدم بعض العبارات كالسابق ذكرها.



Listening



Presenter : Welcome to the podcast Technology World Today. Today in the studio with me is the environmental scientist Dr. Nesma Hegazy. We'll be talking about the problem of **air pollution** ❶. **Welcome to the show** ❷ Dr. Hegazy.



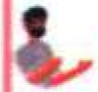
Dr. Nesma Hegazy : Thank you for inviting me.



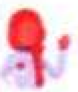
Presenter : So, how big of a problem is air pollution in Egypt today?



Dr. Nesma Hegazy : Well, it is **quite serious** ❸, especially in the biggest cities. That is what we call outdoor pollution. But most people **don't realize that** ❹ there is also indoor pollution - that is the pollution that is inside of our homes, schools, and offices. But let's just talk about outdoor air pollution today. This **is produced by** ❺ our cars, buses, airplanes, factories, and power plants. We must also remember that there is some **dust** ❻ from the desert in the air. But when we burn fossil fuels, we make air pollution **worse** ❼. And **since** ❽ it doesn't rain very much in Cairo or other **areas** ❾ of the country, the air **doesn't get cleaned** ❿.

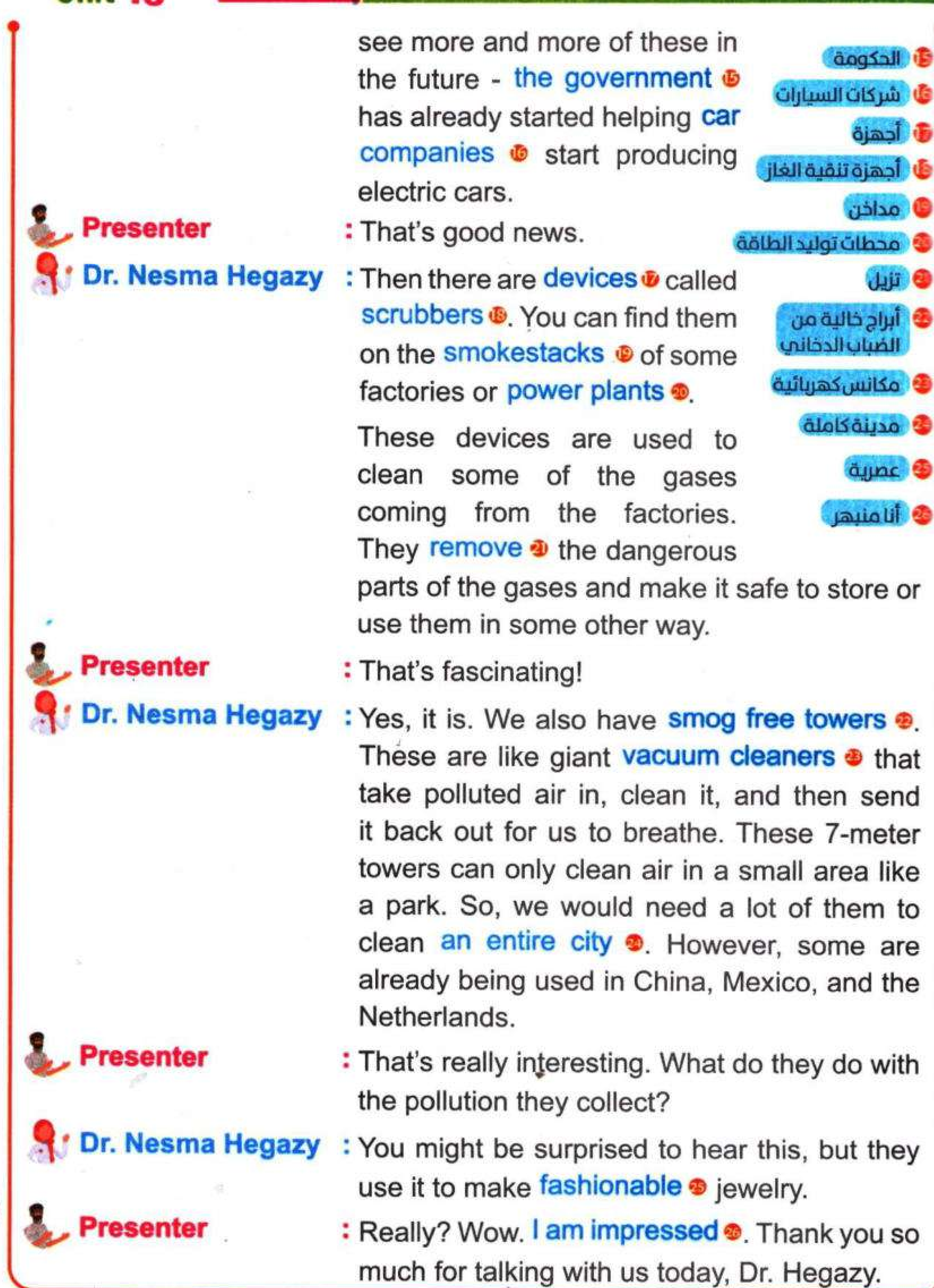


Presenter : So, how can technology help us **deal with** ⓫ this problem?



Dr. Nesma Hegazy : **Fortunately** ⓬, there are **a couple of ways** ⓭. First of all, there are electric cars. There aren't many on the streets now, but you will **definitely** ⓮

1. تلوث الهواء
2. أهلًا بك في العرض (البرنامج)
3. خطيرة جدًا
4. لا يدركون ذلك
5. ينتج عن
6. غبار
7. أسوأ
8. ومنذ ذلك الحين
9. مناطق
10. لا يُنظف
11. نتعامل مع
12. لحسن الحظ
13. طريقتان
14. بالتأكيد



see more and more of these in the future - **the government** ⑮ has already started helping **car companies** ⑯ start producing electric cars.

Presenter : That's good news.

Dr. Nesma Hegazy : Then there are **devices** ⑰ called **scrubbers** ⑱. You can find them on the **smokestacks** ⑲ of some factories or **power plants** ⑳.

These devices are used to clean some of the gases coming from the factories. They **remove** ㉑ the dangerous parts of the gases and make it safe to store or use them in some other way.

Presenter : That's fascinating!

Dr. Nesma Hegazy : Yes, it is. We also have **smog free towers** ㉒. These are like giant **vacuum cleaners** ㉓ that take polluted air in, clean it, and then send it back out for us to breathe. These 7-meter towers can only clean air in a small area like a park. So, we would need a lot of them to clean **an entire city** ㉔. However, some are already being used in China, Mexico, and the Netherlands.

Presenter : That's really interesting. What do they do with the pollution they collect?

Dr. Nesma Hegazy : You might be surprised to hear this, but they use it to make **fashionable** ㉕ jewelry.

Presenter : Really? Wow. **I am impressed** ㉖. Thank you so much for talking with us today, Dr. Hegazy.

⑮ الحكومة
⑯ شركات السيارات
⑰ أجهزة
⑱ أجهزة تنقية الغاز
⑲ مداخن
⑳ محطات توليد الطاقة
㉑ تزيل
㉒ أبراج خالية من الضباب الدخاني
㉓ مكانس كهربائية
㉔ مدينة كاملة
㉕ عصرية
㉖ أنا منبهر

Exercises on Lessons 5 6

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

education - health - fossil - airplanes

Air pollution is one of the biggest problems for people's ❶ ....
It is created by ❷ ...., traffic, factories, and power plants.
When we burn ❸ .... fuels and use strong cleaning chemicals to clean our houses, we create pollution.

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

burn - grow - pollution - power plants

Tarek : Hi, Kareem. Do you have any information about air ❶ ....? I have to do research about it for my school.

Kareem : Sure. It's one of the biggest problems for people's health.

Tarek : What creates air pollution?

Kareem : I think airplanes, traffic, factories and ❷ .... can create pollution.

Tarek : Do fossil fuels cause air pollution, too?

Kareem : Of course. When we ❸ .... fossil fuels, we create pollution.

Tarek : Thanks, Kareem.

Kareem : Not at all.

3 Choose the correct answer:

1. The first electric car was (invented - discovered - published) in the 1830s.
2. (Air - Water - Soil) pollution is created by airplanes, traffic, factories and power plants.
3. When we burn fossil fuels, we create (education - pollution - presentation).
4. You can find scrubbers on (apartments - schools - factories).

5. The smog free (towers - houses - hospitals) help to clean gases and pollution produced by factories and industry.
6. (Greening - Reading - Growing) is growing a wall of plants on the side of a building.
7. The cool air stops the buildings from getting too hot in (winter - autumn - summer).
8. Plants (produce - absorb - clean) carbon dioxide.
9. In hot countries, the green walls provide (shade - sun - rain) and help to cool the air.
10. Plants produce (carbon dioxide - oxygen - hydrogen).
11. The plants keep the buildings (cool - cold - warm) in winter.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below:



Air pollution is one of the biggest problems for people's health. Air pollution is created by airplanes, traffic, factories, and power plants. When we burn fossil fuels and use strong cleaning chemicals to clean our houses, we create pollution. However, there are some new and exciting ways to solve the problem of air pollution.

We have learned about scrubbers and smog free towers that help to clean gases and pollution produced by factories and industry. Another method which is becoming popular is called greening. Greening is growing a wall of plants on the side of a building.

Why is this helpful? The plants help to clean the air because they absorb carbon dioxide and they produce oxygen. The plants also catch dust and other harmful pollution. In hot countries, the green walls provide shade and help to cool the air. The cool air stops the buildings from getting too hot in summer. The plants keep the buildings warm in winter. The cooler temperatures are also easier for people to live in. The plants also provide homes for bees, insects, and birds, so greening helps nature, too.



1. What causes air pollution?

▶ ....

2. How do scrubbers and smog free towers help air pollution?

▶ ....

3. What is greening?

▶ ....

4. How does greening help air pollution?

▶ ....

5. How is greening helpful in hot countries?

▶ ....

6. How does greening help nature?

▶ ....

6 Make a presentation to your class on the following topic:

Student's Book

"A new social media platform for kids"

▸ Ideas to help you:

- *How old should the users be?*
- *What will we talk about?*
- *What pictures can we share?*
- *Will there be games and competitions?*
- *What are the rules to join?*

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....





Unit 10 Test 4



A Listening (8Ms)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (4Ms)

نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (247) آخر الكتاب.

1. We send emails using electronic (radios - TVs - devices - machines).
2. An instand message is a (public - general - private - secret) message.
3. The (email - presentation - letter - instant message) is a message that you can send on a social media platform.
4. You must have an email (internet - phone - account - laptop) to send an email.

2 Listen and complete: (4Ms)

نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (247) آخر الكتاب.

1. I like to write stories and .... about things that I think are interesting.
2. I write for my .... and for fun.
3. Some of my friends are also .... in writing after school.
4. I think that an after-school .... is a perfect idea.

B Reading (11Ms)

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box: (3Ms)

publish - checklist - touch type - story

Adam : Hi, Mom. Do you want to read my new ❶ ....?
Mom : Of course I do, honey.
Adam : Here you are.
Mom : This is an incredible story, Adam. You should let more people read it.
Adam : How do I do that, Mom?
Mom : First you should ❷ .... it. Just remember to sit up

straight and keep your feet on the floor. And take a break every 10 or 15 minutes. Then, you can ask the school to ❸ .... it in the school newspaper.

Adam : OK, Mom.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below: (4Ms)

A blog is a special kind of website. It usually belongs to one person who posts information there regularly for others to read. There are blogs about many different topics like sports or cooking.
A vlog is similar to a blog because it is a personal website where people post information for others. The difference is that on a vlog, people post videos they make instead of written texts.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. A blog belongs to (family - friends - all people - one person).
2. A vlog is a personal (website - email - World Wide Web - presentation).

B Answer these questions:

3. What's a blog?
   ▶ ....
4. What is the difference between a blog and a vlog?
   ▶ ....

C The Reader (Amir takes action)

5 A- Read and write T (True) or F (False): (4Ms)

1. Amir can't check the washing machine. (   )
2. There was a village below Amir. (   )

B Choose the correct answer:

3. Amir took the (bread - shopping - washing - clothes) out.
4. Amir took the (fish - grandma - laundry - village) up to the roof.



D Writing (11Ms)

6 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. You (mustn't - can't - should - shouldn't) ask for help if you can't do something.
2. I'm very busy today, (so - or - and - but) I'm free tomorrow.
3. She shouldn't (speak - speaks - spoke - speaking) loudly on giving a presentation.
4. We don't want to go to Alexandria (or - and - but - so) Matrouh next summer.

7 Order the words to make correct sentences: (2Ms)

1. pollution - problems - cause - What - air - does?

▶ ....?

2. write - You - story - by hand - your - shouldn't.

▶ ....

8 Write an email to your friend Ramy:

▶ Tell him your opinion about using social media. Do you use social media or not? What do you use social media for? Do you think social media is good or bad? Why? Your email address is hany@school.net. Your friend's email address is ramy@hotmail.com.

From:

To:

Subject:

....

....

....



Theme (4)
I'm a responsible person



Unit 11

On the road!
على الطريق!

In this unit I will ....

- explore different types of transportation
- contrast urban and rural lifestyles.
- learn words connected to transportation.
- review comparative and superlative adjectives.
- read a text about the history of transportation.
- read and write a plan for an ideal city and transportation network.
- listen to a radio show about transportation around the world.
- talk about different transportation around the world.
- create a radio show about transportation in Egypt.

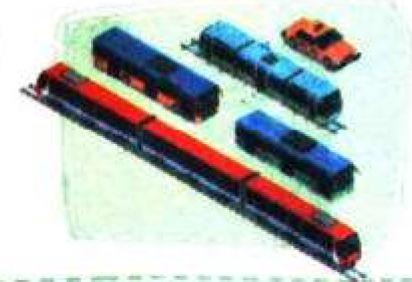
Objectives

Vocabulary	**Transportation:** airplane, cab, canal, canoe, destination, ferry, mule, on foot, on time, rocket, steam train, streetcar, subway, traffic, traffic lights, traffic jam, trip, wagon, walking, waterway. **A cleaner urban environment:** bike path, green spaces, garbage, recycle, recycling bins, reduce, resident, reuse, roof, trash, volunteer, water vapor - Comparative and superlative adjectives
Language	- The coast is greener than the desert. - The Nile is the longest river in the world. - Kareema is unhappy. - I dislike playing tennis, but I like football.
Reading	An informative text about city transportation; a text about the history of transportation; a plan for an ideal city
Writing	Writing expressions to give an opinion; planning an ideal city.
Speaking	Discussing and describing transportation where you live and in your country; the advantages and disadvantages to types of transportation; performing a radio show about transportation.
Listening	A conversation about a visit to a science museum; a radio show about different types of transportation around the world
Life skills	**Decision making:** choosing greener forms of transport
Values	**Independence**
Issues and challenges	**Globalisation**
Integrated cross-curriculum topics	**Social studies:** traffic signs and rules

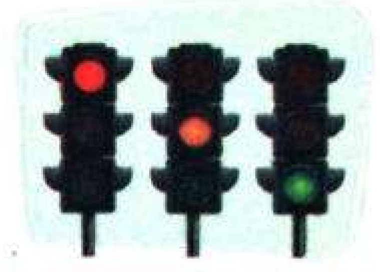
Lesson 1 Transportation



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



public transportation
المواصلات العامة



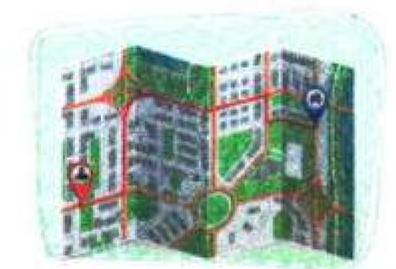
traffic lights
إشارات المرور



traffic jam
تكدس مروري



traffic rules
قواعد المرور



destination
جهة الوصول



signs
لافتات - علامات



turn left
يتجه يسارًا



seat belt
حزام الأمان



on time
في الوقت المحدد



on foot
سيرًا على الأقدام



on the road
على الطريق



trip
رحلة قصيرة

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
affect	يؤثر على	affected	explore	يستكشف	explored
listen to	يستمع إلى	listened to	create	يُنشئ	created
talk about	يتحدث عن	talked about	complete	يُكمِل	completed
walk	يمشي	walked	move	يتحرك - يُحَرِّك	moved
stop	يتوقف - يُوقِف	stopped	continue	يستمر في - يواصل	continued

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
leave home	يغادر المنزل	left home	make	يصنع	made
write	يكتب	wrote	leave	يُغادر	left
meet	يُقابل - يلتقي بـ	met	get to	يصل إلى	got to
sit in	يجلس في	sat in	wear	يرتدي - يلبس	wore
take	يأخذ	took	go slow	يسير ببطء	went slow

Did you know? هل تعلم؟

There are more than 1.4 billion vehicles on the Earth. There are about 7.2 million electric cars.

يوجد أكثر من 1,4 مليار مركبة على الكرة الأرضية. ويوجد حوالي 7,2 مليون سيارة كهربية.

Did you know? هل تعلم؟

In 1868, the first traffic light was in London in front of the House of Parliament.

في عام 1868 أقيمت أول إشارة مرور في لندن أمام مبنى البرلمان.



Read and learn

Transportation



Reem

Cities are exciting places to live. There are a lot of activities and people to meet. There are also good hospitals, schools, and public transportation ❶.

However, many cities nowadays have a big problem: traffic ❷.

I love my city but every morning we have to sit in a traffic jam ❸ on my way to school. The cars and buses stop, and we can't move. The trip to school sometimes takes us an hour! The traffic lights are often red and that makes the traffic even worse ❹. We leave home very early so I can make it to school on time ❺. I can't make the trip on foot because my school is too far to walk to.

We have good public transportation. The problem is that buses don't always go to the destination ❻ you want.

❶ المواصلات العامة
❷ المرور
❸ تكدس مروري
❹ أسوأ
❺ في الوقت المحدد
❻ جهة الوصول

Traffic rules



a. Do not continue driving.



b. You cannot turn left.



c. Be careful. There are animals on the road.



d. Go slow. There are children playing.



e You must wear your seat belt.

Remember تذكر

■ وسائل المواصلات يستخدم قبلها حرف الجر "by":

▶ by car	▶ by bus	▶ by train	▶ by subway
▶ by ship	▶ by bike	▶ by boat	▶ by streetcar

■ بينما كلمة "foot" : يستخدم قبلها حرف الجر "on" : ▶ on foot

■ إذا أتى قبل وسيلة المواصلات (a - an - the - my - his - her ...) يستخدم قبلها حرف الجر "on - in".

▶ on a bus ▶ on a train ▶ on an airplane ▶ on a ship

▶ in his car ▶ in a taxi

■ كل وسائل المواصلات يستخدم قبلها حرف الجر (on) ما عدا (car - taxi) يستخدم قبلها حرف الجر (in).

Exercises on Lesson 1



1 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

traffic rules - traffic jam - bus - trip

Rana : Hi, Mariam.
Mariam : Hi, Rana.
Rana : How do you go to school?
Mariam : I go to school by ❶ ....
Rana : How often do you get into a ❷ ....?
Mariam : I get into a traffic jam five days a week.
Rana : How long is your ❸ .... to school?
Mariam : It sometimes takes an hour.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box:

trip - traffic - destination - transportation

Cities are exciting places to live. There are a lot of activities and people to meet. There are also good hospitals, schools, and public ❶ .... However, many cities nowadays have a big problem: ❷ .... We have good public transportation. The problem is that buses don't always go to the ❸ .... you want.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below:

My name is Reem. I'm in grade four. I love my city but every morning we have to sit in a traffic jam on my way to school. The cars and buses stop, and we can't move. The trip to school sometimes takes us an hour! The traffic lights are often red and that makes the traffic even worse. We leave home very early so I can make it to school on time. I can't make the trip on foot because my school is too far to walk to.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Reem is in grade (three - four - five).
2. Reem has to sit in a (traffic jam - traffic lights - traffic rules) every day on her way to school.

B Answer these questions:

3. How long does the trip to school take? ▶ ....
4. Why can't Reem go to school on foot? ▶ ....

4 Choose the correct answer:

1. Buses and trains are (private - public - high) transportation.
2. When there's traffic (rule - light - jam), cars and buses don't move.
3. The (class - traffic - trip) to school sometimes takes us an hour.
4. When the traffic (jam - rule - light) is red, you must stop.



5. When there's traffic jam, buses and cars don't always go to the (trip - destination - vehicle) you want.
6. I leave home early to get to school (on - in - at) time.
7. She goes to school (on - by - in) bus.
8. My dad goes to work (by - on - in) his car.
9. I go to school (on - by - in) foot.
10. We travel to Tanta (on - in - by) a train.
11. Some tourists go to Luxor (on - by - in) boat.
12. He traveled to America (in - on - by) airplane.

5 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. to - are - Cities - exciting - live - places.
   ▶ ....
2. go - by car - school - Do - to - you?
   ▶ .... ?
3. takes - hour - an - school - to - The trip.
   ▶ ....
4. on - you - school - time - Do - get to?
   ▶ .... ?
5. make - foot - I - the trip - on - can't.
   ▶ ....

6 Write an email to your friend Wael:

▶ Ask him about the traffic in his neighborhood (منطقته). How long does his trip to school take? How often does he get into a traffic jam? Is he always on time for school or not? What places does he go to on foot? Your email address is walid@school.net. Your friend's email address is wael@yahoo.com.

From:
To:
Subject:

....
....

Lesson 2 Language



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



neighborhood
حي



ecological
بيئي



green spaces
مساحات خضراء



bike path
مسار دراجات



residents
السكان



volunteer (v) (n)
يتطوع - متطوع



garbage - waste (n)
قمامة



pick up
يلتقط - يجمع



recycle
يعيد تدوير



reduce
يخفض - يقلل



reuse
يعيد استخدام



recycling bin
سلة مخلفات يمكن اعادة تدويرها

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
learn about يتعلّم عن - يعرف عن	learned (learnt) about	disconnect يفصل الكهرباء عن	disconnected
sound like يبدو	sounded like	recycle يعيد تدوير	recycled
pick up يلتقط	picked up	agree يتفق - يوافق	agreed

Present		Past	Present		Past
reduce	يُقلِّل - يُخَفِّف	reduced	compare	يقارن	compared
reuse	يعيد استخدام	reused	share	يتشارك - يشارك	shared

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
mean	يعني - يُقصَد به	meant	know about	يعرف عن	knew about
ride	يركب	rode	think	يُفكِّر - يعتقد	thought
throw	يُلقي - يقذف	threw	choose	يختار	chose

Read and learn

Did you know? هل تعلم؟

Students at the University of Fayoum can share bikes from three 'bike stations'.

الطلاب في جامعة الفيوم يمكنهم أن يتشاركوا الدراجات في ثلاث محطات للدراجات.

Creating a cleaner urban environment



Dina : Hey, Talia. Did you go to the science museum with your class yesterday?

Talia : Yes, we did. I learned a lot about creating a cleaner urban environment.

Dina : Oh, really? What did you learn?

Talia : Well, it's important to have **green spaces** ❶ in a city. The air is cleaner there. And people are happier when they have green spaces, too. So, that means we need more parks and trees in our cities. If we need to water these green spaces, we can **recycle** ❷ water.

❶ مساحات خضراء
❷ يعيد تدوير



Dina : That sounds like a good idea to me. We need fewer cars too, don't we?

Talia : Yes, and we need bike paths (3) for people to ride their bikes on.

Dina : I agree. What can residents (4) do to help?

Talia : One of the best things we can do is to use recycling bins (5) for our glass, paper, plastic, and metal. And I learned that in some places, people volunteer (6) to pick up garbage (7) in parks.

Dina : People who throw garbage really make me angry! I'd like to be the best volunteer (8) in my neighborhood (9)!

Talia : And do you know about the 3 Rs?

Dina : I don't think so.

Talia : Reduce (10), Reuse (11), and Recycle (12). Reduce the waste you create. Reuse things as much as possible before buying new ones. And recycle everything you can.

Talia : I hope we can all be more ecological (13) in the future.

(3) مسار دراجات
(4) السكان
(5) سلات مخلفات يمكن إعادة تدويرها
(6) يتطوع
(7) يلتقط القمامة
(8) متطوع
(9) حي
(10) يقلل
(11) يعيد استخدام
(12) يعيد تدوير
(13) بيئي

Grammar Study

The (re-) prefix

We use the prefix "**re-**" at the beginning of some words to mean "**again**".

- **Reuse** things as much as possible before buying new ones.
- We can **recycle** water.

word	re-
use	reuse
cycle	recycle

The (dis- / un-) prefixes

We use the prefixes (السوابق) "un-" and "dis-" at the beginning of some words to mean "not". They are used to give opposite and negative meanings to adjectives, adverbs, verbs and nouns.

- Kareema is crying. She is unhappy.
- Sweets are unhealthy.
- I dislike playing tennis but I like football.
- Please disconnect the computer when you leave the room.

word	dis-
like	dislike
agree	disagree
connect	disconnect
honest	dishonest

word	un-
happy	unhappy
friendly	unfriendly
popular	unpopular
healthy	unhealthy



(Adjectives) Comparison
المقارنة

Comparative degree:

- We use the comparative form to compare two people, two animals or two things.
- تُستخدم الدرجة الثانية من المقارنة (الصفات) لنقارن بين شخص وشخص أو حيوان وحيوان أو شئ وشئ .... وهكذا.

▶ Apartments are usually smaller than houses.

- We add (er) to the short adjective and use the word (than) after it.
- نضيف للصفة القصيرة (er) ونضع بعدها كلمة (than مِن).

small ▶▶▶ smaller   tall ▶▶▶ taller   green ▶▶▶ greener

- When the adjective ends in (e), we add (r).
- إذا انتهت الصفة بـ (e) نضيف لها (r) فقط.

large ▶▶▶ larger   nice ▶▶▶ nicer   fine ▶▶▶ finer

▶ The bus is larger than the car.

- When the adjective ends in a consonant after one vowel, we double the final consonant before adding (er).
- إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف ساكن يسبقه حرف واحد متحرك ناطق نضاعف الحرف الأخير الساكن قبل إضافة (er).

big ▶▶▶ bigger   fat ▶▶▶ fatter   thin ▶▶▶ thinner
hot ▶▶▶ hotter

▶ Cities are bigger than towns.

- When the adjective ends in (y), we change the (y) into (i) before adding (er).
- إذا انتهت الصفة بـ (y) تحول إلى (i) قبل إضافة (er).

heavy ▶▶▶ heavier   easy ▶▶▶ easier   scary ▶▶▶ scarier
happy ▶▶▶ happier   noisy ▶▶▶ noisier

▶ The desk is heavier than the chair.

- We use (more) or (less) before long adjectives and the word (than) after them.
- إذا كانت الصفة طويلة، نضع قبلها إما (more) أو (less) وبعدها (than).

▶ Reading a story is more interesting than watching a film.

▶ Watching a film is less interesting than reading a story.

Superlative degree:

- We use the superlative form to compare more than two people, animals or things.
- تستخدم الدرجة الثالثة من المقارنة (الصفات) للمقارنة بين شخص ومجموعة من الأشخاص أو حيوان ومجموعة من الحيوانات أو شيء ومجموعة من الأشياء .... وهكذا.

▶ My school is the greenest of all schools in the town.

▶ The Nile is one of the longest rivers in the world.

- We add (est) to the short adjective and use the word (the) before it.
- نضيف للصفة القصيرة (est) ونضع قبلها كلمة (the).

■ الصفات المنتهية بـ (e) أو المنتهية بحرف ساكن يسبقه حرف واحد متحرك ناطق أو المنتهية بـ (y)، السابق شرحها تنطبق على نفس هذا النوع من المقارنة.

■ We use (the most) or (the least) before long adjectives.

■ إذا كانت الصفة طويلة، نضع قبلها إما (the most) أو (the least).

▶ Pollution is one of the most dangerous problems.

▶ This is the least exciting match I've ever watched.

Irregular Adjectives:

■ We have some irregular adjectives like (good - bad).

■ يوجد بعض الصفات الشاذة التي لا تنطبق عليها القواعد السابقة مثل (good - bad).

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
good	better (than)	(the) best
bad	worse (than)	(the) worst

▶ My mobile is a good one.

▶ Mom's mobile is better than my mobile.

▶ Dad's mobile is the best one.

▶ On Saturday, the weather was bad.

▶ On Sunday it was worse than Saturday.

▶ On Monday it was the worst.

Exercises on Lesson 2



1 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

buildings - parks - environment - green

Dina : Hi, Talia. Did you go to the science museum with your class yesterday?

Talia : Yes, I did.

Dina : Oh, really? What did you learn?

Talia : I learned a lot about creating a cleaner urban ❶ ....

Dina : How can we make this environment clean?

Talia : Well, it's important to have ❷ .... spaces in the city.

Dina : What do we need to make green spaces in our city?

Talia : We need more ❸ .... and trees.

2 Choose the correct answer: (Vocabulary)



1. Put your plastic bottles in the (volunteers - recycling bins) .
2. (Green spaces - Bike paths) keep the air clean in our cities.
3. Over 1,000 (residents - volunteers) live in my neighborhood.
4. We should (recycle - reduce) the traffic in our cities.
5. There is too much (garbage - green space) in the street. It looks very messy.
6. Don't (reduce - reuse) this plastic bottle. It's got a hole in it.
7. We can (recycle - reduce) plastic, paper, and glass at the recycling center.
8. Twenty-one (recycling bins - volunteers) helped at the beach clean-up yesterday.

3 Choose the correct negative form:



1. The opposite of healthy is (dishealthy - unhealthy).
2. The opposite of like is (dislike - unlike).
3. The opposite of connect is (disconnect - unconnect).
4. The opposite of friendly is (disfriendly - unfriendly).
5. The opposite of happy is (dishappy - unhappy).
6. The opposite of agree is (disagree - unagree).
7. The opposite of popular is (dispopular - unpopular).
8. The opposite of honest is (dishonest - unhonest).

4 Choose the correct answer: (Grammar)

1. The lion is a (strong - stronger - the strongest) animal.
2. Going to school on foot is (healthy - healthier - healthiest) than going by bus.
3. My brother thinks that science is (more - less - the most) difficult subject.
4. The elephant is (heavier - heavier than - heaviest) the hippo.
5. This bus is (big - biggest - bigger) than that van.
6. Football is (more - the most - the least) popular than handball.
7. My brother is (the least - less - the most) careful than me on crossing the street.
8. I think pollution is (more - less - the most) harmful problem we face.
9. Yesterday's film was (more - the most - the least) interesting one I've ever watched. I didn't like it.
10. Doing sports is (good - better - the best) than watching them.
11. Houses are (expensive - more expensive - the most expensive) than apartments.
12. My street is the (green - greener - greenest) one in the town.
13. Today the weather is the (bad - worse - worst) of the week.
14. I'd like to be (good - better than - the best) volunteer in my neighborhood.
15. Your clothes are clean, but my clothes are (clean - cleaner - cleanest).

5 Order the words to make correct sentences:



1. busier - Damietta - Cairo - is - than.

   ▶ ....

2. the biggest - in - The Sahara - the world - is - desert.

   ▶ ....

3. medal - better - is - A gold - a silver - than - medal

▶ ....

4. more - ecological - fossil fuels - than - is - Solar energy.

▶ ....

5. is - the world - Tutankhamun - famous - the most - in - pharaoh.

▶ ....

6 Write an email to your friend Ahmed:

▶ Tell him what you have learned to keep your environment clean. How can you make the air cleaner? Do you need green spaces in your environment or not? What about parks and trees? What can residents in your neighborhood do to help? Your email address is ali@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is ahmed@gmail.com.

From:

To:

Subject:

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

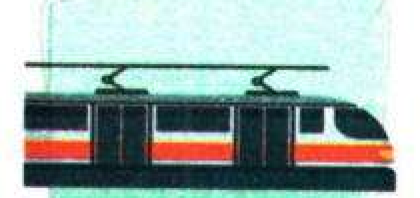
Lesson 3 Transportation in the past



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



wagon
مركبة لنقل البضائع



streetcar
الترام



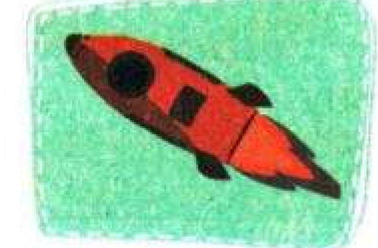
cart
عربة كارو



mule
بغل



airplane
طائرة



rocket
صاروخ



ship
سفينة



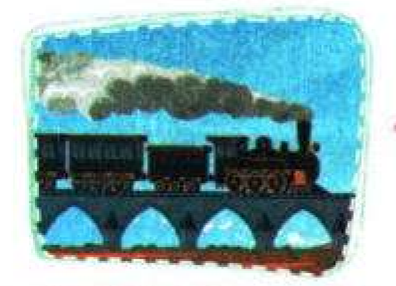
canoe
زورق



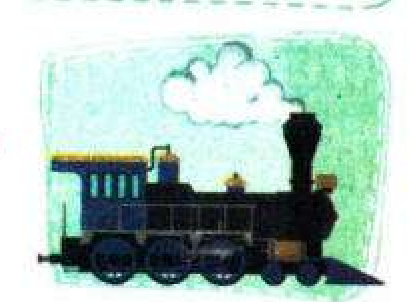
subway
المترو



high-speed train
قطار فائق السرعة



steam train
قطار يسير بالبخار



steam engine
آلة بخارية

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

means of transportation	وسائل النقل	**the country**	الريف
wheel	عجلة	**rural areas**	مناطق ريفية
invention	اختراع	**humans**	بنو آدم (الإنسان)
system	نظام	**gasoline**	بنزين
engineer	مهندس	**goods**	بضائع

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
invent	يخترع	invented	burn	يحرق - يستهلك	burned (burnt)
transport	ينقل	transported	design	يُصمِّم	designed
appear	يظهر	appeared	move	يتحرك	moved

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
begin	يبدأ	began	buy	يشتري	bought
come	يأتي	came	fly	يطير	flew

Read and learn

Transportation then and now المواصلات في الماضي و الآن



1. بغال
2. بمجرد أن
3. العجلة
4. مركبات لنقل البضائع
5. بضائع
6. اختراع
7. الآلة البخارية

Transportation is the way that people move from one place to another. It is also the way that people move things from one place to another. A long time ago, the only types of transportation for humans were walking, running, and swimming.

After that, humans began to use animals like mules (1), donkeys, and horses. Then came small boats like canoes and other types of water transportation. Once (2) they invented the wheel (3), people started to use small wagons (4) and carts. Farmers in the country could transport their goods (5) to markets in cities more easily. In rural areas, many people still use these means of transportation today. The invention (6) of the steam engine (7) changed transportation. Ships with steam engines could travel much faster than using people or the wind to move boats.

The first steam train was in Wales in the 1800s. The train made trips between rural and urban areas faster and safer. The first car that ran on gasoline 8 also appeared in the 1800s. People bought cars to make their lives 9 easier. Cities like London and Boston had some of the first streetcars 10 and subway systems. The subway in London opened in 1863. Soon, high-speed trains made traveling between rural and urban areas very fast. From the beginning of time, humans watched birds and wanted to fly through the skies. Today, we fly from one continent to another in no more than one day. We are even able to send people to the Moon in rockets.

The problem with transportation that uses gasoline is that it burns fossil fuels, and these are bad for the environment. So today, people are developing cleaner forms of transportation like electric cars. There are even electric buses that use some solar energy from solar panels on their roofs. Engineers are designing 11 greener airplanes and ships, too.

8 سارت بالبنزين
9 حيواتهم
10 أول ترام
11 يصمموا

Activity Book Text

Transportation in ancient Egypt

In ancient Egypt, the most important highway 1 was the River Nile. The Egyptians traveled mostly along the river because all the major cities were along the River Nile. So boats and ships were the most important form of transportation. Most Egyptians used a small boat called a skiff 2. They made this simple boat from papyrus and rope 3. People could travel short distances 4 in these boats, or they could use it for fishing. They used oars 5 to make the boats move. They made larger boats and ships from wood. These ships had a large sail 6 to catch the wind and they used oars to move and control the direction 7. The Egyptians built many different kinds of boats for traveling, fishing, and transporting goods.

1 طريق سريع
2 مركب شراعي صغير
3 حبال
4 مسافات
5 المجاديف
6 شراع
7 اتجاه



Exercises on Lesson 3

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

transportation - boats - goods - wagons

In the past, humans began to use animals like mules, donkeys, and horses for transportation. Then came small ❶ .... like canoes and other types of water transportation. Once they invented the wheel, people started to use small ❷ .... and carts. Farmers in the country could transport their ❸ .... to markets in cities more easily.

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

water - solar - gasoline - electric

Maha : Hi, Manar. What are you doing?
Manar : Hi, Maha. I'm doing research about transportation today.
Maha : What do you mean?
Manar : Transportation that uses ❶ .... and burns fossil fuels are bad for the environment.
Maha : What can we do to solve this problem?
Manar : We are developing cleaner forms of transportation like ❷ .... cars.
Maha : Really?
Manar : Yes. There are even electric buses that use ❸ .... energy from solar panels on their roofs.
Maha : That's amazing!

3 Choose the correct answer:

1. In the past, people used (animals - cars - rockets) like mules, donkeys, and horses for transportation.
2. The fastest way to travel to a different country is by (subway - airplane - train).

3. It's faster to travel on the (subway - wagon - streetcar) in a busy city than by bus.
4. Horses pull (trains - canoes - carts).
5. In the past, farmers used to transport their goods to markets by (canoes - rockets - wagons).
6. Ships with steam engines could travel faster than (rockets - airplanes - boats).
7. It's fun to travel across a lake by (streetcars - canoes - wagons).
8. The first subway (airplane - train - boat) opened in London in 1863.
9. Astronauts went into space on a (subway - rocket - train) for the first time in the1960s.
10. In San Francisco, people use electric (canoe - airplane - streetcar) to travel around the city.
11. Today (subways - airplanes - trains) can fly to different continents in one day.

4 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. with - faster - Ships - steam engines - could travel - than boats.

   ▶ ....

2. first - The - in Wales - steam - was - train.

   ▶ ....

3. in - opened - subway - in 1863 - The - London.

   ▶ ....

4. developing - of transportation - are - People - forms - cleaner.

   ▶ ....

5. are - greener - designing - Engineers - and ships - airplanes.

   ▶ ....

6. buses - electric - solar energy - use - that - There are.

   ▶ ....

5 Read the following text and answer the questions below:



In ancient Egypt, the most important highway (طريق سريع) was the River Nile. The Egyptians traveled mostly along the river because all the major cities were along the River Nile. So boats and ships were the most important form of transportation. Most Egyptians used a small boat called a skiff (مركب شراعي صغير). They made this simple boat from papyrus and rope (حبال). People could travel short distances (مسافات) in these boats, or they could use it for fishing. They used oars (المجاديف) to make the boats move. They made larger boats and ships from wood. These ships had a large sail (شراع) to catch the wind and they used oars to move and control the direction (اتجاه). The Egyptians built many different kinds of boats for traveling, fishing, and transporting goods.

1. Why did the ancient Egyptians travel on the River Nile and not on roads?
   ▶ ....
2. What was a skiff made from?
   ▶ ....
3. What was it used for?
   ▶ ....
4. What did they make the larger ships from?
   ▶ ....
5. Why did these ships use sails?
   ▶ ....
6. What did the oars do?
   ▶ ....



Lesson 4 Writing

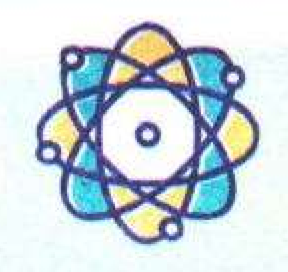
Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



canal
قناة



roof
سقف - سطح





nuclear energy
طاقة نووية



hydrogen gas
غاز الهيدروجين



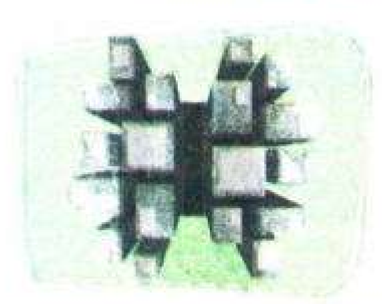
water vapor
بخار الماء



water way
ممر مائي



route
طريق



top part
الجزء الأعلي

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

loud	عالي الصوت	**on my way to school**	في طريقي للمدرسة
quiet	هادئ	**too far**	بعيدًا جدًا جدًا

Expressions of giving opinion تعبيرات تستخدم عند إبداء الرأي

I believe	أنا أعتقد	**I am sure that**	أنا متأكد أن
In my opinion	في رأيي	**From what I know**	علي حد علمي
Personally, I think	أنا شخصيًا أعتقد		

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
travel	يسافر	traveled	need	يحتاج	needed
stay	يبقى - يظلّ	stayed	believe	يؤمن - يعتقد	believed
protect	يحمي	protected	produce	يُنْتِج	produced
play	يلعب	played	describe	يَصِف	described

Definitions تعريفات SB Student's Book

waterway	: the different routes people use for traveling by water like a river, canal, or lake.
water vapor	: water in the form of gas.
canal	: a long area of water, made for boats to travel on.
roof	: the top part of a building.



Sherif's plan for an ideal city

1. My Ideal City ❶



My city is located on the Nile River. There are new homes, schools, and a hospital. There is also a large park where people can go for walks and play sports. I believe ❷ that parks are important for everyone. All the electricity in my city comes from a solar energy farm in the desert. The new homes have solar panels on their roofs too. There are palm trees ❸ around the houses to help them stay cooler. In my opinion ❹, solar energy is better than burning fossil fuels because it is better for the environment.

❶ مدينتي النموذجية
❷ أنا أعتقد
❸ أشجار النخيل
❹ في رأيي



2. Water Transportation

There is a great new ferry system that moves people up and down the river. The new ecological boats use both wind power and electric energy. The ferry can also use the new canals. The residents can use the ferry system to get around the town. **Personally, I think** ❺ it is very important to protect our waterways. If we use greener boats, we can do that. These ecological boats are quieter than other boats too.

3. Land Transportation

All this transportation is now more ecological. There are electric **cabs** ❻, but they don't have any drivers because they are **driverless** ❼. **I am sure that** ❽ the air will be cleaner if we use electric vehicles. We also have buses that use power from hydrogen gas. From what I know, hydrogen vehicles don't produce any dangerous gases. They only produce warm air and water vapor. You can ride your bike all around the city on the bike paths. They go along the river and everywhere else in my city.

❺ شخصيًا أعتقد
❻ سيارات أجرة
❼ بلا سائق
❽ أنا متأكد أن

Activity Book Text AB

My green city

by Hana

My ideal city is **located on** ❶ the **Red Sea coast** ❷. There are houses and apartments, schools, two museums, and a hospital. There are a lot of **green spaces** ❸ where people can go for walks, ride their bikes, and enjoy being in **nature** ❹. Personally, I think that green spaces are the most important part of a city. There are also large trees in all the streets to provide **shade** ❺.

❶ تقع على
❷ ساحل البحر الأحمر
❸ مساحات خضراء
❹ الطبيعة
❺ الظل

Clean energy

Most of the electricity for the city comes from a wind farm ❻ on the coast. The wind farm has 12 wind turbines ❼ that generate electricity ❽. Many buildings have solar panels ❾. In my opinion, all buildings should have solar panels on their roofs. I am sure that people will stop using fossil fuels soon because renewable energy ❿ is cleaner.

❻ مزرعة الرياح
❼ توربينات
❽ تولد الكهرباء
❾ ألواح شمسية
❿ طاقة متجددة
⓫ قنوات
⓬ مسارات دراجات
⓭ بضائع
⓮ عبر المدينة
⓯ السكان

Transportation for goods and people

There is a system of canals ⓫ in my city with bike paths next to them. I believe that more people will ride their bikes if there are more bike paths ⓬. The canals provide more outdoor spaces for people to enjoy, but they also provide transportation. Electric canal boats carry goods ⓭ across the city ⓮, so there are fewer trucks on the road. The residents ⓯ travel around the city on electric buses, streetcars, and cabs. All the transportation is electric so there is less pollution and the streets are quieter and cleaner.

Writing tip!

TIP

- When you write a heading, you use capital letters for the important words. You don't have to use capital letters for conjunctions (**and**, **so**, **but**), articles (**a**, **an** , **the**), or prepositions (**to**, **on**, **in**, **into**, **for**).

- عندما تكتب عنوان، تستخدم حروف كبيرة للكلمات الهامة . ليس لزامًا أن تستخدم حروف كبيرة للروابط (**and - so - but**)، والأدوات (**a - an - the**) أو حروف الجر (**to - on - in - into - for**).



Exercises on Lesson 4

1 Read and complete the text with words from the box:

fossil - electricity - solar - burning

My name is Sherif. All the ❶ .... in my city comes from a solar energy farm in the desert. The new homes have ❷ .... panels on their roofs too. There are palm trees around the houses to help them stay cooler. In my opinion, solar energy is better than burning ❸ .... fuels because it is better for the environment.

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:



bike paths - green spaces - recycling bins - residents - solar panels - traffic jams - transportation - trees

My ideal city

In my ideal city, there are a lot of ❶ .... where people can go for walks. There are ❷ .... in all the streets to provide shade and make the buildings cooler. All the buildings have ❸ .... on their roofs. There are ❹ .... in the parks and streets, so people can recycle their plastic bottles. There are lots of ❺ ...., too, so that people can ride their bikes. The ❻ .... travel around the city on electric buses and streetcars, so there are fewer ❼ .... All the ❽ .... is electric so the air is cleaner and there's less noise.

3 Choose the correct answer:

1. The (floor - window - roof) is the top part of a building.
2. The (canal - ocean - sea) is a long, narrow area of water, made for boats to travel on.
3. Water vapor is water in the form of (gas - liquid - solid).
4. The (waterway - subway - railway) means the different routes people use for traveling by water like a river, canal, or lake.

5. Boats that use gasoline are (louder - quieter - softer) than boats that use electricity. Electric boats are calmer.
6. The new buses produce (oxygen - fossil fuels - water vapor), so they are safe to the environment.

4 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. important - for - are - Parks - everyone.
   ▶ ....
2. The - on - new homes - solar panels - have - their roofs.
   ▶ ....
3. houses - the - around - are - There - palm trees.
   ▶ ....
4. better - is - than - burning - Solar energy - fossil fuels.
   ▶ ....
5. very - important - It's - to protect - waterways - our.
   ▶ ....
6. cleaner - The air - if we - will be - use - electric vehicles.
   ▶ ....
7. warm air - and - water vapor - produce - Hydrogen - vehicles.
   ▶ ....
8. bike - paths - your bike - You - on the - can ride.
   ▶ ....

5 Read the following text and answer the questions below:

My city is located on the Nile River. There are new homes, schools, and a hospital. There is also a large park where people can go for walks and play sports. All the electricity in my city comes from a solar energy farm in the desert. The new homes have solar panels on their roofs too. There are palm trees around the houses to help them stay cooler.



A Choose the correct answer:

1. My city is located on the (Red Sea - Lake Nasser - Nile River).

2. The new homes have solar panels on their (walls - roofs - doors).

B Answer these questions:

3. Where does the electricity in the city come from?

▶ ....

4. How are palm trees useful for houses?

▶ ....

6 Write a paragraph of (40) words using the following guiding elements:

"Your ideal city"

▸ Ideas to help you:

- *Describe your ideal city.*
- *Explain the transportation and how it is better for the environment.*
- *Use expressions for giving your opinions.*



....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Lessons 5-6 Transportation around the world & Project

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



advantages مميزات



disadvantages عيوب



get wet يبتل



cab سيارة أجرة



ferry عبارة - معدية



radio show عرض إذاعي

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past
guess	يُخَمِّن	guessed
perform	يؤدي	performed
record	يُسَجِّل	recorded

Present		Past
decide	يُقَرِّر	decided
carry	يحمل	carried
use	يستخدم	used

Definitions تعريفات A B Activity Book

streetcar	: This travels around a town or city. It can carry about 40 people. It doesn't use gasoline. It's electric.
cab	: This transports people on roads around cities or towns. Only three or four people can travel in this. It can be expensive.
subway	: This travels underground. People use it to travel around cities. It's fast and it isn't expensive.
ferry	: This takes people or goods across rivers, lakes, or the sea. It can be quite small or very big.

Listening



Host : Welcome back ❶, everyone. Now we are going to take calls ❷ from some of our listeners. We want to know how children get to school ❸ where you live. Are there any advantages or disadvantages? Hello, you're our first caller ❹.

Astrid : Hi, this is Astrid from the Netherlands ❺. A lot of children ride their bikes to school in my country. I think something like 75% of children actually ❻. As you might know, the Netherlands is a very flat country ❼, so it is easy Astrid to ride a bike - you don't have to go up ❽ any big hills or mountains. There are also a lot of bike paths. An advantage is that you exercise on the way to school ❾.
Another advantage is that it is good for the environment. A disadvantage is the weather - the Netherlands is a very rainy country so sometimes we get wet ❿. My cousins live in Belgium ⓫, and they ride bikes to school too.

Host : Thank you, Astrid. Now for our next caller.

Ethan : Hi there. I'm Ethan and I'm calling from Vermont in the United States ⓬. Children here usually take a school bus. We live in the mountains, and in the winter there's a lot of snow. It's too far ⓭ to walk to school if you live in the country. School buses are good because they can travel long distances and keep children safe and warm. An advantage is that the school buses can carry a lot of children at the same time ⓮. A disadvantage is that they can't drive when there is a big snowstorm ⓯. So, sometimes school is closed on those days ⓰. Another disadvantage is that the buses use gasoline. I hope we get electric buses soon.

❶ أهلًا بعودتكم
❷ يتلقى مكالمات
❸ يصلوا إلى المدرسة
❹ مُتصل
❺ هولندا
❻ في الواقع
❼ دولة منبسطة
❽ تصعد
❾ في طريقك للمدرسة
❿ نبتل
⓫ بلجيكا
⓬ الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية
⓭ بعيدة جدًا
⓮ في نفس الوقت
⓯ عاصفة ثلجية
⓰ في تلك الأيام



Host : Thanks, Ethan. Next caller, please.



Malti : Good afternoon. My name's Malti and I'm from Bangladesh. In Bangladesh, children use different kinds of **transportation** (17) to get to school, like buses. But a lot of people also use boats. This may surprise you, but my school is on a boat. In the morning, the children wait for the boat to arrive. We all get on and then pick up more children. Finally, we stop the boat on the side of the river and have our classes.

Boats are good here because there is a lot of water. When there are the heavy rains, called **monsoons** (18), the roads are even underwater and you have to use a boat. One advantage of my school boat is that every child can go to it - even if their parents don't have a boat. One disadvantage is that we don't have a playground, so we play on the boat.

(17) وسائل المواصلات
(18) رياح موسمية
(19) وجهة سياحية شهيرة
(20) رحلات بالزورق
(21) غير عادية
(22) عربة الثلوج



Amy : Hi. My name's Amy and I live in Mackinac Island. It's a very small island in Lake Michigan in the US. It's a **popular tourist destination** (19). People like to take **canoe trips** (20) on the lake in the summer, or they ride bikes around the island. The island is **unusual** (21) because there are no cars and no buses. In winter it's very cold for 5 or 6 months and it snows heavily, so we can't ride our bikes to school like we do in summer. So, in winter we travel to school by **snowmobile** (22). My dad drives the snowmobile and I sit behind him. It's fun, and it's more exciting than riding a bike.

Exercises on Lessons 5 6

1 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

disadvantages - advantages - expensive - underground

Fares : Hi, Seif. Which types of transportation do you use?

Seif : Hi, Fares. I usually use the cab and the subway.

Fares : What are the ❶ .... of the subway?

Seif : It travels ❷ .... It's fast and cheap.

Fares : What are the disadvantages of using a cab?

Seif : I think it's ❸ .... and only three or four people can travel in it.

Fares : Which one of them do you prefer?

Seif : I prefer the subway.

2 Choose the correct answer:

1. The (train - airplane - streetcar) travels around a town or city. It can carry about 40 people. It doesn't use gasoline. It's electric.
2. The (advantage - disadvantage - disagree) of a cab is that it can be expensive.
3. The (subway - ferry - cab) transports people on roads around cities or towns. Only three or four people can travel in this. It can be expensive.
4. The (cab - streetcar - subway) travels underground. People use it to travel around cities. It's fast and it isn't expensive.
5. The (ferry - airplane - train) takes people or goods across rivers, lakes, or the sea. It can be quite small or very big.
6. The (disadvantage - advantage - disconnect) of a subway is that it is fast and cheap.



3 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. day - every - school - get to - How - do you?

▶ .... ?

2. water - on - You - can - by ferry - travel.

▶ ....

3. school - I - to - go - car - by.

▶ ....

4. to school - the way - She - exercise - gets - on.

▶ ....

5. types - of - Which - transport - use - do you?

▶ .... ?

4 Write an email to your friend Malak:

▶ Tell her about the types of transportation that people use in your country. What are the advantages and disadvantages of each kind of transportation? Your email address is nour@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is malak@hotmail.com.

From:

To:

Subject:

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Unit 11 Test 5





1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (4Ms)



نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (248) آخر الكتاب.

1. We have to sit in a traffic (light - jam - rule - road) on my way to school.
2. The (bus - car - transportation - trip) to school sometimes takes us an hour.
3. The traffic lights are often red and that makes the traffic even (better - best - worse - worst).
4. I can't make the trip (on foot - by bus - by ship - by train) because my school is too far to walk to.

2 Listen and complete: (4Ms)

نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (248) آخر الكتاب.

1. The problem with transportation that uses .... is that it burns fossil fuels.
2. Transportation that uses gasoline is bad for the ....
3. People are developing cleaner forms of .... like electric cars.
4. Engineers are designing .... airplanes and ships, too.

B Reading (11Ms)

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box: (3Ms)

spaces - environment - paths - volunteer

Dina : Hey, Talia. Did you go to the science museum with your class yesterday?

Talia : Yes, we did. I learned a lot about creating a cleaner urban ❶ ....

Dina : Oh, really? What did you learn?

Talia : Well, it's important to have green ❷ .... in a city.

Dina : That sounds like a good idea to me. We need fewer cars too, don't we?

Talia : Yes, and we need bike ❸ .... for people to ride their bikes on.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below: (4Ms)

In my city, all transportation is now more ecological. There are electric cabs, but they don't have any drivers because they are driverless. I am sure that the air will be cleaner if we use electric vehicles. We also have buses that use power from hydrogen gas. From what I know, hydrogen vehicles don't produce any dangerous gases. They only produce warm air and water vapor. You can ride your bike all around the city on the bike paths.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. In my city, all transportation is now more (dangerous - steam - harmful - ecological).
2. Electric cabs don't have any (engines - drivers - wheels - motors).

B Answer these questions:

3. What does hydrogen gas vehicles produce?

▶ ....

4. Where can we ride our bikes?

▶ ....

C The Reader (Amir takes action)

5 A- Read and write T (True) or F (False): (4Ms)

1. Trucks transported plastic bottles of water in plastic bags. (   )
2. The seagull was in trouble. (   )

B Choose the correct answer:

3. Amir and his grandmother hanged up the (clothes - cloth - seagull - roof).
4. Amir's tablet was on the (ground - table - roof - desk).



D Writing (11Ms)

6 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. Sharks are (large - larger than - larger - the largest) than turtles.
2. Do you think English is (more - most - the least - the most) interesting than French?
3. Nora is always laughing. She's the (happy - happier - the happiest - happiest) person I know.
4. That was (more - the least - less - most) difficult test I've ever done.

7 Order the words to make correct sentences: (2Ms)

1. transportation - What animals - people - for - use - do?

▶ ....?

2. people - The ferry - carry - of - can - a lot.

▶ ....

8 Write a paragraph of (40) words: (5Ms)

"How you and your family go to school and work"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Theme (4)
I'm a responsible person





A Global Challenge
تحدي عالمي

In this unit I will ....
- learn about geology and climate change.
- review the first conditional.
- read a newspaper report about how nations are working together to slow climate change.
- write a newspaper report about what causes climate change.
- listen to a talk about food supplies around the world.
- perform a role play about shopping responsibly.
- plan a plant-based meal.

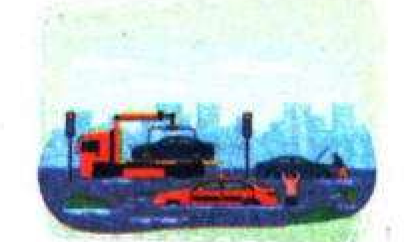
Objectives

Vocabulary	**Geology and weathering:** acid rain, atmosphere, deforestation, drought, erosion, flood, glacier, landslide, tsunami, water shortage **Parts of newspaper:** body, caption, headline, lead-in **- International agreements:** conference, pact, treaty **Food production:** beef, diversity, food miles, food waste, lentils, chickpeas, wheat, burger
Language	- The drought will cause a water shortage. We won't burn fossil fuels. Will you recycle these newspapers later? - Tarek will buy an electric car if he saves enough money. - If he buys an electric car, Tarek will help the environment. - My dad was in a conference last week so he is really tired. - The leaders went to a conference, but they didn't sign a treaty.
Reading	A text about an eco-friendly house; a newspaper report about how nations are working together to slow climate change
Writing	Writing a newspaper report about the causes of climate change and how people are working together to prevent it; planning and shopping for a plant-based meal
Speaking	Talking about climate change; identifying facts and opinions; role-playing how to shop responsibly; presenting a plan for a plant-based meal
Listening	A text about geology, erosion and weathering; a conversation about the connection between global warming and food
Life skills	**Productivity:** the effects of food production.
Values	**Respect the environment**
Issues and challenges	**Globalisation**
Integrated cross-curriculum topics	**science:** Earth's geological processes

Lesson 1 Rocks and stones



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



flows	flood	drought	water shortage
تدفقات	فيضان	جفاف	نقص المياه






landslide	tsunami	waves	currents
انهيار أرضي	تسونامي (هياج شديد للأمواج)	أمواج	تيارات مائية






heavy agriculture	glacier	erode	erosion
الزراعة بشكل كثيف	نهر جليدي	يتآكل	تآكل

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

natural process	عملية طبيعية	lake	بحيرة
riverbank	ضفة النهر	soil	تربة
heavy rains	أمطار غزيرة	rock	صخر
sea levels	مستويات البحر	geology	علم طبقات الأرض - علم الجيولوجيا

climate change	تغير مناخي	**in danger**	في خطر
atmosphere	غلاف جوي	**cause**	يسبب
result in	ينتج عنه	**affect**	يؤثر
rise	ترتفع	**slow down**	يبطء

Definitions تعريفات (Activity Book)

tsunami	: A huge wave created when a volcano exploded under the sea
glacier	: A huge ice flow that moves very slowly across the land
atmosphere	: It is made of oxygen, carbon dioxide, and other gases
acid rain	: It happens when chemicals from air pollution mix with water and sunlight

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
slow down	يُبطئ	slowed down	affect	يُؤثّر على	affected
perform	يؤدي	performed	plan	يُخَطّط	planned
want	يريد - يرغب	wanted	stop	يتوقف - يوقِف	stopped
happen	يحدُث	happened	erode	يتآكل	eroded
rain	تُمطِر	rained	cause	يُسَبِّب	caused
call	يدعى - يُسَمّي	called	damage	يُتلِف - يُدَمِّر	damaged

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
know	يعرف - يعلم	knew	grow	ينمو	grew
rise	يرتفع	rose	buy	يشتري	bought
become	يصبح	became	put	يضع	put



Did you know? هل تعلم؟

Nearly 71% of the surface of Earth is water. About 95% of all the water is salt water.

تمثل المياه حوالي 71٪ من سطح الأرض، وحوالي 95٪ من هذه المياه هي مياه مالحة.

Did you know? هل تعلم؟

The Sphinx is made of a large piece of a type of stone called limestone. Acid rain damages limestone and another stone called marble. So, acid rain can also damage the Sphinx.

أبو الهول مصنوع من نوع من الأحجار يسمى الحجر الجيري. الأمطار الحمضية تُتلف الحجر الجيري ونوع آخر من الأحجار يسمى الرخام، وبالتالي الأمطار الحمضية يمكن أن تُتلف أبو الهول.



Erosion and Drought

Erosion ❶ is a natural process. It happens when rock and soil is moved from one place to another by water, wind, or flows ❷. The waves and currents ❸ in the sea can erode beaches, and rivers can erode riverbanks. Heavy rains or winds can also cause the land to erode ❹. Different types of flows - floods, landslides ❺, tsunamis ❻, or glaciers ❼ - also erode the land. Humans can cause erosion too. Heavy agriculture is one way that people do this. Burning fossil fuels is another way because it results in climate change. Climate change causes sea levels to rise and this results in more erosion.

Drought ❽ happens where there is not enough rain for a long time. When this happens, rivers and lakes become dry. Farmers cannot grow food and nature is in danger. When people do not have all the water that they need, we say that there is a water shortage ❾.

1. التآكل
2. تدفقات
3. التيارات المائية
4. تتآكل
5. إنهيارات أرضية
6. تسونامي
7. أنهار جليدية
8. الجفاف
9. نقص مياه

Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:



drought - erosion - flood - landslide - water shortage

When heavy rain or strong winds move soil and rocks from one place to another, it creates ❶ .... Human activity such as heavy agriculture can also create this.
During a ❷ ...., there isn't enough rain, and rivers and lakes become dry. There isn't enough water and there is a ❸ .... This affects the environment and farmers can't grow food or feed their animals.
Too much rain in one area can cause a ❹ .... When too much rain falls on hills and mountains and there aren't enough trees to hold the water, there can also be a ❺ .... This is when the soil and rocks move and fall away.

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

erosion - drought - shortage - affect

Dina : Hi, Mona. What are you doing?

Mona : Hi, Dina. I'm watching a video about ❶ .... in Egypt.

Dina : When does drought happen?

Mona : It happens when there isn't enough rain for a long time.

Dina : How does drought ❷ .... the environment?

Mona : When this happens, rivers and lakes become dry.

Dina : Yes, we call this a water ❸ ....

3 Choose the correct answer:

1. (Erosion - Tsunami - Flood) happens when rock and soil is moved from one place to another by water, wind or flows.
2. The waves and (currents - fish - boats) in the sea can erode beaches.
3. Heavy rains or winds can cause the land to (flood - erode - grow).
4. When we burn (fossil fuels - food - rocks), we cause climate change.
5. (Agriculture - Climate - Soil) change causes sea levels to rise and this results in more erosion.
6. When drought happens, rivers and lakes become (wet - dry - heavy).
7. (Farmers - Doctors -Teachers) can't grow food during drought.
8. When we don't have enough water, this is called water (flood - shortage - erosion).

4 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. in - beaches - erode - The waves - the sea - can.

▶ ....

2. erosion - How - humans - can - affect?

▶ .... ?

3. results in - change - Burning - fuels - fossil - climate.

▶ ....

4. we do - erosion - slow down - can - to - What?

▶ .... ?

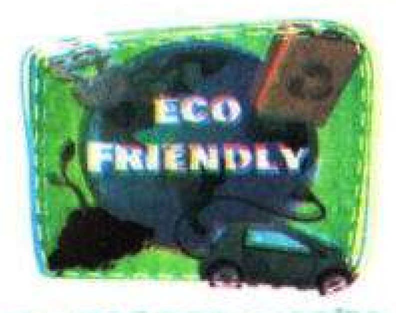
5. change - to rise - sea - Climate - levels - causes.

▶ ....

Lesson 2 Language



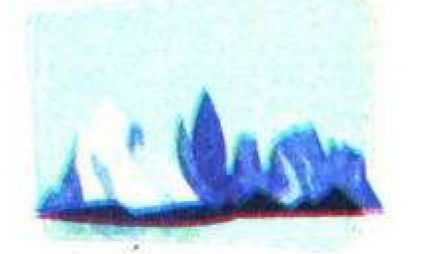
Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



ecofriendly
صديق للبيئة



electric vehicle
مركبة كهربية



ice caps
قمم جليدية



science museum
متحف علمي



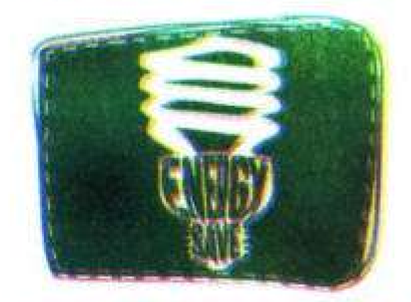
fossil fuels
وقود حفري



burn
يحرق



melt
يذوب



save (v)
يدخر

Conjugation of Verbs

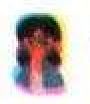
Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
burn يحرق - يحترق	burned (burnt)	save يدّخر - يُوَفّر - يُنقِذ	saved
melt يذوب	melted	exercise يتدرّب - يتمرّن	exercised
recycle يعيد تدوير	recycled	care about يهتم بـ	cared about

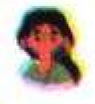


Listening





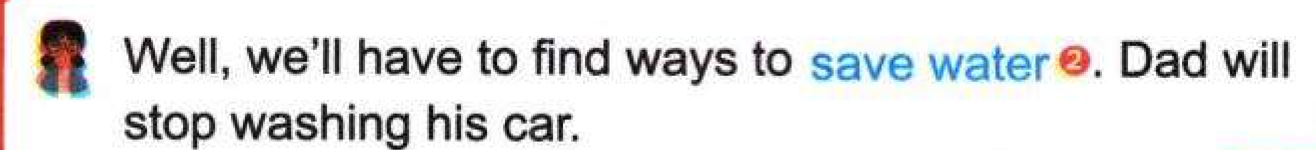
Hi, Mona. How are you and the family?



We're fine thanks, but there's a water shortage (1) here.

Oh, dear. What will you do?

(1) نقص المياه



Well, we'll have to find ways to save water ❷. Dad will stop washing his car.

That's a good idea. What about your mom?

Mom will reuse ❸ water from the kitchen for the garden.

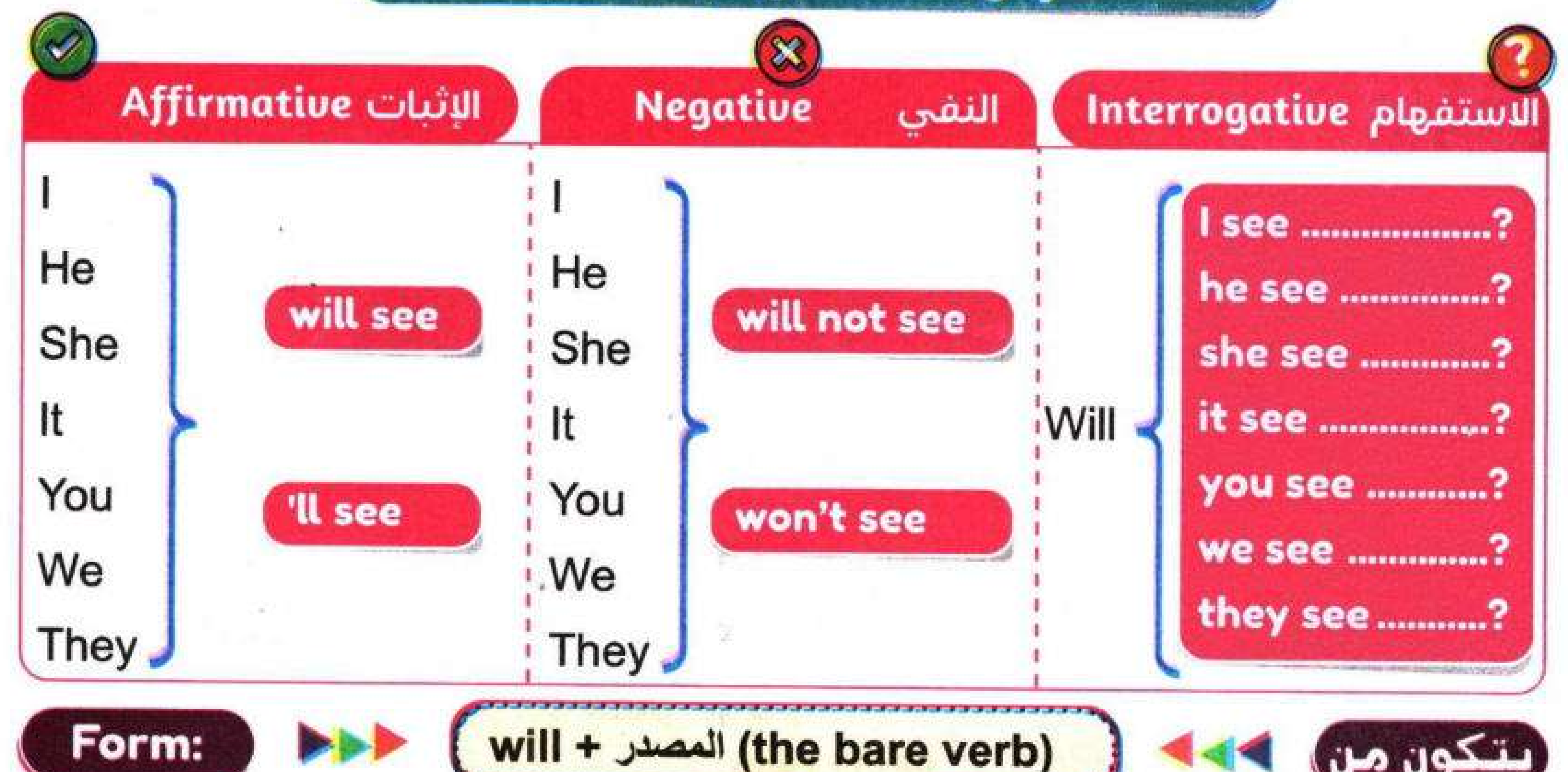
That will help the plants. Will you have fewer showers ❹?

No, I won't. But I'll have shorter showers. That will save a lot of water.

❷ نوفر المياه
❸ تعيد استخدام
❹ عدد أقل من الاستحمام

Grammar Study

The future simple tense
زمن المستقبل البسيط



Affirmative الإثبات		Negative النفي		Interrogative الاستفهام	
I / He / She / It / You / We / They	will see / 'll see	I / He / She / It / You / We / They	will not see / won't see	Will	I see ....?
					he see ....?
					she see ....?
					it see ....?
					you see ....?
					we see ....?
					they see ....?

Form: ▶▶▶ will + المصدر (the bare verb) ◀◀◀ يتكون من

- The drought will cause a water shortage.
- I'll try to find out new ways to help the environment.

■ **We use it to express actions that will happen in the future.**

■ **يستخدم للتعبير عن أحداث سوف تحدث فى المستقبل.**

- We will clean the town beach next Friday.

■ **We sometimes use some words with the future simple as:**

■ **توجد كلمات دالة على زمن المستقبل البسيط مثل:**

Key words

▶ **tomorrow** غدًا ▶ **next ...... (week) ......** القادم **(الأسبوع)**

▶ They **will go** to the meeting **next Saturday**.

■ **In the negative form, we use (will not (won't)) before the bare verb.**

■ **ننفى المستقبل البسيط باستخدام (will not - won't) ثم الفعل في المصدر.**

▶ We **won't burn** fossil fuels.

■ **In the interrogative form, we use (will) at the beginning of the question or after the question word with the bare verb.**

■ **عند عمل سؤال على المستقبل البسيط، نبدأ السؤال بـ (will) أو نضعها بعد كلمة الاستفهام مع الفعل في المصدر.**

- **Will** she **drop** garbage? ▶ No, she **won't**.
- **Will** you **recycle** these newspapers later? ▶ Yes, I **will**.
- What **will** you **do** tomorrow? ▶ **I'll join** the volunteer team.

■ **لا تنسَ أن (will - won't) لا بد أن يتبعا بالمصدر.**

The first conditional [If]

If (لو - إذا) + present simple	→	**future simple**
If (لو - إذا)+ مضـــارع بسيط	→	**will ('ll - won't) +المصدر**

- **If** Tarek **puts** solar panels on his roof, he **will make** his own electricity.
- Tarek **will make** his own electricity **if** he **puts** solar panels on his roof.
- **If** you **burn** fossil fuel, you **won't help** the environment.
- You **won't help** the environment **if** you burn fossil fuel.
- **Will** you **go** for a walk **if** the weather **is** good?

▶ Yes, I will. (No, I won't.)

■ **We use the first conditional to talk about things that is possible in the future.**

■ **نستخدم الحالة الأولى لـ (If) للتعبير عن احتمال حدوث شيئ في المستقبل.**

Exercises on Lesson 2

1 Read and complete the text with words from the box:

electric - environment - ecofriendly - energy

Tarek wants to make his house more ❶ .... If Tarek uses electricity from solar energy, for example, he will save money. What will he do with all that extra money? Tarek will buy an ❷ .... car if he saves enough money. If he buys an electric car, Tarek will help the ❸ ....

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

flood - shortage - reuse - washing

Samira : Hi, Mona. How are you and the family?
Mona : We're fine thanks, but there's a water ❶ .... here.
Samira : Oh, dear. What will you do?
Mona : Well, we'll find ways to save water. Dad will stop ❷ .... his car.
Samira : That's a good idea. What about your mom?
Mona : Mom will ❸ .... water from the kitchen for the garden.
Samira : That will help the plants. Will you have fewer showers?
Mona : No, I won't. But I'll have shorter showers. That will save a lot of water.

3 Read and complete the text with the correct form of the verbs:



be - be - feel - live - look - plant

We can help the environment by planting more trees. If we ❶ .... more trees in our cities, the air ❷ .... cleaner. The streets will have shade (ظل) and the buildings will be cooler. If there ❸ .... more trees in our cities, the streets ❹ .... prettier, too. That is important. If residents ❺ .... in a beautiful urban environment, they ❻ .... happier.

4 Choose the correct answer:



1. If we (use - will use) electric vehicles, our cities (are - will be) cleaner.
2. People (exercise - will exercise) more if cities (have - will have) more bike paths.
3. If the polar ice caps (melt - will melt), sea levels (rises - will rise).
4. I (will help - won't help) the environment if I (use - will use) fossil fuels.
5. If it (rains - will rain) a lot, there (is - will be) a flood.
6. Lara (uses - won't use) a plastic bag if she (cares - will care) about the environment.
7. If it (will not rain - does not rain), the rivers (don't have - won't have) any water.
8. If sea levels (rise - will rise) a lot, some cities (are - will be) under water.
9. We (will save - won't save) the environment if we (burn - will burn) fossil fuels.
10. The river (are - will be) cleaner if you (don't use - won't use) plastic bags and bottles.
11. If we (cut - will cut) down all of the trees, global warming (will get - won't get) worse.

5 Choose the correct answer:

1. I think our team (wins - will win - won) tomorrow.
2. Mom is so tired. I (helps - helping - will help) her do the housework.
3. My friends and I (will play - played - play) football next Monday.
4. She (went - goes - will go) shopping with her mom next Thursday.
5. The drought will (causes - cause - caused) water shortage.
6. I (will - am not - won't) go out tonight. I will stay at home.
7. Mom (isn't - doesn't - won't) cook fish for lunch. She will cook chicken.



8. What (do - will - are) you do tomorrow?
9. Ahmed won't (come - comes - coming) with us.
10. What will he (buy - bought - buys) at the clothes store?
11. (Is - Does - Will) she wear her blue dress tomorrow?
12. If you (will want - want - wanted) to help the environment, you will think for ways to do that.
13. If she (go - goes - doesn't go) to school on foot, she will be healthier.
14. Tarek (save - saves - will save) money if he uses solar energy.
15. If dad buys an electric car, he (helped - will help - helps) the environment.
16. If we (throw - throws - don't throw) garbage, all streets will be clean.
17. He (will get up - gests up - won't get up) early if he goes to bed late.
18. If she (comes - will come - doesn't come) with us, she won't enjoy the rides at the funfair.
19. (Will - Are - Do) it help to save the planet if we reduce pollution?
20. If she (have - will have - has) a million pounds, she will give some of the money to the poor.
21. He won't (is - be - are) fresh in the morning if he goes to bed late.
22. She will have a party if she (win - wins - doesn't win) the first prize.

6 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. shortage - The drought - will - cause - a water.

▶ ....

2. afternoon - you - go - Will - this - shopping?

▶ .... ?

3. on Friday - go - I - the beach - to - won't.

▶ ....



4. car - buy - an - electric - Will - Tarek?

▶ .... ?

5. a lot, - it rains - If - a flood - there - will be.

▶ ....

7 Write an email to your friend Omar:

▶ Tell him about a project you want to do to help the environment. Are you going to plant trees? How can planting trees affect the air, the streets and the buildings? Are you going to create more green spaces? Your email address is adel@hotmail.com. Your friend's email address is omar@school.net.

From:

To:

Subject:

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson 3 Nations working together



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



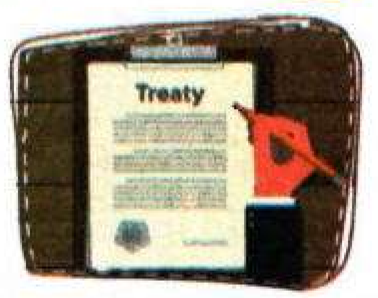
conference
مؤتمر



agreement
اتفاق



pact
تحالف - معاهدة



treaty
معاهدة



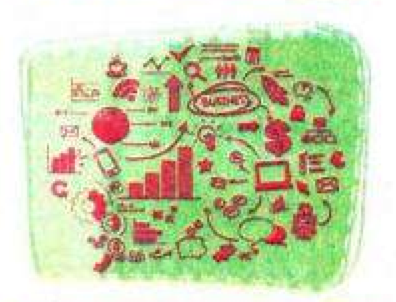
nations
دول - أمم



global climate news
أخبار المناخ العالمي



global warming
الاحتباس الحراري



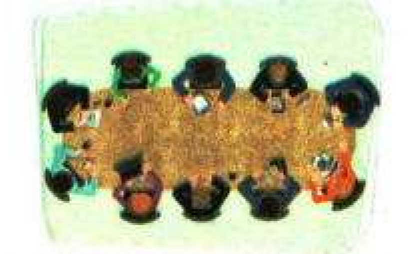
plans
خطط



party
حزب سياسي



document
وثيقة



meeting
اجتماع



world leaders
قادة العالم

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

the United Nations	الأمم المتحدة	**sign (v)**	يوقع - يمضي
work together	تعمل سويًا	**agree**	يتفق
serious effort	مجهود جاد	**teenager**	شاب مراهق
possible	ممكن	**later**	فيما بعد

Definitions تعريفات SB Student's Book

conference	: a formal meeting where people meet to talk about a topic.
pact	: a formal agreement between two people or groups of people.
party	: a group of people who have the same goals and beliefs.
treaty	: a formal written agreement between two or more countries.

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
sign يُوَقِّع	signed	agree to يتّفق على	agreed to
work together يعملون سويًا (معًا)	worked together	summarize يُلَخِّص - يُوجِز	summarized
connect يجمع بين - يربط	connected	reduce يُقَلِّل - يُخَفِّض	reduced
express يُعَبِّر	expressed	decide يُقَرِّر	decided
plant يزرع	planted	continue يواصِل - يستمر	continued

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
meet يقابل	met	come from يأتي من	came from
have لديه - يمتلك	had	eat يأكل	ate
do يفعل	did	become يصبح	became



Read and learn

Did you know? هل تعلم؟

The foundation Youth Love Egypt (YLE) has planted thousands of trees along the Nile and canals.

قامت مؤسسة -شباب بتحب مصر- بزراعة الآف من الأشجار بطول النيل والقنوات.



The parts of a newspaper report أجزاء التقرير الصحفي

❶ The name of the newspaper.
❶ اسم الصحيفة.

❷ The headline. This is the title of the report.
❷ عنوان التقرير.

❸ The reporter's name.
❸ كاتب التقرير (المراسل).

❹ The lead-in. This is one or two sentences that summarize the report.
❹ جملة أو جملتين تلخيص لما جاء في التقرير.

❺ The body of the report. This is the long part you read.
❺ موضوع التقرير.

❻ A picture.
❻ صورة.

❼ A caption. This is a description of a picture.
❼ وصف للصورة أو تعليق عليها.



Global Climate News — The name of the newspaper

Nations Work Together to Slow Climate Change — The headline

by Dareen Shabrawi — The reporter's name

Climate change affects everyone living on our planet, so we need to try to slow it by working together. Nations are now making plans to work on this problem. — The lead-in

The body of the report

If we all help, we can slow climate change. We can recycle paper, plastic, and glass at home, but what can nations do? Last week, leaders ❶ from every country in the world met for the United Nations ❷ Climate Change Conference ❸ (called COP26) in Glasgow, Scotland. They talked about what they can do to slow climate change, but this was not the first time they met. In fact, it was their 26th meeting ❹.

A picture

TOGETHER FOR OUR PLANET

leaders from all over the world met in Glasgow, Scotland.

A caption




❶ القادة ❷ الأمم المتحدة ❸ مؤتمر ❹ اجتماع



On December 12th, 1995, world leaders had a very important meeting. 196 parties signed the Paris Agreement ❺. The parties agreed to reduce global warming to less than 2 degrees Celsius. To do this, countries agreed to start reducing greenhouse gases ❻ immediately. This was the first time that so many nations made a serious effort to slow global warming.

Another important meeting was COP25 in Madrid, Spain in 2019.

Greta Thunberg, a teenager from Sweden, asked leaders to do more to slow climate change.

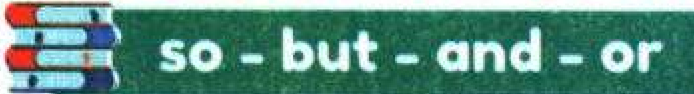
❺ اتفاق
❻ غازات الاحتباس الحراري
❼ معاهدة
❽ معاهدات

After that, Thunberg became famous all over the world. This year at COP26, leaders signed a new document: the Glasgow Climate Pact. In this new pact ❼, countries agreed to do several things. First, they decided to continue with the Paris Agreement. They also decided to stop using coal, a fossil fuel. Burning coal creates 40% of carbon dioxide emissions every year, so people must stop using it.

Another important topic at the meeting was transportation. Car companies agreed to stop making vehicles that use fossil fuels by 2040 so they will make more electric vehicles.

We must all slow climate change. Treaties ❽ like the Paris Agreement are one way for nations to work together to do this.

Grammar Study



so - but - and - or

so لذلك ▶▶▶ ○ تربط بين جملتين إحداهما سبب والأخرى نتيجة وتتبع بالنتيجة. ◀◀◀

▶ We use "so" to connect cause/reason and result.

➪ They played too much so they were tired.



but لكن ▶▶▶ ○ تربط بين جملتين يعبرا عن التناقض.

▶ We use "but" to connect two different or contrasting ideas.

Mom wants us to eat healthy food, but I buy lots of sweets every day.

and و ▶▶▶ تربط بين جملتين يعبرا عن أفكار متشابهة أو تتابع الأحداث.

▶ We use "and" to connect two similar ideas.

I wrote a short story and showed it to my mom.

or أو ▶▶▶ تستخدم للتخيير أو الاختيار.

▶ We use "or" to express choices.

I want to buy a white shirt or a white T-shirt.

Exercises on Lesson 3

1 Read and complete the text with words from the box:

plans - Nations - climate - affects

Climate change ❶ .... everyone living on our planet, so we need to try to slow it by working together. Nations are now making ❷ .... to work on this problem. If we all help, we can slow ❸ .... change.

2 Choose the correct answer: (Vocabulary)

1. A (pact - party - treaty) is a formal agreement between two people or groups of people.
2. A (treaty - conference - pact) is a formal meeting where people meet to talk about a topic.
3. A (pact - party - treaty) is a group of people who have the same goals and beliefs.
4. A (conference - party - treaty) is a formal written agreement between two or more countries.
5. The (headline - picture - caption) is the title of the report.
6. The (body - lead-in - headline) is one or two sentences that summarize the report.
7. A (picture - caption - headline) is a description of a picture.
8. The (headline - caption - body) of the report is the long part you read.

3 Choose the correct answer: (Grammar)

1. The leaders had a conference (and - but - so - or) they couldn't agree on anything.
2. The parties agreed to reduce air pollution (and - but - so - or) plastic waste.
3. We need to stop pollution now (and - but - so - or) it will be too late.
4. The government decided to stop using fossil fuels (and - but - so - or) they built a wind farm.
5. When we burn fossil fuels, it is bad for the environment, (and - but - so - or) we should stop doing it.
6. All countries must reduce air pollution (and - but - so - or) water pollution.
7. Countries could recycle more plastic (and - but - so - or) find a greener alternative (بديل).
8. Plastic pollution wasn't a problem 50 years ago, (and - but - so - or) now it's very serious.
9. I wrote a report for my school magazine (and - but - so - or) they published it!
10. The world's leaders are talking (and - but - so - or) they haven't signed a treaty yet.
11. I couldn't make ful medames (and - but - so - or) koshari for dinner tonight.
12. There hasn't been rain in our village for months, (and - but - so - or) now there is a water shortage.
13. Oats, falafel, (and - but - so - or) hummus are all plant-based foods.
14. Judy loves cooking, (and - but - so - or) she helps her mother in the kitchen.
15. Adam does not like helping in the kitchen, (and - but - so - or) he always washes the dishes.
16. Do they use solar energy (and - but - so - or) do they burn coal?
17. My dad was at a conference last week (and - but - so - or) he was really tired.
18. My family recycles paper (and - but - so - or) glass.
19. The leaders went to a conference (and - but - so - or) they didn't sign a treaty.
20. The children went to the climate change conference (and - but - so - or) they talked about problems in their country.

Lesson 4-5-6 Writing & The food we eat & Project



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



plant-based meal وجبة نباتية



dish أكلة



appetizer فاتح شهية - مقبلات



main course الطبق الأساسي



lentils عدس



chickpeas حِمّص



wheat قمح



dessert الحلو بعد الأكل



drinks مشروبات



burger برجر



Definitions تعريفات SB Student's Book

appetizer	: a small dish that you eat at the beginning of a meal

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
answer	يُجيب - يجاوب	answered	shop	يتسوَّق	shopped
remember	يتذكر - يذكر	remembered	replace	يستبدل	replaced
act	يتصرَّف	acted	improve	يُحَسِّن	improved
need	يحتاج	needed	create	يُنشئ	created
present	يُقدِّم - يعرض على	presented	include	يتضمن - يشمل	included
add	يُضيف	added	want	يريد	wanted

Writing tip!

TIP

- **When we write a newspaper report, we use facts not opinions.**
- عندما نكتب تقرير في صحيفة, نستخدم حقائق وليس آراء.

facts	حقائق	**In fact**	في الحقيقة
opinions	آراء	**For example**	على سبيل المثال

- **You can use these useful phrases when you write a newspaper report:**
  - ▶ In fact, it was their 26th meeting.
  - ▶ For example, the parties agreed to reduce global warming to less than 2 degrees Celsius.

Listening



Nagwa : I'm hungry. Can we have a burger this evening, please, Mom?

Mom : No, Nagwa. I'm making some koshari. It's healthier ❶ than a burger, and also better for the environment.

❶ صحي أكثر

Nagwa : Why is it better for the environment?



Mom : Well, some of the food that you can buy comes from different countries. The bread in a burger is made from wheat. Egypt gets most of its wheat from Russia ❷, and that is a long way from Egypt! And a lot of the meat in a burger comes from South America. That is a very long way!

❷ روسيا
❸ عدس
❹ حمص
❺ السوق المحلي
❻ الأغذية النباتية

Nagwa : How does it get here?

Mom : Usually by ship or by plane.

Nagwa : Ah yes, and that is bad for the environment.

Mom : That's right. But koshari is different. Do you remember what is in koshari?

Nagwa : Yes! It's made with rice, lentils ❸, chickpeas ❹, pasta and, er... tomatoes and onions.

Mom : That's right. I can buy most of these things from the local market ❺. And the market gets all the vegetables and plant-based food ❻ from local farmers. So everything comes from Egypt.

Nagwa : I understand now. I'm happy that we're having koshari this evening! And I'll remember that it is healthier and better for the environment than a burger.

Exercises on Lessons 4 5 6

1 Read and complete the text with words from the box:

burger - chickpeas - dessert - dish

I went to the supermarket yesterday. I wanted to buy some ingredients to make my meal for lunch. I decided to make koshari. It's an Egyptian food. I bought rice, pasta, ❶ .... and lentils. I also bought ice cream for ❷ .... I enjoyed my time cooking and eating my favorite ❸ ....

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

environment - healthier - remember - understand

Nagwa : Hello, Mom.
Mom : Fine. How are you, Nagwa?
Nagwa : I'm hungry. Can we have a burger this evening, please, Mom?
Mom : No, Nagwa. I'm making some koshari. It's ❶ .... than a burger, and also better for the ❷ ....
Nagwa : I understand. I'm happy that we're having koshari this evening! And I'll ❸ .... that it is healthier and better for the environment than a burger.

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

drink - dessert - eating - main course

Yara : Hi, Yassin.
Yassin : Hi, Yara.
Yara : What's your favorite food?
Yassin : I like ❶ .... burger.
Yara : What do you prefer for the ❷ ....?
Yassin : I prefer fish and salad for the main course.
Yara : What about the ❸ ....?
Yassin : I like chocolate cake for dessert.

4 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. plants - foods - from - comes - Which?
   ▶ .... ?
2. eat - often - Which - you - do - foods?
   ▶ .... ?
3. food - What - favorite - your - is?
   ▶ .... ?
4. dishes - are - What - best - the - Egyptian?
   ▶ .... ?
5. Egypt - Which - from - comes - food?
   ▶ .... ?
6. shop - responsibly - How - we - can - more?
   ▶ .... ?
7. climate change - can - countries - How - work - to reduce?
   ▶ .... ?

5 Write an email to your friend Huda:

▶ Tell her about your favorite meal.Your favorite dish, appetizer, main course and dessert. Your email address is jana@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is huda@gmail.com.

From:

To:

Subject:

....

....

....

....

Unit 12 Test 6





1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (4Ms)



نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (248) آخر الكتاب.

1. We need to try to (continue - save - slow - keep) climate change.
2. Nations are now making (planes - plans - plates - place) to work on this problem.
3. We can (recycle - cause - make - pick up) paper, plastic, and glass at home.
4. Last week, leaders from every country in the world met for the United Nations Climate Change (Festival - Party - Celebration - Conference).

2 Listen and complete: (4Ms)

نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (248) آخر الكتاب.

1. .... happens where there is not enough rain for a long time.
2. When drought happens, rivers and lakes become ....
3. Farmers cannot grow food and nature is in ....
4. When people do not have all the water that they need, we say that there is a ....

B Reading (11Ms)

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box: (3Ms)

conference - greenhouse gases - global - Agreement

On December 12th, 1995, world leaders had a very important meeting. 196 parties signed the Paris ❶ .... The parties agreed to reduce ❷ .... warming to less than 2 degrees Celsius. To do this, countries agreed to start reducing ❸ .... immediately. This was the first time that so many nations made a serious effort to slow global warming.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below: (4Ms)

Erosion is a natural process. It happens when rock and soil is moved from one place to another by water, wind, or flows. The waves and currents in the sea can erode beaches, and rivers can erode riverbanks. Heavy rains or winds can also cause the land to erode. Different types of flows - floods, landslides, tsunamis, or glaciers - also erode the land. Humans can cause erosion too. Heavy agriculture is one way that people do this. Burning fossil fuels is another way because it results in climate change. Climate change causes sea levels to rise and this results in more erosion.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. The waves and currents in the sea can (pollute - burn - reduce - erode) beaches.
2. Burning fossil fuels is another way because it results in (flood - climate change - drought - deforestation).

B Answer these questions:

3. When does erosion happen?
   ▶ ....
4. How can humans cause erosion?
   ▶ ....

C The Reader (Amir takes action)

5 A- Read and write T (True) or F (False): (4Ms)

1. Amir's grandma volunteered to help. (   )
2. Amir and his friends couldn't make a change. (   )

B Choose the correct answer:

3. Amir wanted to take (acting - action - photo - message).
4. Amir saw the seagull in her (nest - bed - leg - head).



D Writing (11Ms)

6 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. He has enough money, (so - but - and - or) he can buy the mobile he wants.
2. If we drive electric cars, we (reduce - reduces - won't reduce - will reduce) pollution.
3. He won't (go - goes - will go - going) to the cinema next weekend, he has to study for his exam.
4. She will get a prize if she (writes - will write - doesn't write - write) a good newspaper report.

7 Order the words to make correct sentences: (2Ms)

1. did - agree - What - to do - leaders - the?
   ▶ .... ?
2. slow down - change - need - We - climate - to.
   ▶ ....

8 Write a paragraph of (40) words using the following guiding elements: (5Ms)

"Global warming"

▶ Ideas to help you:

▶ What causes it. ▶ Its bad effects. ▶ Solutions.

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....





NON-FICTION READER

Shipwrecks

حطام السفن



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية

Paragraph (1)

archaeologists	علماء آثار	ancient	قديم - أثرى
repair (v)	يُصلح	bottom	قاع
Mediterranean Sea	البحر المتوسط	clay	طين
coast of Egypt	ساحل مصر	bricks	قوالب الطوب

Paragraph (2)

port	ميناء	earthquakes	زلازل
natural disaster	كارثة طبيعية	tsunamis	تسونامي
bay	خليج	disappeared (v)	اختفت

Paragraph (3)

artifacts	قطع أثرية	coins	عملات معدنية
statues	تماثيل	discovered	اكتشف
pottery	أواني فخارية	dived	غطس - غاص

Paragraph (4)

the temple of Amun	معبد آمون	sail (n)	شراع
sink (v)	تغوص - تغرق	historians	مؤرخين
rowing boat	زورق تجديف	shipwreck	حطام السفينة

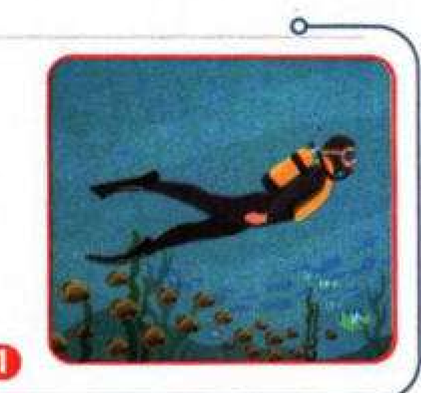
Paragraph (5)

Asia	آسيا	currents	تيارات مائية
Africa	أفريقيا	corals	مرجان
Europe	أوروبا	reefs	شعاب مرجانية

Shipwrecks

Paragraph (1)

In 2021, archaeologists ❶ were working at a site under the Mediterranean Sea, near the north coast of Egypt. This site was the ancient city of Thônis- Heracleion.



❶ علماء آثار

The archaeologists' modern technology helped them to see what was on the bottom ❷ of the sea. Under five meters of clay ❸ and bricks ❹, they found a wooden ❺ ship. It was over 2,200 years old.

❷ في قاع
❸ طين
❹ قوالب الطوب
❺ خشبية

Paragraph (2)

Thônis-Heracleion was a very old city. In the fifth century BCE, it was a very important place for sailors and for people who bought and sold things. It was the largest port in Egypt before Alexandria. However, there were lots of natural disasters ❻ such as earthquakes ❼ and tsunamis ❽ at the time. About 1,200 years ago, in the eighth century CE, the city fell into the sea at Abu Qir Bay ❾ and disappeared ❿.



❻ كوارث طبيعية
❼ زلازل
❽ تسونامي
❾ خليج
❿ اختفت

Paragraph (3)

In 2001, archaeologists discovered the city. When they dived under the water, they found lots of interesting artifacts ❾ at the underwater site, including statues, pottery, and coins.
The ship is the biggest and most exciting thing that they found there. Archaeologists often find things which are old and broken, but this ship was almost complete.

❾ قطع أثرية

Paragraph (4)

Archaeologists think that the ship was waiting in the port next to the temple of Amun. An earthquake in about 140 BCE destroyed ❿ the temple. Bricks from the temple fell onto the boat, making it sink ⓫.
The wooden ship was a very large rowing boat ⓬ and it also had a large sail ⓭. It is about 25 meters long. It was a fast


❿ دمر
⓫ يغرق

⓬ قارب تجديف
⓭ شراع

ship and it had a flat bottom, like ships that traveled on the Nile. It was similar to the style of some ships built in ancient Egypt, so archaeologists and historians are very excited by this discovery.

The shipwreck (14) in Abu Qir Bay is buried (15) under clay and bricks, but you can see many other shipwrecks. The Red Sea has lots of places where divers (16) can go down to wreck sites and explore ships under the water.

(14) حطام السفينة
(15) دفنت
(16) غواصين

Paragraph (5)



Lots of ships use the Red Sea, because it lies between Asia and Africa. It also allows ships to travel to Europe through the Suez Canal.However, there are storms, reefs (17), and strong currents (18) in the Red Sea which can make it dangerous. Sometimes, ships hit the reefs and sink.

One of the oldest shipwrecks in the Red Sea is the Carnatic. It sank in 1869 when it hit the Abu Nuhas reef. It has been under water for over 150 years, and divers can explore the ship and see lots of sea animals.

(17) شعب مرجانية
(18) تيارات مائية

Paragraph (6)

Another famous shipwreck is the Dunraven, which sank in 1876. There are large holes (19) in the boat so divers can swim inside it. Because these ships have been under the water for a long time, they have become artificial (20) reefs. They are homes for fish, turtles, dolphins, and other sea animals. Corals live on the metal (21) surface and there are also lots of different kinds of plants.

You have to be good at diving to visit a shipwreck, and you should go in a group. People come from all over the world to go wreck diving in the Red Sea and see the amazing sights (22)!

(19) ثقوب
(20) صناعية
(19) معدني
(20) مناظر رائعة

Questions with their model answers

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

Activity Book

1. In The past, people came to Thônis - Heracleion to farm the land. ( )
2. During the earthquake, bricks fell onto the ship and made it sink. ( )
3. When archaeologists explored the city, they found lots of statues. ( )
4. The wooden ships look like the ships that sailed along the Nile. ( )

2 Choose the correct answer:

Activity Book

1. The shipwreck in Abu Qir is buried under ....
   a. sand and shells b. clay and bricks
2. There are lots of places in the Red Sea where divers can explore ....
   a. shipwrecks b. ancient cities
3. Ships can travel from the Red Sea to .... through the Suez Canal.
   a. India b. Europe
4. The Red Sea can be dangerous because there are ....
   a. storms, reefs and strong currents.
   b. too many big ships
5. Ships called the Carnatic and Dunraven sank in ....
   a. 1869 and 1876 b. 1909 and 1966
6. The Carnatic sank when it hit ....
   a. the Dunraven b. the Abu Nuhas reef
7. When ships have been under water for a long time, they can become ....
   a. artificial reefs b. too dangerous to explore
8. Divers should visit a shipwerck ....
   a. alone b. in groups

3 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. The archaeologists found a wooden ship under clay and bricks. ( )
2. Thônis - Heracleion was the largest port in Egypt before Alexandria.( )
3. Earthquakes and tsunamis are artificial disasters. ( )
4. Thônis - Heracleion fell into the sea at Cairo Bay and disappeared. ( )
5. Archaeologists found interesting artifacts such as statues, pottery and coins at the underwater site. ( )
6. Bricks from the temple fell onto the boat, making it sink. ( )
7. The Red Sea lies between Europe and Africa. ( )
8. Ships travel to Europe through the Suez Canal. ( )
9. Tsunami is a big wave that is started by an earthquake under the water. ( )
10. A rowing boat is a boat that moves with oars through the water. ( )

4 Choose the correct answer:

1. A (port - school - hospital - temple) is a place where big ships can stay in a town or city.
2. A (boat - sail - port - coast) is a large piece of cloth that makes a ship move in the wind.
3. Earthquakes and tsunamis are natural (ports - disasters - statues - ships).
4. (Teachers - Doctors - Archaeologists - Farmers) found lots of interesting artifacts.
5. The shipwreck in Abu Qir Bay is (helped - buried - waited - traveled) under clay and bricks.
6. When the ships hit the reefs, they (find - sink - discover - help).

7. You have to be good at (reading - playing tennis - diving - writing) to visit a shipwreck.

8. After a long time under the water, the ships became artificial (turtles - dolphins - fish - reefs).

9. People come from all over the world to go wreck diving in the (Mediterranean Sea - Red Sea - Suez Canal - Abu Qir Bay) to see the amazing sites.

10. Storms and strong (dolphins - statues - turtles - currents) can make the Red Sea dangerous.

Answers

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1- F	2- T	3- T	4- T

2 Choose the correct answer:

1- b. clay and bricks	2- a. shipwrecks	3- b. Europe	4- a. storms, reefs and strong currents
5- a. 1869 and 1876	6- b. the Abu Nuhas reef	7- a. artificial reefs	8- b. in groups

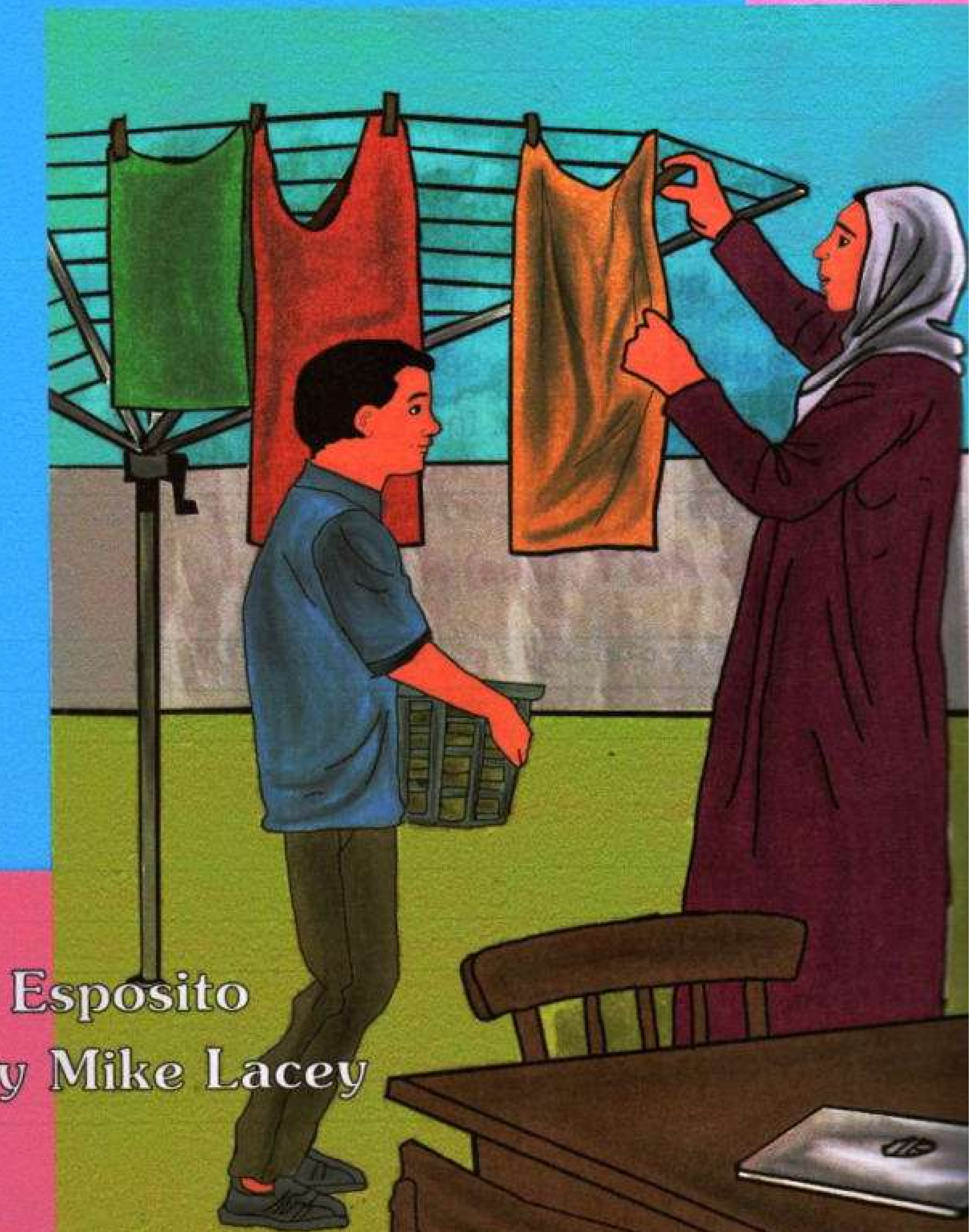
3 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1- T	2- T	3- F	4- F	5- T
6- T	7- F	8- T	9- T	10- T

4 Choose the correct answer:

1- port	2- sail	3- disasters	4- Archaeologists	5- buried
6- sink	7- diving	8- reefs	9- Red Sea	10- currents





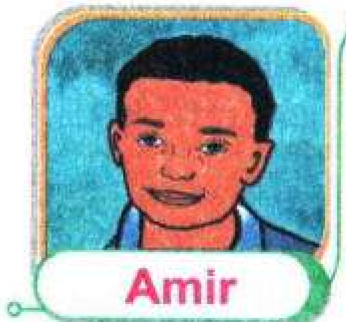
By Scot Esposito

Illustrated by Mike Lacey

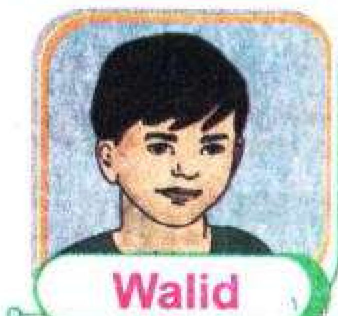
Characters الشخصيات


Grandma

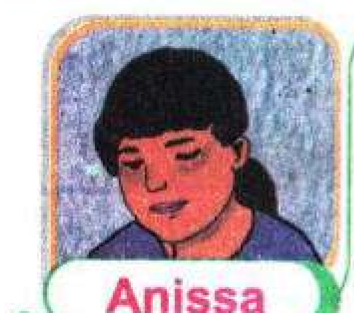
She is Amir's Grandma. She cooks food and hangs up the clothes with Amir. She helps Amir to solve the problem of the seagull.
هي جدة أمير وتقوم بطهي الطعام وتعليق الملابس مع أمير. هي تساعد أمير لكي يحل مشكلة طائر النورس.


Amir

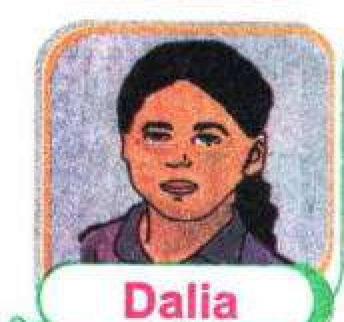
He is a kind boy. He helps his Grandma with the laundry. He wants to help the seagull on top of the neighbor's building.
هو ولد طيب يساعد جدته في غسل الملابس. وهو يريد مساعدة طائر النورس الموجود على سطح مبنى الجيران.


Walid

He is Amir's friend. He wants to help the seagull, too. He went to his dad's grocery store to show him the picture of the seagull and to make him use biodegradable bags.
هو صديق أمير ويريد مساعدة طائر النورس أيضًا. لقد ذهب إلى متجر والده لكي يريه صورة طائر النورس ويطلب منه أن يستعمل أكياس قابلة للتحلل.


Anissa

She is Amir's friend. She wants to help the seagull and solve the problem of using plastic bags. She went to her dad at the market to show him the picture of the seagull.
هي صديقة أمير وتريد مساعدة طائر النورس وحل مشكلة استخدام الأكياس البلاستيكية. لقد ذهبت إلى والدها في السوق لكي تريه صورة طائر النورس.

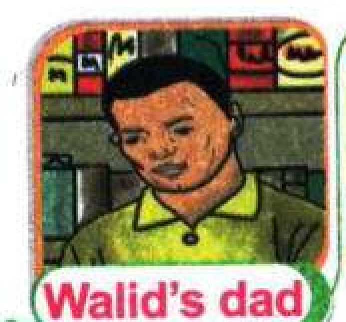

Dalia

She is Amir's friend. She sent e-mails to her cousins in the village to help in making the river clean.
هي صديقة أمير. لقد أرسلت رسائل البريد الإلكتروني لأولاد عمها في القرية لكي يساعدوا في جعل النهر نظيفًا.


Mariam

She is Dalia's cousin. She was happy to help in her village with the plastic problem in the river.
هي ابنة عم داليا. وكانت سعيدة بالمساعدة في قريتها لحل مشكلة البلاستيك في النهر.

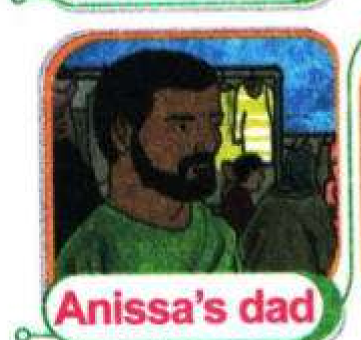
The Reader



Walid's dad

He has a grocery store. He felt sad when he saw the picture of the seagull. He decided to help and use biodegradable bags.

لديه محل بقالة. وقد شعر بالحزن عندما رأى صورة طائر النورس وقرر المساعدة واستخدام أكياس قابلة للتحلل.



Anissa's dad

He works at the market. When he saw the picture of the seagull, he asked the fishermen to help in taking the plastic out of the river.

هو يعمل في السوق. عندما رأى صورة طائر النورس طلب من الصيادين المساعدة في إخراج البلاستيك من النهر.



Seagull

It's a bird. It lives near the sea and eats fish. It landed in a nest on top of Amir's neighbor's building. There was a plastic bag around its leg.

هو طائر يعيش بالقرب من البحر ويأكل السمك. لقد هبط على عش فوق سطح مبنى جيران أمير وكان هناك كيس بلاستيكي حول ساقه.

Picture Dictionary القاموس المصور



Part (1)

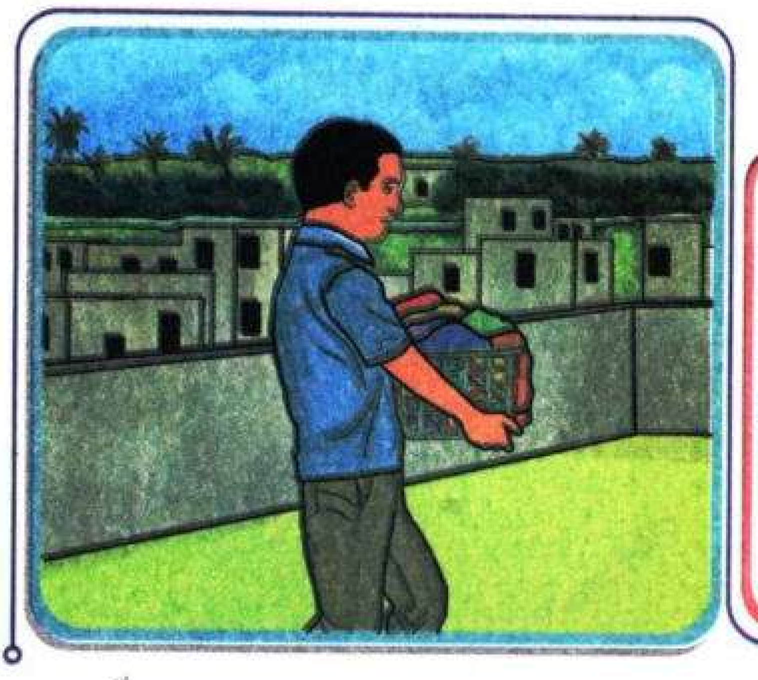
Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية

check (v)	تلقى نظرة	see	يرى
wash (n)	غسيل	took	أخذ
is finished	انتهى	beautiful	جميل
clothes	ملابس	Nile	النيل
village	قرية	below	أسفل - تحت

'Amir, can you check ❶ the washing machine ❷? I think the wash ❸ is finished. ❹'
'Yes, it's finished, Grandma. I'll take the clothes ❺ out for you.

❶ تلقي نظرة ❷ غسالة ❸ الغسيل
❹ انتهى ❺ ملابس





Amir took the laundry ❶ up to the roof ❷. From there, he could see the beautiful ❸ Nile and the village ❹ below ❺ him.

❶ الغسيل ❷ إلى السطح ❸ جميل
❹ قرية ❺ أسفل

Questions with their model answers

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. Amir can't check the washing machine. ( )
2. Amir can check the washing machine. ( )
3. The wash is finished. ( )
4. Amir took the bread out. ( )
5. Amir took the clothes out. ( )
6. Amir took the laundry up to the garden. ( )
7. Amir took the laundry up to the roof. ( )
8. Amir could see the beautiful Nile. ( )
9. Amir could see the Pyramids below him. ( )
10. There was a sea below him. ( )
11. There was a village below Amir. ( )
12. Amir helped his grandma cook dinner. SB ( )

2 Choose the correct answer:

1. Amir (can - can't - is - isn't) check the washing machine.
2. Amir took the (bread - shopping - bags - clothes) out.
3. The wash is (started - finished - went - finish).
4. Amir took the (fish - grandma - laundry - village) up to the roof.
5. Amir took the laundry up to the (garden - Nile - roof - ground).
6. Amir could see the (sea - Nile - city - car) below him.
7. Amir could see the (village - sea - pyramids - men) below him.

Answers

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1- F	2- T	3- T	4- F	5- T	6- F
7- T	8- T	9- F	10- F	11- T	12- F

2 Choose the correct answer:

1- can	2- clothes	3- finished	4- laundry
5- roof	6- Nile	7- village	

Part (2)

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية

look down	ينظر لأسفل	women	نساء
trucks	شاحنات	floating	طافية
transport (v)	ينقل	river	نهر
bottles	زجاجات	neighbor	جار
hang up	يعلق	nodded	هزت - أومأت برأسها
nature	طبيعة	horrible	فظيع
respect (v)	نحترم	in trouble	في مأزق
noticed	لاحظ	pick	يلتقط
poor bird	طائر مسكين	felt	شعُرت

Amir looked down ❶. Trucks transported ❷ plastic bottles ❸ of water and women carried their shopping home from the market in plastic bags ❹. He could also see plastic bottles floating ❺ down the river.

❶ نظر لأسفل ❷ نقلت ❸ زجاجات بلاستيكية
❹ أكياس بلاستيكية ❺ طافية





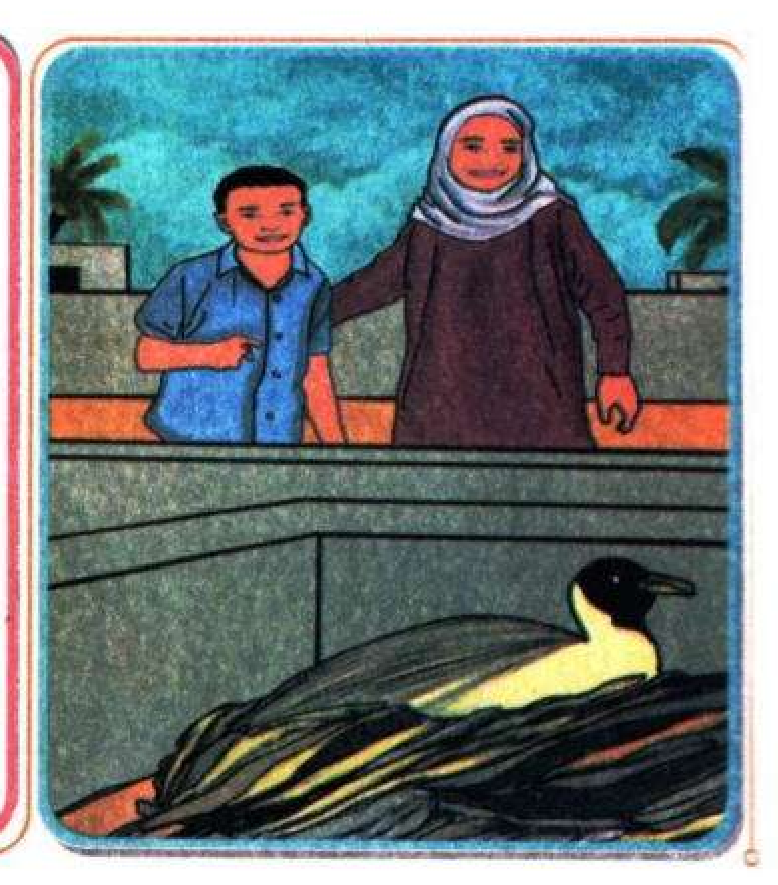
'Let's hang up ❶ these clothes quickly. It's really hot up here today,' said Grandma.

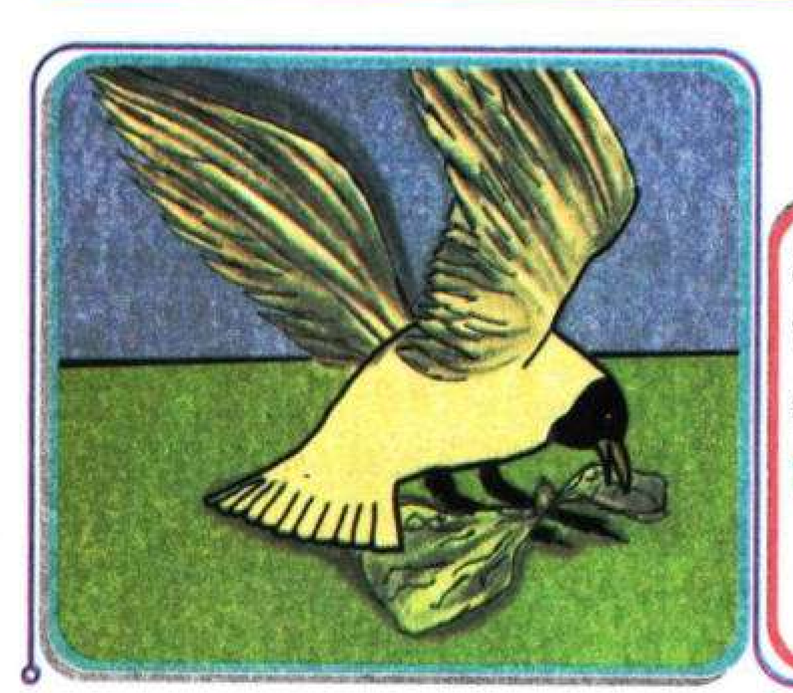
❶ نعلق

Term 2

A large seagull ❶ landed ❷ in a nest ❸ on top of neighbor's ❹ building. 'Look at the seagull, Grandma! She's so beautiful,' said Amir. Grandma nodded ❺ her head. 'Yes, she is,' Grandma answered. 'All of nature ❻ is beautiful. We must respect ❼ it.'

❶ طائر النورس ❷ هبط ❸ عُش
❹ جار ❺ أومأت برأسها ❻ الطبيعة
❼ نحترمها





Amir then noticed ❶ something horrible ❷: there was a plastic bag around the seagull's leg. 'Oh no! She's in trouble ❸,' said Amir.

❶ لاحظ ❷ فظيع ❸ في مأزق



Amir's tablet was on the table where he sometimes does his homework in the evening. He picked ❶ it up and took a picture ❷ of the poor bird ❸. Amir felt sad ❹.

❶ التقطه ❷ التقط صورة ❸ الطائر المسكين
❹ شعر بالحزن

Questions with their model answers

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. Trucks transported chicken in plastic bags. ( )
2. Trucks transported plastic bottles of water in plastic bags. ( )
3. Amir could see plastic bags floating down the river. ( )
4. Amir could see plastic bottles floating down the river. ( )
5. The weather was hot. ( )
6. Amir and his Grandma hang up clothes. ( )
7. Amir nodded his head. ( )
8. All of nature is terrible. ( )
9. The seagull was in trouble. ( )
10. Amir took a picture of the seagull with his Grandma's phone. SB ( )
11. Amir was upset when he saw the seagull with a plastic bag around its leg. SB ( )
12. Grandma doesn't like seagulls and thinks they are ugly. AB ( )
13. Amir takes a photo of the seagull with a plastic bag around its leg. AB ( )

2 Choose the correct answer:

1. Trucks transported (metal - wood - plastic - glass) bottles.
2. Amir and his grandmother hanged up the (clothes - cloth - shoes - roof).
3. There was a plastic (bottle - plant - bag - nest) around the seagull's leg.
4. The seagull was in (trouble - sea - Nile - ground).
5. Amir's tablet was on the (ground - table - roof - desk).
6. Amir does his homework in the (afternoon - morning - night - evening).
7. Amir felt (happy - sad - tired - hungry) when he saw the poor bird.

Answers

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1- F	2- T	3- F	4- T	5- T	6- T	7- F
8- F	9- T	10- F	11- T	12- F	13- T	

2 Choose the correct answer:

1- plastic	2- clothes	3- bag	4- trouble	5- table	6- evening	7- sad

Part (3)

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية

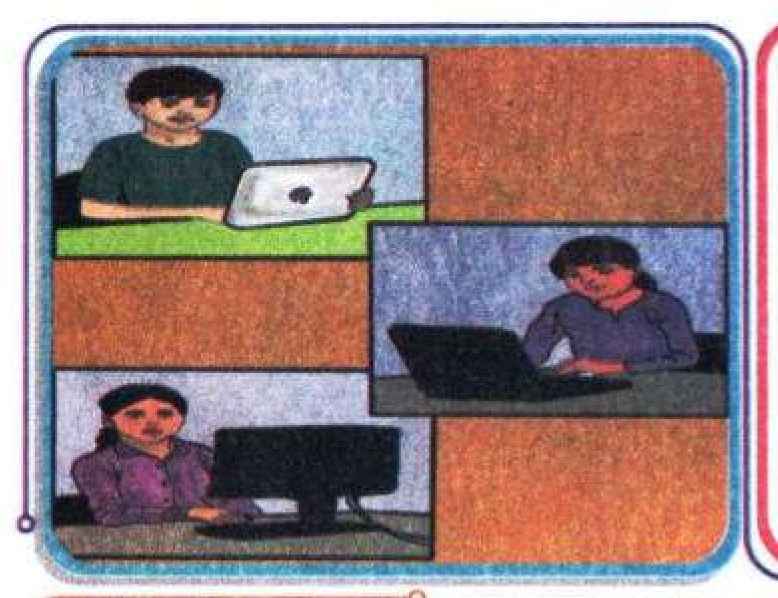
have to	يجب أن	take action	يتخذ إجراء
harm (v)	تؤذي	discovered	اكتشف
smart (adj)	ذكي	store (n)	متجر
understand	يفهم	riverbanks	ضفتي النهر
texted back	رد برسالة نصية	instead	بدلًا
explain	يفسر	fishermen (n)	صيادين
volunteered	تطوعت	cousins (n)	أولاد العم (الخال)
fold (v)	يثنى - يطوي	heads	رؤوس

Grandma saw how Amir was feeling. She put her arm around him. 'It'll be OK, Amir.'
'No, it won't. We **have to** ❶ do something to help. People are using too much plastic and it's **harming** ❷ the birds.'
'You're a **smart** ❸ boy, Amir. How can we help other people **understand** ❹ this?' his grandma asked him.

❶ يجب أن ❷ يؤذي
❸ ذكي ❹ يفهم







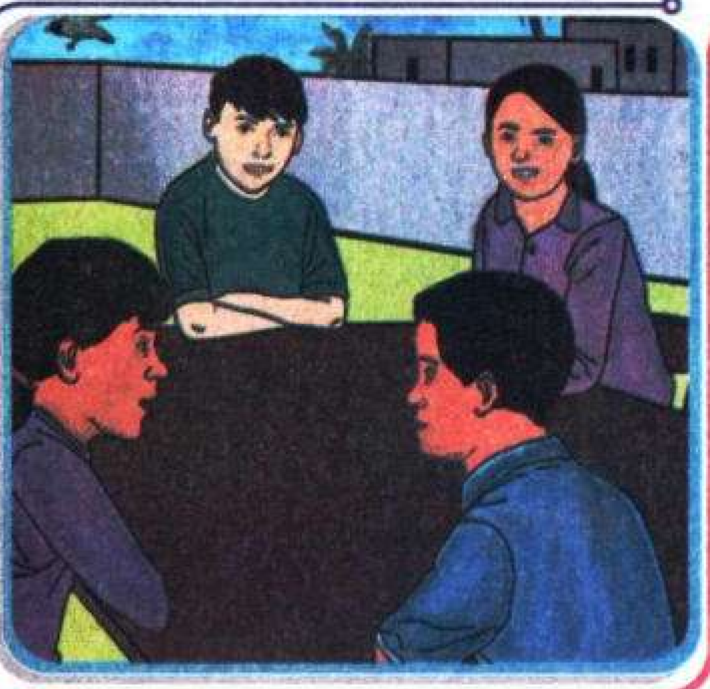
That night, Amir sent ❶ the picture of the seagull to some of his friends from school.
They were all very worried about ❷ the bird.
'We need to help her,' his friend Waleed texted back ❸. 'But what can we do?'

❶ أرسل ❷ قلقين على ❸ رد برسالة نصية

Amir wanted to take action ❶. He started researching ❷ on the internet and discovered ❸ that people use billions of plastic bags and bottles in Egypt every year. A lot of them end up in the Nile or the sea. So, he sent a message ❹ to his friends: (Hi everyone. We need to make a change ❺. Let's meet after school tomorrow to have the first meeting ❻ of our new volunteer group ❼: Save the River!)

❶ يتخذ إجراء ❷ يبحث على الانترنت ❸ اكتشف ❹ رسالة
❺ نحدث تغيير ❻ اجتماع ❼ مجموعة المتطوعين





The next day, Amir, Waleed, and some other friends met ❶ at Amir's house. They talked about different things that they could do. Amir took notes ❷ on his tablet:

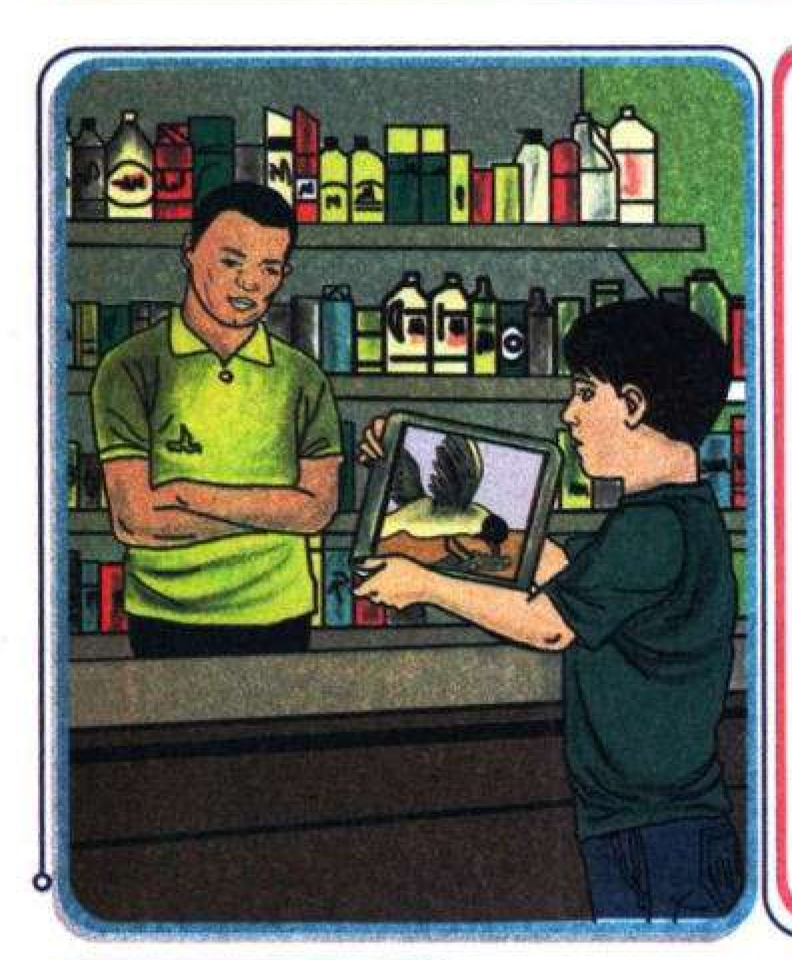
- Use cloth bags ❸. We can give them to people at the market ❹.
- Use biodegradable bags ❺. Waleed's dad can use them at his store.
- Clean up the riverbanks ❻. Anissa's dad can ask the fishermen ❼ to help us.
- Contact ❽ children in other towns. Dalia can send emails to her cousins.

❶ تقابلوا ❷ دون ملاحظاته ❸ أكياس قماش ❹ السوق ❺ أكياس قابلة للتحلل ❻ ضفتي النهر
❼ صيادين ❽ اتصل

Amir explained his ideas to his grandma. She **volunteered** (1) to help, too. 'I have some old **cotton cloth** (2), Amir. I can **sew** (3) some **shopping bags** (4) for you. Will that help?' 'Yes, Grandma, thank you! That will help a lot!





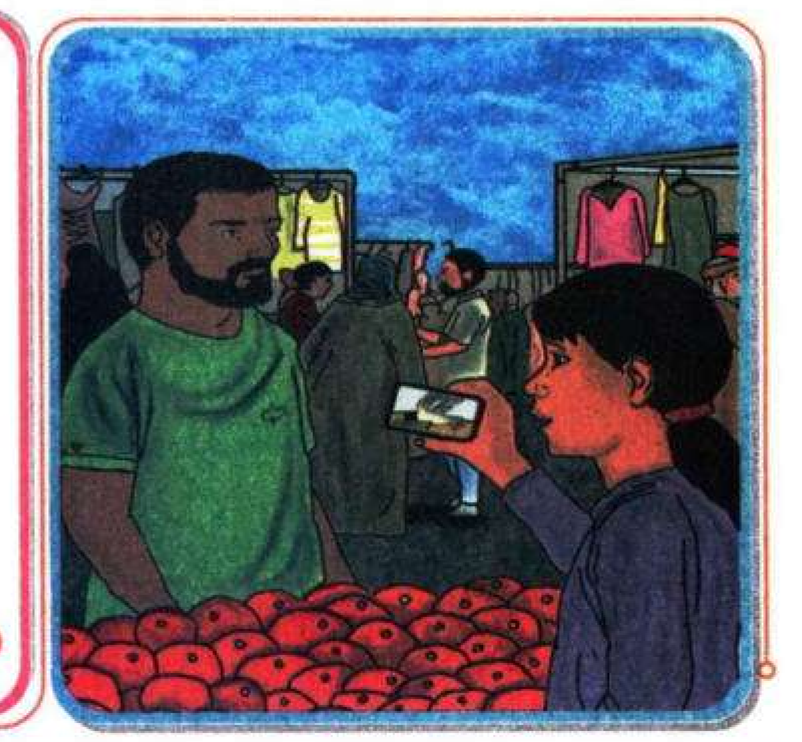


Waleed went to his dad's **grocery store** (1). 'Dad, please help us. Let's stop using plastic bags in our store. We can use biodegradable ones **instead** (2).'
'Waleed, why should we do that?' his father asked.
Waleed showed him Amir's picture of the seagull. His dad looked sad.
'OK, Waleed. I'll help you. We'll start using these biodegradable bags. We must help the river.'

1 متجر بقالة 2 بدلًا منها

Anissa's dad works at the market. She showed him Amir's picture of the seagull and told him all about their **plans** (1).
'I'll ask the fishermen to help us take the plastic out of the river. They'll help us. The water is **important** (2) for all of us,' he said.

1 خططهم 2 هامة





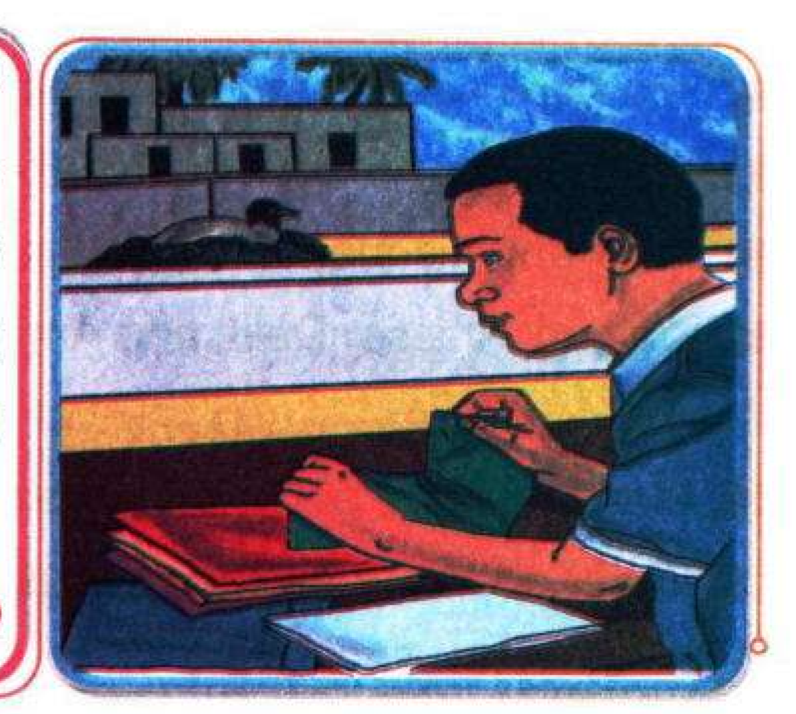
Dalia sent emails to all her cousins ❶. They lived in other villages ❷ around Egypt. 'Dalia, this is a great idea ❸,' her cousin Mariam wrote back ❹. 'We will be happy to help in our village, too.'

❶ أولاد العم ❷ قري ❸ فكرة رائعة

❹ كتبت لها مرة أخرى

A couple of days later, Amir went onto his grandma's roof to get her laundry. He saw the colorful ❶ cloth she was going to use to sew the cotton shopping bags. He started folding ❷ it and putting it in the laundry basket ❸.

❶ ملون ❷ يطوي ❸ سلة الغسيل





Then he saw the seagull in her nest. He remembered ❶ the plastic around her leg. Suddenly, two baby seagulls ❷ put their heads ❸ out of the nest. Amir smiled. He knew that he and his friends together ❹ could make a change ❺.

❶ تذكر ❷ صغار طائر النورس ❸ رؤوس

❹ معًا ❺ يحدثوا تغيير

Questions with their model answers

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. People are using too much plastic. ( )
2. Too much plastic is harming the birds. ( )
3. Amir didn't want to take action. ( )
4. Amir sent messages to his friends. ( )
5. Amir's grandma volunteered to help. ( )
6. We can't use biodegradable bags. ( )
7. The water is important for all of us. ( )
8. One baby seagull put its head out of the nest. ( )
9. Amir and his friends could make a change. ( )
10. Amir and his friends couldn't make a change. ( )
11. Waleed, Anissa, Dalia and Amir met at Amir's house to talk about their plan. SB ( )
12. Mariam is one of Dalia's cousins. SB ( )
13. Waleed's dad was sad because he liked to use plastic bags at his store. SB ( )
14. Amir's grandma used some old pieces of cotton cloth to make biodegradable shopping bags. SB ( )
15. Grandma thought that Amir should do something. AB ( )
16. Amir decided to organize a recycling project. AB ( )
17. Amir's friends didn't want to help him with his plan. AB ( )
18. Amany and Waleed's father wanted to help. AB ( )
19. Dalia took pictures of seagulls and sent them to her friends. AB ( )
20. The seagull had two babies. AB ( )
21. Amir thinks that people are using too much plastic in his village. AB ( )

22. Amir can't find out what happens to the plastic waste in Egypt. AB ( )

23. Waleed's father decides to stop using biodegradable bags. AB ( )

24. Dalia doesn't know how to help Amir. AB ( )

2 Choose the correct answer:

1. Grandma saw how Amir was (sleeping - feeling - laughing - asking).
2. Using too much plastic is (harming - helping - improving - developing) the birds.
3. Amir wanted to take (money - action - photo - message).
4. Amir took (roofs - things - notes - bags) on his tablet.
5. Grandma volunteered to (swim - sleep - help - go).
6. The (bag - garbage - litter - water) is important for all of us.
7. We will be (sad - happy - tired - angry) to help in our village.
8. Amir went onto his grandma's (roof - room - house - garden) to get her laundry.
9. Amir and his friends could make a (trip - nothing - coffee - change).
10. Amir saw the seagull in her (nest - bed - leg - head).

Answers

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1- T	2- T	3- F	4- T	5- T	6- F	7- T	8- F
9- T	10- F	11- T	12- T	13- F	14- T	15- T	16- F
17- F	18- F	19- F	20- T	21- T	22- F	23- F	24- F

2 Choose the correct answer:

1- feeling	2- harming	3- action	4- notes	5- help
6- water	7- happy	8- roof	9- change	10- nest



Listening Scripts



Test 1

We help to protect our environment. There are kinds of energy we can use which are renewable. They don't run out. We can get renewable energy from natural resources such as the wind, the sun, water, and heat inside the Earth. These kinds of energy don't make pollution, and, on the long run, they are better.

Question 1



Test 1

There aren't many houses or buildings in the rural environment, so this place often has more animals and plants. Not many people live here, so it is sparsely populated. It is a quiet place to live. The urban environment is densely populated. Most people in the world live in this kind of environment. There are lots of buildings, and there can be a lot of traffic, too.

Question 2



Test 2

Near Aswan, you can see the temples of Abu Simble. Outside the temples, there are some very big statues of Ramses II and his wife Nefertari. Twice a year, people celebrate the Abu Simble Sun Festival there, on February 22nd. On these days, light from the sun at sunrise shines all the way inside the main temple, to the room inside. There are four statues inside the temple.

Question 1



Test 2

A traditional Egyptian meal is served with people sitting together around a table. A typical meal has rice, a kind of vegetable stew, soup, stuffed vegetables, and meat or chicken. Egyptians are very generous and are very happy when you ask for more food. This means you enjoyed their delicious meal!

Question 2



Test 3

Luxor is full of different monuments from ancient Egypt. Many tourists visit Luxor from a Nile River cruise. They can see the Temple of Karnak and the Valley of the Kings. Ancient Egyptians buried their kings and queens here for thousands of years. You can see lots of paintings and engravings in the temples. There are lots of other amazing things to see in Egypt.

Question 1



Test 3

Agriculture is an important part of Egypt's heritage, too. The Nile used to flood every year, making the soil more fertile. This is why ancient Egyptians could farm the land and it led to a growth in civilization. There were three seasons of farming in ancient Egypt, which were all connected to the Nile.

Question 2



Test 4

An email is a digital form of a letter. We send these electronic messages to people using electronic devices. You must have an email account to send these kinds of messages. An instant message (or IM) is a message that you can send on a social media platform. It is a private message so no one else can see it except the person you send it to.

Question 1



Test 4

As a fourth-grade student, I like to write short stories and reports about things that I think are interesting. I write for my projects and for fun. I don't have time to write in the morning, but I do have time to write after school. Some of my friends are also interested in writing after school. So, that's why I think that an after-school club is a perfect idea.

Question 2



Test 5

I love my city but every morning we have to sit in a traffic jam on my way to school. The cars and buses stop, and we can't move. The trip to school sometimes takes us an hour! The traffic lights are often red and that makes the traffic even worse. We leave home very early so I can make it to school on time. I can't make the trip on foot because my school is too far to walk to.

Question 1



The problem with transportation that uses gasoline is that it burns fossil fuels, and these are bad for the environment . So today, people are developing cleaner forms of transportation like electric cars. There are even electric buses that use some solar energy from solar panels on their roofs. Engineers are designing greener airplanes and ships, too.

Question 2



Test 6

Climate change affects everyone living on our planet, so we need to try to slow it by working together. Nations are now making plans to work on this problem.
We can recycle paper, plastic, and glass at home, but what can nations do? Last week, leaders from every country in the world met for the United Nations Climate Change Conference. They talked about what they can do, but this was not the first time they met. In fact, it was their 26th meeting.





Drought happens where there is not enough rain for a long time. When this happens, rivers and lakes become dry. Farmers cannot grow food and nature is in danger. When people do not have all the water that they need, we say that there is a water shortage.

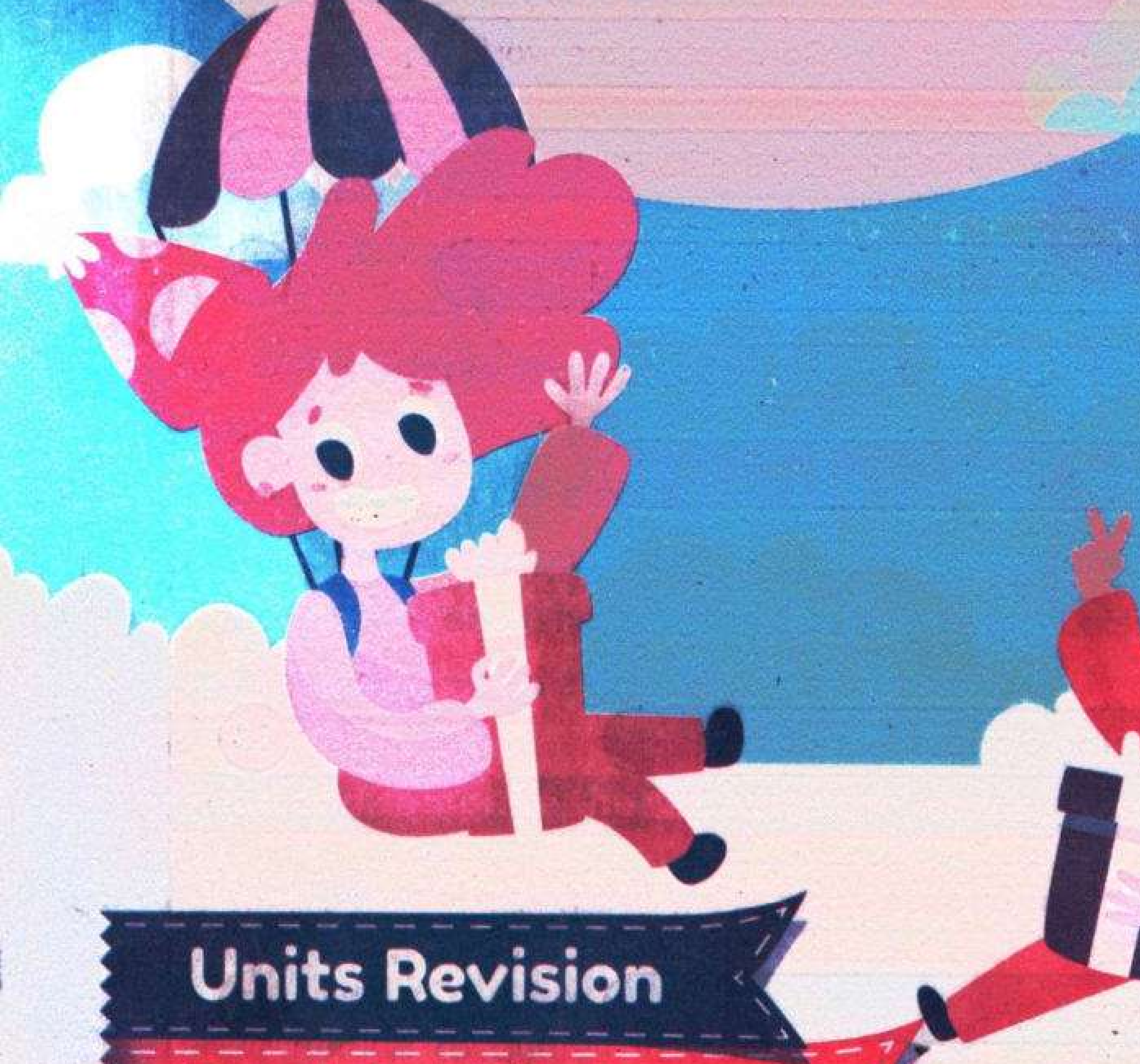
Question 2

Step Ahead Series

Together to a bright future

Connect Plus 4

Second Term



Units Revision

Revision Tests

Answer Key

Contents



Revision on Unit 7

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

sparsely - densely - rural - animals

I live in a village in the ❶ .... environment. There aren't many houses or buildings here, so this place often has more ❷ .... and plants. Not many people live here, so it is ❸ .... populated. It can have lots of different kinds of weather, but it's a quiet place to live.

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

fuels - cleaner - reduce - transportation

Today, we know more about pollution than we used to, and we know how important it is to ❶ .... it. Scientists are finding new ways to travel and to use fuels. We can also change the things we do - for example, we can walk, cycle or use public ❷ .... instead of using cars. We also need to think about how we can use less plastic. Lots of people are trying to make our world a ❸ .... place!

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

solar - tidal - desert - electricity

There are many types of environments on Earth, and we can use different natural resources in different places. For example, a hot ❶ .... is a good place to get ❷ .... energy from the sun, and there are large farms with lots of solar panels that can make clean ❸ ....

4 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

location - generate - dam - electricity

The High Dam was finished in 1971. It uses water from the River Nile to ❶ .... electricity. The ❷ .... of Aswan made this a good place to build the dam, because it could stop the River Nile from flooding. The ❸ .... has twelve large turbines inside. It generates more than 10 billion kilowatt hours of electricity a year!

5 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

Antarctic - sunny - trees - windy

I watched a TV program about the polar environment. There are two of these environments in the world: the Arctic and the ❶ .... It is cold and ❷ .... there, with a lot of ice. Some animals have found ways to live there, but there aren't any ❸ .... or flowers.

6 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

atmosphere - polluted - emissions - climate

Trees and forests are very important in protecting our planet. Some of the things that people do make carbon dioxide ❶ .... This causes air pollution and ❷ ....change. But forests can absorb carbon dioxide. Forests absorb about 2.6 billion tonnes of carbon dioxide every year. That means they take it out of the ❸ .... and make the air cleaner!

7 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

Chemicals - podcast - air pollution - plastic pollution

Presenter : Hello, and welcome to our Clean World ❶ ....

Salwa : It's a great pleasure to be with you today.

Presenter : What causes ❷ ....?

Salwa : Driving cars and trucks and burning fuels which cause carbon dioxide emissions.

Presenter : And what causes water pollution?

Salwa : ❸ .... from factories or farms go into rivers or the sea and cause water pollution.

Presenter : Do you think we can succeed in stopping pollution?

Salwa : I think we should do what we can to stop it.

8 Choose the correct answer: Vocabulary

1. It's hard for people and animals to survive in a (coastal - mountainous - rainforest) environment.
2. There are always more animals than people in a (rural - urban - city) environment.
3. There are lots of trees, plants, flowers, and animals in a (polar - desert - rainforest) environment.
4. The (rural - urban - mountainous) environment is noisy and has a lot of traffic.
5. The (desert - coastal - polar) environment has very little water.
6. The (polar - rural - mountainous) environment is the Arctic and Antarctic.
7. The (desert - urban - coastal) environment has beaches, swamps and forests.
8. The polar environment is (sparsely populated - densely populated - full).
9. (Water pollution - Air pollution - Climate change) is when water is dirty because of chemicals or plastic.
10. (Emissions - Carbon dioxide - Fuel) is something we burn to make heat or power.
11. (Climate change - Air pollution - Water pollution) is when the air is dirty; this can make people or animals sick.
12. (Fuel - Carbon dioxide - Emissions) is a gas in the atmosphere known as CO_2.

13. (Air pollution - Water pollution - Climate change) is when the weather and temperature change over a long period of time.
14. (Carbon dioxide - Emissions - Fuel) are made by factories, cars and lorries; they can cause air pollution.
15. We can get (hydroelectricity - solar energy - wind energy) from moving water.
16. We can get water from (summer - fall - springs).
17. It's very hot inside (rivers - volcanoes - dams).
18. When we burn (renewable - non-renewable - geothermal) fuels, carbon dioxide goes out into the atmosphere.
19. (Coal - Non-renewable energy - Renewable energy) from natural resources is better for the environment and it won't run out.
20. Some countries have a lot of coastal environments and they can create (solar energy - wind energy - tidal energy).
21. We can create (wind energy - solar energy - geothermal energy) from the sun.
22. We can create wind power from (solar panels - water turbines - wind turbines).
23. You should turn (of - on - off) lights to save electricity.
24. Five hundred and five hundred is one (billion - million - thousand).

GRAMMAR REVISION

9 Choose the correct answer:

1. It (am - is - are) raining heavily now.
2. Dad (am - is - are) traveling to Aswan today.
3. We (am - is - are) doing our homework.
4. She (am - is - are) making us a chocolate cake.
5. They (am - is - are) buying some sweets at the supermarket.
6. You (am - is - are) walking quickly. Slow down, please.
7. I (am - is - are) looking at the birds in the trees.
8. He (am - is - are) having a nice time in Luxor.
9. Mom is (heat - heats - heating) some water for cooking.

(10) We are (traveling - travel - travels) to El-Fayoum at the moment.

(11) Look! Some farmers are (burns - burning - burn) some dead plants.

(12) What (have - are - do) you doing?

(13) (Is - Will - Does) she washing the clothes?

(14) Are you (come - comes - coming) with us?

10 Order the words to make correct sentences:

① animals - the rainforest - Lots of - live - environment - in.
↳ ....

② swamps - environment - There are - coastal - the - in.
↳ ....

③ survive - The animals - clever - to - find - ways.
↳ ....

④ live - the - in - Most people - environment - urban.
↳ ....

⑤ to travel - environment - the mountainous - difficult - in - It's.
↳ ....

⑥ I - do - What - to help - the environment - can?
↳ .... ?

⑦ are - pollution - helping - They - stop - to.
↳ ....

⑧ resources - from natural - get - We - energy - renewable.
↳ ....

⑨ tidal energy - We - water - moving - get - from.
↳ ....

⑩ move - turbines - water - The wind - make - or.
↳ ....

⑪ hot - the - It's - under - ground - very.
↳ ....

⑫ non-renewable - fuels - Why - fossil - are?
↳ ....

⑬ turbines - moves - comes - Steam - up - and.
↳ ....

⑭ electricity - renewable - Its - sources - from - comes.
↳ ....

⑮ dioxide - carbon - absorb - can - Forests.
↳ ....

⑯ are - in protecting - our - Trees - planet - important.
↳ ....



امتحان الكتاب الأساسي بعد تعديله طِبقًا للمواصفات الجديدة
Unit (7) Test (1)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:





(4Ms)

نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (82) آخر الكتاب.

① There aren't many houses or buildings in the (urban - city - rural - town) environment.

② The rural environment is a (noisy - quiet - loud - terrible) place to live.

③ There can be a lot of traffic in the (polar - desert - rural - urban) environment.

④ The urban environment is (densely populated - sparsely populated - empty - silent).

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box: (3Ms)

electricity - turbines - springs - steam

Iceland is a cold country, but it has more than 600 hot ❶ .... and 200 volcanoes. There is a lot of hot water underground, and this is used to heat homes and to make electricity. When water gets hot, it makes ❷ .... Engineers in Iceland can make holes down to the hot water underground. Then steam comes up and it moves ❸ .... to make electricity.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below: (5Ms)

There are two of the polar environments in the world: the Arctic and the Antarctic. It is cold and windy in this environment, with a lot of ice. Some animals have found ways to live there, but there aren't any trees or flowers. There aren't many houses or buildings in the rural environment, so that place often has more animals and plants. Not many people live there, so it is sparsely populated. It can have lots of different kinds of weather, but it's a quiet place to live.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. The Arctic and the Antarctic are examples of the (rural - polar - coastal - urban) environment.
2. There aren't any (animals - trees - people - ice) in the polar environment.
3. Some (animals - trees - flowers - plants) have found ways to live in the polar environment.

B Answer these questions:

4. How many people live in the polar environment? ....
5. What is the weather like in the polar environment? ....

The Reader (Shipwrecks)

4 A Read and write T (True) or F (False): (4Ms)

1. Archaeologists were working at a site under the Red Sea. (   )
2. Thônis - Heracleion was a very old city. (   )

B Choose the correct answer:

3. The Red Sea can be dangerous because there are strong (ships - currents - shells - bricks) in it.
4. When ships have been under water for a long time, they can become artificial (storms - reefs - boats - tsunamis).

5 Choose the correct answer: (5Ms)

1. Listen, they (talk - talks - are talking - talked) about different environments.
2. Manar (am - is - are - were) coming with us.
3. What's Mom (cook - cooked - cooks - cooking)?

4) We are (helping - helped - help - helps) our environment to be a better place.

5) (Are - Is - Will - Does) he doing his homework?

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

1) does - trees - Why - a lot of - plant - Egypt?

....?

2) important - plastic - is - recycle - It - to.

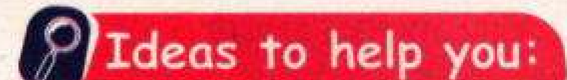
....

3) tidal energy - We - from - water - moving - get.

....

7 Write a paragraph of (40) words using the following guiding element: (6Ms)

"Energy"



Ideas to help you:

- renewable energy
- non-renewable energy

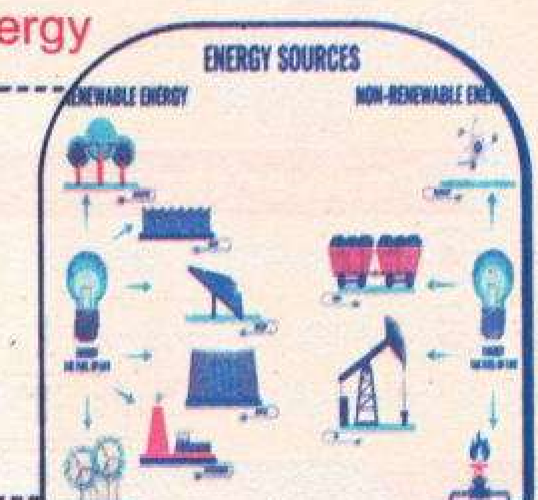
....

....

....

....

....



امتحان ملحق الكتاب



Total 30

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: (4Ms)





نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (82) آخر الكتاب.

1) People have used (oil - solar energy - hydroelectricity - gas) for a very long time.

2) Hydroelectricity means using the energy from (walking - moving - jumping - noisy) water.

3) The Ancient Egyptians used hydroelectricity to turn the (wheels - waterwheels - bikes - carts).

4) We can use hydroelectricity to generate (waterwheels - farming - machines - electricity).



2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box: (3Ms)

water - flooding - generate - turbines

The High Dam was finished in 1971. It uses water from the River Nile to ❶ .... electricity. The location of Aswan made this a good place to build the dam, because it could stop the River Nile from ❷ .... The dam has twelve large ❸ .... inside. It generates more than 10 billion kilowatt hours of electricity a year!

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below: (5Ms)

Fossil fuels are things like coal, gas and oil. These are burned in factories or used to make homes and buildings warm. However, they are non-renewable: when they run out, we can't find or make more of them. Fossil fuels are made from the remains of very old plants and animals that lived on Earth a long time ago. When we burn them, a lot of carbon dioxide is released into the atmosphere.

A Choose the correct answer:

① Fossil fuels are (renewable - non-renewable - continuous - solar).
② Fossil fuels will (continue - store - last - run out).
③ Fossil fuels are things like (fire - solar energy - coal - sunshine).

B Answer these questions:

④ What are fossil fuels made from?
➯ ....

⑤ What happens when we burn fossil fuels?
➯ ....

The Reader (Shipwrecks)

4 A Read and write T (True) or F (False): (4Ms)

① In the past, people came to Thônis - Heracleion to farm the land ( )
② During the earthquake, bricks fell onto the ship and made it sink. ( )

B Choose the correct answer:

3. The wooden ship was over (twenty two - two hundred - two thousand - two thousand and two hundred) years old.
4. Thônis - Heracleion was the largest (station - port - mall - market) in Egypt before Alexandria.

5 Choose the correct answer: (5Ms)

1. We (am - is - are - was) helping at home.
2. What (happened - is happening - happen - happens) at the moment?
3. Listen! The birds are (sing - sings - singing - sung).
4. (Are - Have - Do - Does) they writing their lessons?
5. She (wash - washing - is washing - are washing) her clothes.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

1. trees - plant - How - Egypt - many - will?
   ....?
2. and oil - gas - are - fuels - Coal, - fossil.
   ....
3. survive - The animals - clever - to - find - ways.
   ....

7 Write an email of (40) words to your friend Kareem: (6Ms)

Tell him about your favorite environment. Why do you prefer it? What can you see in this environment? Your email address is amr@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is kareem@school.net.

From:
To:
Subject:
....
....
....
....
....

Revision on Unit 8

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

spring – sunrise – celebrating – sunset

I love ❶ .... Sham El-Nessim with my family. The festival is for the start of ❷ .... and it is very old. The weather at Sham El-Nessim is usually sunny and warm. I always wake up at ❸ .... to get ready. Lots of people go with their family to meet friends in parks, gardens or beaches.

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

sights – Pyramids – Nile – Temple

Egypt is a fantastic country to visit! There is so much to see, such as the ❶ .... of Giza, the old Luxor Temple, the Red Sea, and of course the River ❷ .... In all parts of the country, you can see amazing ❸ ...., eat delicious food, and meet friendly people.

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

spices – cooked – beef – looked

I like eating hawawshi. It's very delicious. It is made with bread and ❶ .... or lamb. The meat is ❷ .... with onion, herbs, and ❸ .... The bread is pressed together around the meat and cooked. I sometimes eat it with salad.

4 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

lantern – traditional – decorate – festival

Sham El-Nessim is a ❶ .... for the start of spring and it is very old. Before the day of the festival, we spend time preparing lots of different ❷ .... food, often until sunset! We also boil eggs, then paint and ❸ .... them in different colors to make them look beautiful.

5 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

famous – traditions – host – guests

Egypt is a great country to visit. Visitors often like to learn about Egyptian ❶ .... Egyptian people are famous for welcoming visitors with food and drink, and for inviting ❷ .... to their home. If you are invited to an Egyptian family's home, it's a good idea to bring a present, for example chocolates or sweets. However, the ❸ .... usually doesn't open the present at the time when they get it.

6 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

leather – linen – sandals – sleeve

Presenter : Hello, and welcome to our Radio Show.

Dr Samir : Hello!

Presenter : What did ancient Egyptians wear on their feet?

Dr Samir : They wore ❶ ....

Presenter : What were these sandals made from?

Dr Samir : They were made from ❷ ....

Presenter : What other things did people wear at that time?

Dr Samir : They wore loose white ❸ ....

7 Choose the correct answer: Vocabulary

1. Farmers go to work at (sunrise - sunset - evening) and go home in the afternoon.
2. Children love to ride at the (library - school - fairground) during Sham El-Nessim.
3. People (sell - sacrifice - feed) a sheep at Eid Al-Adha.
4. During festivals, people (decorate - celebrate - create) with their friends and family.
5. Sham El-Nessim is a happy (festival - new year - prayer).
6. (Morning - Sunset - Sunrise) is soon. It's getting dark.
7. During Eid Al-Adha, people go to the mosque for (decorating - prayers - pilgrimage).
8. We are (grateful - careful - useful) that we are healthy.
9. (Sunrise - Lanterns - Rides) are pretty and bright in the night time!
10. Eid Al-Fitr is an important (fairground - pilgrimage - feastival) for Muslims.
11. Muslims go to the Hajj (festival - feast - pilgrimage) in Zu Elhijja.
12. Egyptians are good (guests - hosts - visitors). They give their visitors lots of foods and drinks.
13. This (recipe - dish - meal) shows you how to make sayadeya.
14. Fatta is dad's favorite (bread - dish - plate).
15. We eat three (plates - recipes - meals) every day.
16. The temples of Abu Simble are amazing (cities - dishes - sights) in Egypt.
17. My grandpa is very (generous - old - poor). He gives us money every day to buy sweets.
18. (Teachers - Hosts - Guests) come to our house when we have a party.
19. They (invent - invite - interview) lots of people when they have a party.
20. Giza is famous (of - for - from) the Pyramids and the Sphinx.

GRAMMAR REVISION

8 Choose the correct answer:

1. This is a/an (quickly - easy - easily) game.
2. I can play this game (easily - easy - quick).
3. He (live - lives - is living) in Port Said.

4. We (go - are going - goes) to our grandma's house every weekend.
5. Grandma often (make - is making - makes) us cakes and delicious food.
6. Grandpa always (is giving - give - gives) some of his money to the poor.
7. She (isn't - doesn't - don't) like fatta.
8. We (aren't - don't - doesn't) go shopping on Sunday.
9. Nada doesn't (play - plays - playing) computer games. She prefers doing sports.
10. What does Ehab (wear - wears - wearing) for school?
11. (Do - Does - Is) he help at home?
12. (Are - Does - Do) you like painting?
13. My grandpa often (wear - wears - doesn't wear) galabeya.
14. Today we (talk - talks - are talking) to the head teacher.
15. He (celebrate - is celebrating - celebrates) his birthday on the first of April every year.
16. What does he (eat – eats – eating) for breakfast?
17. Look! She (celebrate – celebrates – is celebrating) Eid Al-Fitr with her family.
18. At the moment, Adam (is helping – help – helps) his mom make ful medames.
19. They often (eat – eats – are eating) chicken and rice.
20. Today they (make – are making – makes) a vegetarian recipe.

9 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. of – spring – the start – is – The festival – for.
   ↳ ....
2. ancient – Sham El-Nessim – The – celebrated – Egyptians.
   ↳ ....
3. is – sunny – The weather – warm – usually – and.
   ↳ ....
4. up – at – sunrise – wake – always – I.
   ↳ ....

5. eat – We – games – play – and – nice food.
↳ ....

6. fairgrounds – are – children – There – for – with rides.
↳ ....

7. lasts – days – four – for – Eid Al-Adha.
↳ ....

8. give out – to – family – We – our – meat.
↳ ....

9. to – for prayers – mosque – go – the – We.
↳ ....

10. do – lanterns – make – Why – for Ramadan – people?
↳ .... ?

11. you – How – Eid Al-Adha – do – celebrate?
↳ .... ?

12. recipes – her – get – does – How – Grandma?
↳ .... ?

13. make – recipes – Can – these – all – you?
↳ .... ?

14. dish – This – meat – any – has – never.
↳ ....

15. layers – and – has – bread – of rice – Fatta.
↳ ....

16. use – Which – any – doesn't – meat – dish?
↳ .... ?

17. Egyptians – wear – ancient – did – white clothes – Why?
↳ .... ?

18. can – You – in Egypt – see – sights – amazing.
↳ ....

19. today – wearing – **What** – you – are?

➯ .... ?

20. you – sports – **What** – wear – for – do?

➯ .... ?

21. people – famous for – inviting – are – **Egyptian** – guests.

➯ ....

22. kahk – **People** – bake – called – cookies – special.

➯ ....

23. sailors – other – many – with – traveled – **The man.**

➯ ....

24. a journey – the King – **I** – on – went – for.

➯ ....

25. island – **How** – this – get to – you – did?

➯ .... ?

10 Write an email of (40) words to your friend Walaa:

▶ Tell her about your trip to Luxor and Aswan last week. How did you go there? What places did you visit there? Did you enjoy you time or not? Your email address is amira@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is walaa@gmail.com.

From:

To:

Subject:

....

....

....

....

....

امتحان الكتاب الأساسي بعد تعديله طبقًا للمواصفات الجديدة

Unit (8) Test (2)





1 Listen and choose the correct answer: (4Ms)




نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (82) آخر الكتاب.

1. You can see the temples of Abu Simble near (Sohag - Giza - Cairo - Aswan).
2. People celebrate the Abu Simble Sun Festival (once - twice - three times - four times) a year.
3. There are (four - five - six - seven) statues inside the temple.
7. People celebrate the Abu Simble Sun Festival there, on (January - February - March - April) 22nd.

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box: (3Ms)

dish - share - delicious - recipes

Aya : You have lots of different meals in your book, Grandma!

Grandma : Yes, I do. I often ❶ .... recipes with family and friends.

Aya : Can you make all of these ❷ .... ?

Grandma : Yes, I can. And I can easily show you, too!

Aya : Hmm, that's difficult. There are so many recipes to choose from.

Grandma : Don't worry. It will be easy. What would you like to make?

Aya : I like to try new things. These look ❸ .... !

Grandma : OK! Let's start now.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below: (5Ms)

Eid Al-Adha usually lasts for four days, and it is a very important Islamic festival. It celebrates the time when Ibrahim (peace be upon him) listened to God in a dream. At Eid Al-Adha, many people sacrifice a sheep and eat some of its meat in a traditional dish called fatta. We give out meat to our family and friends. We wear our best clothes for the celebrations and we visit our family and friends.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Eid Al-Adha usually lasts for (three - four - five - six) days.
2. At Eid Al-Adha, many people sacrifice a (bird - horse - hen - sheep).
3. At Eid Al-Adha, we give out (fatta - meat - kahk - cookies) to our family and friends.

B Answer these questions:

4. What do people eat at Eid Al-Adha?
   ....
5. What do people wear at Eid Al-Adha?
   ....

The Reader (Shipwrecks)

4 A Read and write T (True) or F (False): (4Ms)

1. A volcano destroyed the temple of Amun. ( )
2. The ship is the biggest and most exciting thing that the divers found. ( )

B Choose the correct answer:

3. The ship was waiting in the (street - port - airport - station) next to the temple of Amun.
4. Lots of ships use the (Dead - Mediterranean - Red - Caribbean) Sea.

5 Choose the correct answer: (5Ms)

1. Men and women often (are wearing - wear - wears - doesn't wear) galabeya.
2. Today, I (talk - talks - doesn't talk - am talking) to Dr Samir.
3. She (celebrate - don't celebrate - is celebrating - celebrates) her wedding day on the fourth of July every year.
4. What does he (eat - eats - ate - eating) for lunch?
5. I can write the paragraph (easily - easy - quick - careful).

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

1. often - jewelry - Ancient - beautiful - wore - Egyptians.
   ....

② now, - What - Heba - doing - you - are?

.... ?

③ up – at – sunrise – I – wake – always.

....

7 Write an email of (40) words to your British friend Tom: (6Ms)

Tell him about Eid Al-Adha in Egypt. What does it celebrate? When does it happen? What do people do at Eid Al-Adha? How do you celebrate Eid Al- Adha with your family? Your email address is ahmed@hotmail.com. Your friend's email address is tom@yahoo.com.

From:

To:

Subject:

....

....

....

....

....

امتحان ملحق الكتاب Unit 8 Test 2

Total 30

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (82) آخر الكتاب.

① Visitors often like to learn about Egyptian (foods - people - sights - traditions).

② Egyptian people are (generous - famous - useful - careful) for welcoming visitors.

③ If you are invited to an Egyptian family's home, it's a good idea to bring a (present - dish - meal - bag).

④ The (visitor - guest - host - tourist) usually doesn't open the present at the time when they get it.

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box: (3Ms)

sights – generous – Pyramids – visitors

Tamer : Welcome to Egypt
Tourist : Thank you.
Tamer : What places did you visit in Egypt?
Tourist : I visited the ❶ .... of Giza.
Tamer : Do you like Egypt?
Tourist : Yes, it has lots of amazing ❷ ....
Tamer : Do you like the Egyptian people?
Tourist : Yes, they are ❸ ....

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below: (5Ms)

I love celebrating Sham El-Nessim with my family. The festival is for the start of spring and it is very old. The ancient Egyptians also celebrated it as a festival of creation and new life. Sham El-Nessim is always on the same day as Coptic Easter Monday. Because it is the start of spring, the weather at Sham El-Nessim is usually sunny and warm.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. I love celebrating Sham El-Nessim with my (friends - family - teachers - neighbors).
2. Sham El-Nessim is for the start of (winter - summer - fall - spring).
3. Sham El-Nessim is always on the same day as Coptic Easter (Friday - Saturday - Sunday - Monday).

B Answer these questions:

4. Why did the ancient Egyptians celebrate Sham El-Nessim?
   ....
5. How is the weather like at Sham El-Nessim?
   ....

The Reader (Shipwrecks)

4 A Read and write T (True) or F (False): (4Ms)

1. When archaeologists explored the city, they found lots of statues. (   )

② The wooden ship looks like the ships that sailed along the Nile. ( )

B Choose the correct answer:

③ Earthquakes and tsunamis are natural (**ships** - **ports** - **disasters** - **statues**).

④ When the ships hit the reefs, they (**help** - **find** - **sink** - **discover**).

5 Choose the correct answer: (5Ms)

① He (**never** - **often** - **sometimes** - **always**) eats pizza. He doesn't like it.

② We (**visited** - **visits** - **visit** - **visiting**) our grandparents every Saturday.

③ People who live near the coast (**often make** - **make often** - **often makes** - **makes often**) sayadeya.

④ (**Do** - **Does** - **Is** - **Are**) Ali wear sandals?

⑤ She draws pictures (**quick** - **careful** - **good** - **well**).

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

① on – do – **What** – special days – wear – you?

....?

② in Egypt – people - **You** – meet – can – friendly.

....

③ island - you - **How** - this - did - get to?

....?

7 Write a paragraph of (40) words using the following guiding element: (6Ms)

"Eid Al-Adha"

Ideas to help you:

(Islamic festival - Hajj pilgrimage - sacrifice - go to the mosque - visit family and friends - presents)

....

....

....

....

....

Revision on Unit 9

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

museums – schools – civilization – historical

Archaeologists have learned lots of interesting things about the ❶ .... of ancient Egypt by exploring ❷ .... sites at places like Abu Simbel, Luxor, and Giza. I'm very interested in Egypt's heritage and I enjoy learning about it. I visit ❸ .... with my parents to learn about the things people did in the past. I'm very proud of my heritage.

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

Teachers – Archaeologists – Sphinx – carved

When people think about Egypt, they sometimes think of the Pyramids and the ❶ .... at Giza. They are famous all over the world. ❷ .... think that the ancient Egyptians built the Sphinx to protect the Pyramids. They ❸ .... it from one huge piece of stone.

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

fertile – heritage – flood – grow

Agriculture is an important part of Egypt's ❶ .... The Nile used to ❷ .... every year, making the soil more ❸ .... This is why ancient Egyptians could farm the land and it led to a growth in civilization.

4 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

Valley – gold – tall – mask

The Grand Egyptian Museum has more than 5,000 items that belonged to the Pharoah Tutankhamun. The most important one of them is Tutankhamun's ❶ .... It's made of ❷ .... It's over 3,000 years old. It's 54 cm tall. It came from the ❸ .... of the Kings.

5 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

Library – theatre – village – capital

Tourist : Can you tell me some information about Alexandria, please?

Tour guide: Sure. Alexandria used to be the ❶ .... city of Egypt.

Tourist : What can I see in it?

Tour guide: You can see the Roman ❷ ...., the old town and Qaitbay Citadel.

Tourist : Can I read books there?

Tour guide: Of course. You can visit the ❸ .... of Alexandria, which is famous all over the world.

Tourist : Thanks.

Tour guide: You're welcome.

6 Choose the correct answer: Vocabulary

1. A country's heritage comes from its history and its (traditions - archeologists - historians).
2. During the (harvesting - growing - flooding) season, farmers cut and stored their crops.
3. Temples and (tourists - calendars - monuments) are an important part of Egyptian heritage.

4. People in ancient Egypt (stored - developed - explored) agriculture and some of the first calendars.
5. (Heritage - Temple - Statue) includes art, buildings, food, music, and dancing from the past.
6. Sites at Giza, Luxor, and Abu Simbel are important Egyptian (geographical - historical - traditional) sites.
7. You can learn about how people lived in the past by visiting (museums - exhibitions - fields).
8. The ancient Egyptians were one of the first (historians - archeologists - civilizations) to develop a system of writing.
9. The ancient Egyptians dug canals to carry water from the river to the (Nile - temples - fields).
10. During the (flooding - harvesting - growing) season, farmers planted their crops.
11. Every year, the Nile (connected - planted - flooded) and filled fields with a lot of water.
12. After the flood water went away, the soil was (poor - fertile - stored) and good for farming.
13. Ancient Egyptians made pottery vases from (wood - metal - clay).
14. During the (growing - flooding - harvesting) season, the fields were full of water.
15. They were working on an ancient (painting - tool - site) when she found a beautiful statue.
16. Ancient Egyptians sometimes (developed - carved - dug) statues from a single block of stone.
17. I was in an Egyptian tomb when we saw some (engravings - photos - sites) on the wall.
18. The Egyptian museum is full of ancient Egyptian (board games - tombs - artifacts).
19. Ancient Egyptian farmers used (tools - pots - masks) for farming the land.
20. People made (masks - vases - counters) from pottery to hold water or food.

GRAMMAR REVISION

7 Choose the correct answer:

1. Ancient Egyptians (used - use - are using) lots of pottery.
2. In ancient Egypt, people (wear - are wearing - wore) sandals and loose clothes.
3. Queen Nefertari sometimes (played - plays - is playing) a board game called senet.
4. Archaeologists (finds - found - find) Pharaoh Khufu's solar boat in Giza.
5. The ancient Egyptians (were bury - buried - bury) their pharaohs in the Valley of the Kings.
6. In the past, the Nile River (floods - was flood - flooded) during the flooding season.
7. The ancient Egyptians (make - are making - made) pots to hold food, water, and oil.
8. I (doesn't - haven't - didn't) play football yesterday.
9. What did he (do - does - did) last weekend?
10. She didn't (went - going - go) to the party last night.
11. (Are - Did - Does) Hossam help his dad yesterday?
12. Did he (buy - buys - bought) a new bike last Monday?
13. I didn't (see - saw - sees) Miss Mona yesterday.
14. Tamer (was - were - am) walking to school.
15. We (was - were - is) playing in the garden last Friday.
16. What (are - was - were) you doing at two yesterday?
17. She (are - was - were) making her bed.
18. I (am - were - was) eating a chocolate cake last night.
19. They (is - was - were) watching TV an hour ago.
20. The archaeologists (dug - was digging - were digging) when they found an old box.
21. I (had - was having - were having) dinner when dad came back home.
22. When the teacher stopped us, we (are writing - wrote - were writing).

8 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. their – have – heritage – countries – own – All.
   ↳ ....
2. Egyptians – and – amazing temples – Ancient – monuments – built.
   ↳ ....
3. to – every year – used – Nile – The – flood.
   ↳ ....
4. would – visit – you – to – like – What?
   ↳ .... ?
5. an important – heritage – Agriculture – is – Egypt's – part of.
   ↳ ....
6. were – farming – seasons – There – of – three.
   ↳ ....
7. do – have – to – you – What – do?
   ↳ .... ?
8. lots – Farmers – different – of – planted – crops.
   ↳ ....
9. includes – past – from – Heritage – the – objects.
   ↳ ....
10. my – of – heritage – proud – very – I'm.
    ↳ ....
11. is – made – What – Sphinx – the – of?
    ↳ .... ?
12. cut – stored them – and – the – Farmers – crops.
    ↳ ....
13. traditions – from – Heritage – comes – and – history.
    ↳ ....
14. dad – game – a – me – made – My.
    ↳ ....
15. Egypt – Which places – agriculture – in – a lot of – have?
    ↳ .... ?
16. were – over – hill – The goats – a – walking away.
    ↳ ....
17. her mom – with – the museum – in – was – Sara.
    ↳ ....
18. were – artifacts – They – looking – Egyptian – at.
    ↳ ....
19. people – senet – play – to – Lots of – used.
    ↳ ....

20. design – We – to – have – museum – a new.
↳ ....
21. exhibitions – different – many – There – are.
↳ ....
22. tourists – Egypt – Lots of – year – every – visit.
↳ ....
23. of – Ancient – pottery – lots – used – Egyptians.
↳ ....
24. made – vases – clay – They – from – pottery.
↳ ....
25. used to – of – Alexandria – Egypt – be – the capital city.
↳ ....



امتحان الكتاب الأساسي بعد تعديله طِبقًا للمواصفات الجديدة
Unit (9) Test (3)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: (4Ms)




نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (83) آخر الكتاب.

1. Luxor is full of different (ships - museums - traditions - monuments) from ancient Egypt.
2. Many tourists visit Luxor from a Nile River (flight - cruise - picnic - walk).
3. Ancient Egyptians (buried - explored - designed - dug) their kings and queens in the Valley of Kings for thousands of years.
4. You can see lots of paintings and (drawings - photos - engravings - tombs) in the temples.

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box: (3Ms)

heritage - monuments - Archaeologists - civilizations

Lots of people visit Egypt every year because of the amazing archaeological sites. ❶ .... have found lots of amazing artifacts. Tourists want to see the large ❷ .... , pyramids, and temples. It is incredible to think that ancient Egyptians were building these amazing structures over 4,000 years ago, when ❸ ...., in other countries were much simpler.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below: (5Ms)

Archaeologists have learned lots of interesting things about the civilization of ancient Egypt by exploring historical sites at places like Abu Simbel, Luxor, and Giza. I'm very interested in Egypt's heritage and I enjoy learning about it. I visit museums to learn about the things people did in the past. For example, the ancient Egyptians were one of the first civilizations to develop a system of writing. I'm very proud of my heritage.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. I'm very interested in Egypt's (traditions - seasons - foods - heritage).
2. I visit (museums - temples - tombs - schools) to learn about the things people did in the past.
3. I'm very proud of my (heritage - archaeologists - cities - countries).

B Answer these questions:

4. How did archaeologists learn about the civilization of ancient Egypt?
   ....
5. What did the ancient Egyptians develop?
   ....

The Reader (Shipwrecks)

4 A Read and write T (True) or F (False): (4Ms)

1. The Red Sea allows ships to travel to Europe through the Suez Canal. ( )
2. You have to be good at surfing to visit a shipwreck. ( )

B Choose the correct answer:

3. There are storms, reefs, and strong currents in the Red Sea, which can make it (safe - nice - easy - dangerous). Sometimes ships hit the reefs and sink.
4. People come from all over the world to go wreck (swimming - diving - surfing - fishing) in the Red Sea.

5 Choose the correct answer: (5Ms)

1. They (decorate - decorates - decorated - was decorated) their house for yesterday's party.

2. Mom (was - were - is - are) making special cookies for the feast last night.
3. It was a hot day, so they were (drink - drank - drinks - drinking) some cold water.
4. The archaeologists (explored - are exploring - explore - were exploring) a site when they found amazing artifacts.
5. What did you (eat - ate - eaten - eats) for dinner yesterday?

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

1. see - can - You - engravings - the temples - in.
   ....
2. famous - the world - Which - over - is - all - library?
   .... ?
3. used to – of – Alexandria – Egypt – be – the capital city.
   ....

7 Write a paragraph of (40) words using the following guiding element: (6Ms)

"Tutankhamun's mask"

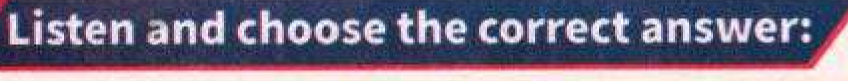
Ideas to help you:

- What is it? a gold mask
- How old is it? over 3,000 years old
- What is it made of? gold
- How big is it? 54 cm tall
- Where is it from? - The Valley of the Kings

....
....
....
....



امتحان ملحق الكتاب





Unit 9 Test 3

Total 30

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: (4Ms)



نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (83) آخر الكتاب.

1. (Historians - Tourists - Archaeologists - Teachers) have found lots of artifacts.
2. Ancient Egyptians used lots of (pottery - walls - stones - statues).

③ Ancient Egyptians made small (vases - masks - stones - pots) for oil or perfume.

④ Ancient Egyptians made pottery vases from (stones - clay - walls - colors).

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box: (3Ms)

Egypt - archaeologists - stone - languages

The Rosetta ❶ .... is a special object that helped people understand hieroglyphics. It had the same words in two other ❷ .... that people could read, so they used these to translate the hieroglyphics! This is one of the ways we have learned about life in ancient ❸ ....

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below: (5Ms)

Lots of people visit Egypt every year because of the amazing archaeological sites. Tourists want to see the large monuments, pyramids, and temples. It is incredible to think that ancient Egyptians were building these amazing structures over 4,000 years ago, when civilizations in other countries were much simpler.

A Choose the correct answer:

① It is incredible that ancient Egyptians were building amazing structures over (four - four hundred - four thousand - four million) years ago.

② Civilizations in other countries were much (bigger - older - larger - simpler).

③ (Tourists - Egyptians - Archaeologists - Inventors) want to see the large monuments.

B Answer these questions:

④ Why do people visit Egypt?

....

⑤ What do tourists want to see in Egypt?

....

The Reader (Shipwrecks)

4 A Read and write T (True) or F (False): (4Ms)

1. Amir can't check the washing machine. ( )
2. There was a sea below Amir. ( )

B Choose the correct answer:

3. Amir took the (bread - shopping - washing - clothes) out.
4. Amir took the laundry up to the (garden - Nile - roof - ground).

5 Choose the correct answer: (5Ms)

1. Farmers (grow - grew - grows - was growing) different crops in ancient Egypt.
2. Did she (watch - watches - watched - watching) TV yesterday?
3. They were (ride - rode - rides - riding) their bikes to the park.
4. We (was walking - were walking - walked - walk) down the street when the accident happened.
5. I (don't - doesn't - haven't - didn't) play football yesterday.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

1. very – I'm – heritage – Egypt's – in – interested.
   ....
2. do – Egypt – What – in – grow – farmers?
   .... ?
3. is - oldest - board - Senet - game - the world's.
   ....

7 Write a paragraph of (40) words using the following guiding element: (6Ms)

'Agriculture in ancient Egypt'

Ideas to help you:

(The Nile - soil - fertile - crops - store - flooding season - growing season - harvesting season)



....

....

....

....

Revision on Unit 10

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

account – digital – signal – messages

Today, we use technology like electronic devices to help us send messages. An email is a ❶ .... form of a letter. We send these electronic ❷ .... to people using electronic devices. You must have an email ❸ .... to send these kinds of messages.

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

TV – access – page – smartphones

A website is a home ❶ .... on the World Wide Web. Websites are usually about one topic. Users can ❷ .... websites from different electronic devices like ❸ ...., tablets, and laptops.

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

material – reliable – expert – vlogs

When you read blogs, watch ❶ ...., or take information from websites, it's very important to decide how ❷ .... the information is. First, look at the date of the ❸ .... You don't want to choose anything that is very old because the information may be different or even incorrect now.

4 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

presentation – information – blog – texts

A vlog is similar to a ❶ .... because it is a personal website where people post ❷ .... for others. The difference is that on a vlog, people post videos they make instead of written ❸ ....

5 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

public - signed - private - nasty

Younes posted his first video on social media account yesterday. The next morning, he ❶ .... into his account. There were some comments from people he didn't even know, and some of the comments were ❷ .... He felt really sad. His mom advised him to make his page ❸ ....

6 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

eat - breathe – clean – vacuum

We have smog free towers. These are like giant ❶ .... cleaners that take polluted air in, ❷ .... it, and then send it back out for us to ❸ .... These 7-meter towers can only clean air in a small area like a park.

7 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

simple – serious – fuels - factories

Presenter : Welcome to our show, Dr. Hegazy.

Dr Hegazy : Thank you for inviting me.

Presenter : How big is the problem of air pollution in Egypt today?

Dr Hegazy : Well, it is quite ❶ ...., especially in big cities.

Presenter : What causes outdoor air pollution?

Dr Hegazy : It is produced by our cars, ❷ .... and power plants.

Presenter : What else can cause air pollution?

Dr Hegazy : Dust from the desert and burning fossil ❸ ....

Unit 10

1 Choose the correct answer: Vocabulary

① If you like posting videos, you should start a/an (email - blog - vlog).

② You shouldn't write your story by hand. You should try to (make a video - touch type - make a podcast).

③ Magdy has to give a (presentation - website - device) about technology.

④ Tamer is using different (emails - websites - signals) to help him with his science project.

⑤ You can only send a/an (signal - vlog - email) if you have an account.

⑥ Youssef's dad helped him (sign in - set up - look for) a new account.

⑦ Gameela posts the things she writes about sports on her (presentation - blog - vlog).

⑧ My smartphone is an electronic (vlog - blog - device).

⑨ You can only send an email if you have a/an (website - account - vlog).

⑩ Nahla has a new (social media - presentation - device) account.

⑪ Nahla's account is (private - free - perfect) so only her friends and family can see it.

⑫ Mona's friends like her photos and they always write nice (vlogs - signals - comments) about them.

⑬ She (posted - typed - wrote) her first video on her account yesterday.

⑭ You should sit up (street - straight - striped) with your feet on the floor.

⑮ You shouldn't work too long without a (meal - money - break).

⑯ He took his pencil, notebook, and eraser out of his (bed - backpack - seat).

⑰ Adam's mom is a writer at the local (book - newspaper - library).

⑱ You can ask the school to (publish - touch type - write) your story in the school newspaper or online.

⑲ He (signs into - signs up - sets up) his account every day.

⑳ You can (sign up - set up - sign in) for a new account.



2 Choose the correct answer:

1. Everyone (can't - should - shouldn't) recycle their plastic bottles.
2. People (must - shouldn't - should) drop garbage.
3. We (should - shouldn't - mustn't) plant more trees. Then the streets would be cooler.
4. People (should - must - shouldn't) cut down trees.
5. You (can't - should - shouldn't) use a capital letter at the beginning of each sentence.
6. You (should - shouldn't - can't) choose a title for your story.
7. You (shouldn't - must - should) use handwriting if you want the school to publish your story in the newspaper.
8. You (should - shouldn't - can't) ask a friend to read your story before you publish it.
9. You (should - shouldn't - must) hide your writing. Share it with your friends!
10. He shouldn't (go - goes - going) to bed late.
11. Marwa should (eating - eats - eat) all her sandwiches.
12. I don't have any free time today, (or - and - but) I am free this weekend.
13. She doesn't like reading (but - or - and) writing.
14. I like poetry (and - but - or) fiction.
15. Do you do the recycling (on - in - at) the morning?
16. Do you like to eat fruit (but - or - and) vegetables?
17. Nations (الدول) are working together, (or - and - but) there are still a lot of environmental problems.
18. We study environmental science (at - on - in) the afternoon.

3 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. message – a private – message – instant – An – is.
   ➪ ....
2. is – page – A website – the internet – on – a home.
   ➪ ....

③ person – A – one – to – belongs – blog.

↳ ....

④ do – presentations – give – Why – people?

↳ .... ?

⑤ the school – publish it – You – ask – to – can.

↳ ....

⑥ means – you – What – do – of communication – use?

↳ .... ?

⑦ a blog – A – vlog – to – similar – is.

↳ ....

⑧ can – websites – access – How – people?

↳ .... ?

⑨ working – He – was – story – a new – on.

↳ ....

⑩ Adam – love – What – do – to – does?

↳ .... ?

⑪ his mom – to – notebook – his – handed – Adam.

↳ ....

⑫ want – Do – to read – my – you – new story?

↳ .... ?

⑬ type – to – how – learning – We're – at school.

↳ ....

⑭ Youssef's – does – him – How – help – mom?

↳ .... ?

⑮ mom – His – kitchen – the – in – was.

↳ ....

⑯ like – and – stories – I – to write – reports.

↳ ....

⑰ you – platforms – use – Do – media – any social?

↳ .... ?

امتحان الكتاب الأساسي بعد تعديله طِبقًا للمواصفات الجديدة

Unit (10) Test (4)

Total 30

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: (4Ms)





نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (83) آخر الكتاب.

1. We send emails using electronic (radios - TVs - devices - machines).
2. An instand message is a (public - general - private - secret) message.
3. The (email - presentation - letter - instant message) is a message that you can send on a social media platform.
4. You must have an email (internet - phone - account - laptop) to send an email.

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box: (3Ms)

publish - checklist - touch type - story

Adam : Hi, Mom. Do you want to read my new ❶ ....?

Mom : Of course I do, honey.

Adam : Here you are.

Mom : This is an incredible story, Adam. You should let more people read it.

Adam : How do I do that, Mom?

Mom : First you should ❷ .... it. Just remember to sit up straight and keep your feet on the floor. And take a break every 10 or 15 minutes. Then, you can ask the school to ❸ .... it in the school newspaper.

Adam : OK, Mom.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below: (5Ms)

A blog is a special kind of website. It usually belongs to one person who posts information there regularly for others to read. There are blogs about many different topics like sports or cooking.
A vlog is similar to a blog because it is a personal website where people post information for others. The difference is that on a vlog, people post videos they make instead of written texts.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. A blog belongs to (family - friends - all people - one person).
2. A vlog is a personal (website - email - World Wide Web - presentation).
3. A vlog is (different - similar - same - identical) to a blog.

B Answer these questions:

4. What's a blog? ....
5. What is the difference between a blog and a vlog? ....

The Reader (Amir takes action)

4 A Read and write T (True) or F (False): (4Ms)

1. Amir can't check the washing machine. (   )
2. There was a village below Amir. (   )

B Choose the correct answer:

3. Amir took the (bread - shopping - washing - clothes) out.
4. Amir took the (fish - grandma - laundry - village) up to the roof.

5 Choose the correct answer: (5Ms)

1. You (mustn't - can't - should - shouldn't) ask for help if you can't do something.
2. I'm very busy today, (so - or - and - but) I'm free tomorrow.
3. She shouldn't (speak - speaks - spoke - speaking) loudly on giving a presentation.
4. We don't want to go to Alexandria (or - and - but - so) Matrouh next summer.
5. You (should - shouldn't - must - can) have any spelling or grammar mistakes.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

1. pollution - problems - cause - What - air - does?
....
2. write - You - story - by hand - your - shouldn't?
.... ?

③ Youssef's – does – him – How – help – mom?

.... ?

7 Write an email of (40) words to your friend Ramy: (6Ms)

Tell him your opinion about using social media. Do you use social media or not? What do you use social media for? Do you think social media is good or bad? Why? Your email address is hany@school.net. Your friend's email address is ramy@hotmail.com.

From:
To:
Subject:

....

....

....

....

امتحان ملحق الكتاب

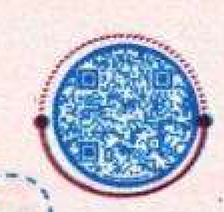
Unit 10 Test 4

Total 30









(4Ms)

نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (83) آخر الكتاب.

① Amira thinks that the school should create a club for (cooking - games - writers - science).

② Amira is in grade (three - four - five - six).

③ Amira likes to write (articles - books - newspapers - stories).

④ Amira doesn't have time to write in the (morning - afternoon - evening - night).

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box: (3Ms)

sign in – sign up – cyberfriends – account

Wael : You're thirteen now, aren't you?

Youssef : Yeah. Why?

Wael : That means you can ❶ .... for a social media account like me.



Youssef : What do you use your ❷ .... for?
Wael : I post videos. I also made some ❸ .... online.
Youssef : Who are these cyberfriends? Do you really know them?
Wael : No, but I can watch their videos. Some of them are so cool!

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below: (5Ms)

People have different hobbies. Sports, computers, the internet, drawing, reading and collecting stamps are very famous hobbies, but television is the most common hobby. People watch television or listen to the radio or the television to know what is happening all over the world. They know about accidents, sports and important things. They also listen to or watch interesting programmes. Many of them like football matches, others like science programmes.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Most people like (collecting stamps - cooking - reading - watching TV).
2. People like (one - four - five - different) hobbies.
3. People watch (the radio - the internet - TV - newspaper) to know what is happening all over the world.

B Answer these questions:

4. What hobbies are mentioned in the passage?
 ....
5. Why do people listen to the news?
 ....

The Reader (Amir takes action)

4 A Read and write T (True) or F (False): (4Ms)

1. Amir took the laundry up to the roof. (   )
2. Amir helped his Grandma cook dinner. (   )

B Choose the correct answer:

3. Amir felt (happy - sad - tired - hungry) when he saw the poor bird.
4. The wash is (started - finished - gone - begun).

5 Choose the correct answer: (5Ms)

1. We (should - shouldn't - can't - mustn't) have more recycling bins in our streets.
2. I can't write short stories (and - or - but - so) articles.
3. You (must - should - shouldn't - can) be afraid to ask your teacher for help.
4. She does her homework (on - in - at - for) the evening.
5. He shouldn't (come - comes - coming - came) to bed late.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

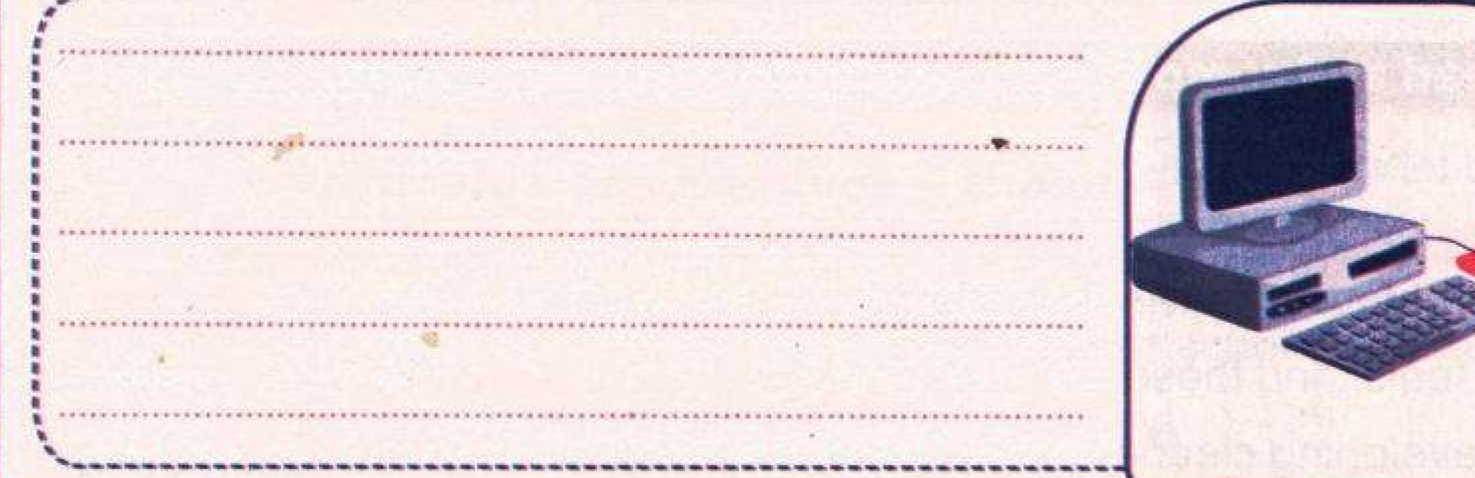
1. club – idea – after school – is – a perfect – An.
   ....
2. problems – cause – pollution – What – air – does?
   .... ?
3. devices - electronic - use - We - send messages - to.
   ....

7 Write a paragraph of (40) words using the following guiding element: (6Ms)

'The computer'

Ideas to help you:

(computer - important - invention - study - play - games - internet - chat - friends - information)



Revision on Unit 11

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

cruise – trip – traffic – lights

I love my city but every morning we have to sit in a ❶ .... jam on my way to school. The cars and buses stop, and we can't move. The ❷ .... to school sometimes takes us an hour! The traffic ❸ .... are often red and that makes the traffic even worse.

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

recycle - spaces – trees - cars

It's important to have green ❶ .... in a city. People are happier when they have green spaces. To do this, we need more parks and ❷ .... in our cities. If we need to water these green spaces, we can ❸ .... water.

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

easier – streetcars – gasoline – more difficult

The first car that ran on ❶ .... appeared in the 1800s. People bought cars to make their lives ❷ .... Cities like London and Boston had some of the first ❸ .... and subway systems.

4 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

burns – cleans – environment – electric

The problem with transportation that uses gasoline is that it ❶ .... fossil fuels, and these are bad for the ❷ .... So today, people are developing cleaner forms of transportation like ❸ .... cars.

5 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

ancient – papyrus – fishing - skiff

Boats and ships were the most important form of transportation in ancient Egypt. Most Egyptians used a small boat called a ❶ .... They made this simple boat from ❷ .... and rope. People could travel short distances in these boats, or they could use it for ❸ ....

6 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

driverless – vehicles – electric – palm trees

In my ideal city, all transportation is more ecological. There are ❶ .... cabs, but they don't have any drivers because they are ❷ .... I am sure that the air will be cleaner if we use electric ❸ ....

7 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

wet – dry - bikes – advantage

Host : Hi, Astrid. Where are you from?

Astrid : I'm from Netherlands.

Host : How do children go to school in your country?

Astrid : They ride their ❶ .... to school.

Host : What is the ❷ .... of going to school by bike?

Astrid : You can exercise on the way to school.

Host : What is the disadvantage of going to school by bike?

Astrid : It's very rainy here and you can get ❸ ....

8 Choose the correct answer: Vocabulary

1. In the past, people used animals and small boats for (traffic - signs - transportation).
2. Farmers used to transport their goods in (wagons - cabs - streetcars) and carts.
3. Ships with steam engines could travel faster than sail (subways - boats - trains).
4. Today (ferries - carts - airplanes) can fly to different continents in one day.
5. The (roof - wall - floor) is the top part of a building.
6. The (sea - canal - ocean) is a long area of water, made for boats to travel on.
7. (Ice - Snow - Water vapor) is water in the form of gas.
8. The (waterway - highway - railway) is the different routes people use for traveling by water like a river, canal, or lake.
9. In my ideal city, there are a lot of (bike paths - green spaces - traffic jams) where people can go for walks.
10. There are (trees - buildings - traffic) in all the streets to provide shade and make the buildings cooler.
11. All the buildings have (wind turbines - water turbines - solar panels) on their roofs to get energy from the sun.
12. There are recycling (factories - bins - companies) in the parks and streets, so people can recycle their plastic bottles.
13. There are lots of (bike paths - traffic jams - waterways), so that people can ride their bikes.
14. The (destinations - cabs - residents) travel around the city on electric buses and streetcars.
15. There are few (signs - traffic lights - traffic jams) in my city, so you can drive your car easily.
16. All the (transportation - signs - lights) in my city is electric, so the air is cleaner and there's less noise.
17. The (streetcar - cart - wagon) travels around a town or city. It can carry about 40 people. It doesn't use gasoline. It's electric.
18. The (train - subway - ferry) takes people or goods across rivers, lakes, or the sea. It can be quite small or very big.

(19) The (bus - subway - train) travels underground. People use it to travel around cities. It's fast and it isn't expensive.

(20) The (cab - airplanes - bus) transports people on roads around cities or towns. Only three or four people can travel in this. It can be expensive.

GRAMMAR REVISION

9 Choose the correct answer:

1. They travel to Saudi Arabia (in - on - by) ship.
2. Dad often goes to work (on - in - at) time.
3. He crossed the river (by - in - on) boat.
4. We go to the park (on - by - in) foot.
5. She goes to Alexandria (in - on - by) train.
6. I pass lots of shops (on - at - in) my way to school.
7. I get (at - to - for) school at eight o'clock.
8. (In - On - At) my opinion, we should help our environment by all means.
9. Maged is taller (then - than - the) Hani.
10. Grandpa is the (old - older - oldest) in the family.
11. Horses are (faster - fastest - fast) than zebras.
12. This lesson is (difficult - less difficult - the most difficult) than the last lesson.
13. Our school is (good - better than - the best) one in my town.
14. Luxor is (famous - more famous - the most famous) historical city in Egypt.
15. Fady's math mark is (bad - worse - the worst) than the science mark.
16. The red dress is (more - the most - the least) expensive than the blue dress.
17. Smartphones are (good - better than - the best) electronic devices.
18. Rats are (smaller - smaller than - the smallest) than rabbits.
19. This is the (bad - worse - worst) story I've ever read.
20. I think judo is (less - more - the least) interesting sport.

10 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. have – nowadays – problem – Many cities – big – a.

   ↳ ....

2. a traffic – We – jam – have to – sit – in.

   ↳ ....

③ lights – often – traffic – The – red – are.

↳ ....

④ can't – on – make – I – the trip – foot.

↳ ....

⑤ transportation – public – good – We – have.

↳ ....

⑥ there – of – Are – traffic – a lot – lights?

↳ .... ?

⑦ belt – seat – your – wear – must – You.

↳ ....

⑧ go – Did – museum – to – you – the science?

↳ .... ?

⑨ important – green – It's – spaces – have – to.

↳ ....

⑩ need – trees – and – more – We – parks.

↳ ....

⑪ can – What – do – residents – help – to?

↳ .... ?

⑫ volunteer – garbage – People – up – pick – to.

↳ ....

⑬ transportation – changed – engine – of – the steam – The invention.

↳ ....

⑭ River – My city – the Nile – on – is – located.

↳ ....

⑮ are – the houses – There – around – trees – palm.

↳ ....

⑯ energy – better than – fuels – Solar – fossil – is.

↳ ....

⑰ new – The ferry – canals – the – use – can.

↳ ....

⑱ transportation – ecological – This – more – now – is.

↳ ....

⑲ vehicles – Hydrogen – produce – don't – gases – dangerous.

↳ ....



امتحان الكتاب الأساسي بعد تعديله طِبقًا للمواصفات الجديدة

Unit (11) Test (5)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: (4Ms)





نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (84) آخر الكتاب.

1. We have to sit in a traffic (light - jam - rule - road) on my way to school.
2. The (bus - car - transportation - trip) to school sometimes takes us an hour.
3. The traffic lights are often red and that makes the traffic even (better - best - worse - worst).
4. I can't make the trip (on foot - by bus - by ship - by train) because my school is too far to walk to.

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box: (3Ms)

spaces - environment - paths - volunteer

Dina : Hey, Talia. Did you go to the science museum with your class yesterday?

Talia : Yes, we did. I learned a lot about creating a cleaner urban ❶ ....

Dina : Oh, really? What did you learn?

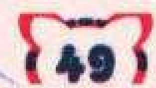
Talia : Well, it's important to have green ❷ .... in a city.

Dina : That sounds like a good idea to me. We need fewer cars too, don't we?

Talia : Yes, and we need bike ❸ .... for people to ride their bikes on.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below: (5Ms)

In my city, all transportation is now more ecological. There are electric cabs, but they don't have any drivers because they are driverless. I am sure that the air will be cleaner if we use electric vehicles. We also have buses that use power from hydrogen gas. From what I know, hydrogen vehicles don't produce any dangerous gases. They only produce warm air and water vapor. You can ride your bike all around the city on the bike paths.



A Choose the correct answer:

① In my city, all transportation is now more (dangerous - steam - harmful - ecological).

② Electric cabs don't have any (engines - drivers - wheels - motors).

③ I am sure that the air will be (cleaner - dirtier - darker - worse) if we use electric vehicles.

B Answer these questions:

④ What does hydrogen gas vehicles produce?

....

⑤ Where can we ride our bikes?

....

The Reader (Amir takes action)

4 A Read and write T (True) or F (False): (4Ms)

① Trucks transported plastic bottles of water in plastic bags. (   )

② The seagull was in trouble. (   )

B Choose the correct answer:

③ Amir and his grandmother hanged up the (clothes - cloth - seagull - roof).

④ Amir's tablet was on the (ground - table - roof - desk).

5 Choose the correct answer: (5Ms)

① Sharks are (large - larger than - larger - the largest) than turtles.

② Do you think English is (more - most - the least - the most) interesting than French?

③ Nora is always laughing. She's the (happy - happier - the happiest - happiest) person I know.

④ That was (more - the least - less - most) difficult test I've ever done.

⑤ Some tourists go to Luxor (on - by - in - with) boat.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

① transportation - What animals - people - for - use - do?

....

② people - The ferry - carry - of - can - a lot.

.... ?

③ can – What – do – residents – help – to?

.... ?

7 Write a paragraph of (40) words using the following guiding element: (6Ms)

'How you and your family go to school and work'

....

....

....

....

....

Unit 11 Test 5

امتحان ملحق الكتاب

Total 30

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (84) آخر الكتاب.

① There is a great new (canoe - boat - ferry - ship) system that moves people up and down the river.

② The new (gasoline - harmful - ecological - polluted) boats use both wind power and electric energy.

③ The (residents - sailors - drivers - engineers) can use the ferry system to get around the town.

④ It is very important to protect our (roads - stations - streets - waterways).

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box: (3Ms)

rockets – streetcars – continent – transportation

Cities like London and Boston had some of the first ❶ .... and subway systems. Soon, high-speed trains made traveling between rural and urban areas very fast. From the beginning of time, humans watched birds and wanted to fly. Today, we fly from one ❷ .... to another in no more than one day. We are even able to send people to the Moon in ❸ ....

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below: (5Ms)

A long time ago, the only types of transportation for humans were walking, running, and swimming. After that, humans began to use animals like mules, donkeys, and horses. Then came small boats like canoes and other types of water transportation. Once they invented the wheel, people started to use small wagons and carts. Farmers in the country could transport their goods to markets in cities more easily.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Humans began to use animals like (cows - dogs - buffalos - mules) for transportation.
2. Canoes are types of (rail - air - water - road) transportation.
3. (Farmers - Inventors - Drivers - Riders) could transport their goods to markets in cities more easily.

B Answer these questions:

4. What were the only types of transportation for humans a long time ago?

   ....

5. What did people use after they invented the wheel?

   ....

The Reader (Amir takes action)

4 A Read and write T (True) or F (False): (4Ms)

1. Amir could see plastic bottles floating down the river. (   )
2. All of nature is terrible. (   )

B Choose the correct answer:

3. Trucks transported (metal - wood - plastic - glass) bottles.
4. The seagull was in (trouble - the tree - Nile - ground).

5 Choose the correct answer: (5Ms)

1. The blue whale is (big - bigger - the biggest - bigger than) animal in the world.
2. Mom goes to work (in - by - on - at) car.
3. Aya is (clever - cleverer - cleverest - the cleverest) girl in the class.
4. Football is (more - most - the least - the most) exciting than handball.
5. Today's match is (bad - worse - worst - the best) than yesterday's match.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

1. school – on – go to – Do – foot – you?
   ....?
2. to – important – waterways – our – It's – protect.
   ....
3. types - of - Which - transport - use - do you?
   ....?

7 Write an email of (40) words to your friend Kamal: (6Ms)

Tell him your opinion about the land transportation now. Do electric cars have drivers or not? What will happen if we use electric vehicles? What do hydrogen vehicles produce? Are hydrogen vehicles dangerous or safe? Your email address is kareem@school.com. Your friend's email address is kamal@school.com

From:
To:
Subject:
....
....
....
....
....

Revision on Unit 12

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

agriculture – change – erosion – industry

Humans can cause erosion. Heavy ❶ .... is one way that people do this. Burning fossil fuels is another way because it results in climate ❷ .... Climate change causes sea levels to rise and this results in more ❸ ....

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

dry – wet – water - shortage

Drought happens where there is not enough ❶ .... for a long time. When this happens, rivers and lakes become ❷ .... Farmers cannot grow food and nature is in danger. When people do not have all the water that they need, we say that there is a water ❸ ....

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

flood – shortage – reuse - showers

Hi, I'm Mona. There's a water ❶ .... in my house today. We'll have to find ways to save water. My dad will stop washing his car. My mom will ❷ .... water from the kitchen for the garden. That will help the plants. I'll have shorter ❸ .... That will save a lot of water.

4 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

cook – appetizer – order - course

Waiter: Welcome to our restaurant, sir.

Guest: Thank you.

Waiter: Are you ready to ❶ ....?

Guest: Yes.

Waiter: What ❷ .... do you want?

Guest: Green salad, please.

Waiter: What about the main ❸ ....?

Guest: Chicken and pasta, please.

5 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

rocks – natural – flows - drought

Hoda: Hi, Hany. Do you know what erosion is?

Hany: Sure. It's a ❶ .... process.

Hoda: When does it happen?

Hany: It happens when ❷ .... and soil is moved from one place to another.

Hoda: What can move rocks and soil?

Hany: Water, wind, or ❸ ....

6 Choose the correct answer: Vocabulary

1. When heavy rains or strong winds move soil and rocks from one place to another, it creates (drought - volcano - erosion).
2. During a (drought - flood - landslide), there isn't enough rain, and rivers and lakes become dry.
3. A (glacier - lake - river) is a huge ice flow that moves very slowly across the land.

④ The (agriculture - pollution - atmosphere) is made of oxygen, carbon dioxide, and other gases.

⑤ Too much rain in one area can cause a (water shortage - drought - flood).

⑥ When the soil and rocks move and fall away, this is (landslide - tsunami - glacier).

⑦ There's a (flood - water shortage - heavy rain) when people don't have enough water.

⑧ When a volcano explodes under the sea, this creates a huge wave called a (tsunami - flood - erosion).

⑨ Solar and wind energies are (polluted - dangerous - ecofriendly) energies.

⑩ World leaders had a very important meeting and signed an important (notebook - story - agreement).

GRAMMAR REVISION

7 Choose the correct answer:

① She (helps - will help - helped) clean the house tomorrow.

② Ayman (will go - goes - won't go) to the beach next weekend. He'll stay at home.

③ He will (come - comes - coming) with us to the party.

④ Malak won't (visits - visiting - visit) us tomorrow.

⑤ (Is - Will - Does) Tarek buy an electric car? - No, he won't.

⑥ If there's a water shortage, people (finds - found - will find) ways to save water.

⑦ Mom's plants won't die if she (will reuse - reuses - reuse) water from the kitchen.

⑧ If Mona (has - have - will have) shorter showers, she'll save a lot of water.

⑨ If dad stops washing his car, he (will waste - wastes - won't waste) water.

⑩ It (helps - will help - won't help) the environment if we stop using plastic.

⑪ If it (rains - won't rain - doesn't rain) soon, we will have a water shortage.

⑫ Polar bears (will lose - lose – won't lose) their habitat if the polar ice caps continue to melt.

⑬ If there (is - was - will be) a drought, plants and crops will die.

14) I wrote a good report for my school magazine, (and - but - so) they published it!

15) The world's leaders (قادة) are talking, (but - so - and) they haven't signed (يوقعوا) a treaty (معاهدة) yet.

16) I can make ful medames (or - but - so) koshari for dinner tonight.

17) There hasn't been rain in our village for months, (so - but - and) now there is a water shortage (نقص).

18) Oats (الشوفان), falafel, (or - and - but) hummus (حمص) are all plant-based foods.

19) Judy loves cooking, (but - or - so) she helps her mother in the kitchen.

20) Adam does not like helping in the kitchen, (and - so - but) he always washes the dishes.

8 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1) cause – can – erode – Winds – to – the land.

↳ ....

2) process – Erosion – natural – a – is.

↳ ....

3) you – afternoon – Will – go – this – shopping?

↳ .... ?

4) planet – our – affects – change – Climate.

↳ ....

5) leaders – World – important – had – an – meeting.

↳ ....

6) agreed – to start – Countries – gases – reducing – greenhouse.

↳ ....

7) decided – coal – using – to – They – stop.

↳ ....

8) must – We – all – change – climate – slow.

↳ ....





امتحان الكتاب الأساسي بعد تعديله طِبقًا للمواصفات الجديدة

Unit (12) Test (6)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: (4Ms)





نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (84) آخر الكتاب.

1. We need to try to (continue - save - slow - keep) climate change.
2. Nations are now making (planes - plans - plates - place) to work on this problem.
3. We can (recycle - cause - make - pick up) paper, plastic, and glass at home.
4. Last week, leaders from every country in the world met for the United Nations Climate Change (Festival - Party - Celebration - Conference).

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box: (3Ms)

conference - greenhouse gases - global - Agreement

On December 12th, 1995, world leaders had a very important meeting. 196 parties signed the Paris ❶ .... The parties agreed to reduce ❷ .... warming to less than 2 degrees Celsius. To do this, countries agreed to start reducing ❸ .... immediately. This was the first time that so many nations made a serious effort to slow global warming.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below: (5Ms)

Erosion is a natural process. It happens when rock and soil is moved from one place to another by water, wind, or flows. The waves and currents in the sea can erode beaches, and rivers can erode riverbanks. Heavy rains or winds can also cause the land to erode. Different types of flows - floods, landslides, tsunamis, or glaciers - also erode the land. Humans can cause erosion too. Heavy agriculture is one way that people do this. Burning fossil fuels is another way because it results in climate change. Climate change causes sea levels to rise and this results in more erosion.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. The waves and currents in the sea can (pollute - burn - reduce - erode) beaches.
2. Burning fossil fuels is another way because it results in (flood - climate change - drought - deforestation).
3. Erosion is a natural (process - experiment - experience - test).

B Answer these questions:

4. When does erosion happen?
   ....
5. How can humans cause erosion?
   ....

The Reader (Amir takes action)

4 A Read and write T (True) or F (False): (4Ms)

1. Amir's grandma volunteered to help. ( )
2. Amir and his friends couldn't make a change. ( )

B Choose the correct answer:

3. Amir wanted to take (acting - action - photo - message).
4. Amir saw the seagull in her (nest - bed - leg - head).

5 Choose the correct answer: (5Ms)

1. He has enough money, (so - but - and - or) he can buy the mobile he wants.
2. If we drive electric cars, we (reduce - reduces - won't reduce - will reduce) pollution.
3. He won't (go - goes - will go - going) to the cinema next weekend, he has to study for his exam.
4. She will get a prize if she (writes - will write - doesn't write - write) a good newspaper report.
5. Sara does not like helping in the kitchen, (and - so - but - or) she always tidies her room.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

1. did - agree - What - to do - leaders - the?
   ....?
2. slow down - change - need - We - climate - to.
   ....
3. you – afternoon – Will – go – this – shopping?
   ....?

7 Write a paragraph of (40) words using the following guiding element: (6Ms)

'Global warming'

Ideas to help you:
- What causes it.
- Its bad effects.
- Solutions.

....
....
....
....
....

امتحان ملحق الكتاب Unit 12 Test 6

Total 30

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (84) آخر الكتاب.

1. On December 12th, 1995, world leaders had a very important (party – festival – meeting – document).
2. The parties agreed to reduce (global warming – climate change – fossil fuels – erosion) to less than 2 degrees Celsius.
3. This year at COP26, leaders signed a new (conference – meeting – country – document).
4. They also decided to stop using (gas – coal – oil – gasoline).

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box: (3Ms)

electric – Agreement – conference – transportation

An important topic at the meeting was ❶ .... Car companies agreed to stop making vehicles that use fossil fuels by 2040 so they will make more ❷ .... vehicles. We must all slow climate change. Treaties like the Paris ❸ .... are one way for nations to work together to do this.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below: (5Ms)

The seasons of the year are fall, winter, spring and summer. Fall isn't too hot and it isn't too cold. It's a nice season. Winter in our country is cold. But we always have the sun. The flowers are beautiful in spring. But spring is often windy and dusty. In summer, it is hot. Many people go on holidays. On holidays, people don't go to work. They rest and have fun. Some go to the farms; some go to the beach and some stay at home.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. There are (two - three - four - five) seasons in a year.
2. Spring is often (windy - cold - hot - snowy).
3. (Winter - Spring - Summer - Fall) in our country is cold.

B Answer these questions:

3. What's the weather like in fall?
   ....
4. What do people usually do on holidays?
   ....

The Reader (Amir takes action)

4 A Read and write T (True) or F (False): (4Ms)

1. The water is important for all of us. (   )
2. One baby seagull put its head out of the nest. (   )

B Choose the correct answer:

③ Grandma volunteered to (swim - sleep - help - go).

④ Amir and his friends could make a (trip - nothing - coffee - change).

5 Choose the correct answer: (5Ms)

① If we (burn - don't burn - won't burn - doesn't burn) fossil fuels, the air will be cleaner.

② They (travels - travel - traveled - will travel) to Matrouh next summer.

③ She's very clever (so - but - or - because) all teachers are happy with her.

④ He (will save - won't save - save - saves) electricity if he doesn't turn off his computer at night.

⑤ The world's leaders are talking, (and - but - so - or) they haven't signed a treaty yet.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

① will – vehicles – electric – Car companies – make – more.

....

② using – Will – fuels – stop – fossil – they?

.... ?

③ we do - erosion - slow down - can - to - What?

.... ?

7 Write a paragraph of (40) words using the following guiding element: (6Ms)



Ideas to help you:

(important - humans - animals - plants - farmers - grow - save - pollute)

....

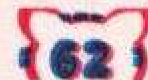
....

....

....

....





Part 2

Revision Tests



Revision Test 1



1 Listen and choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (85) آخر الكتاب.

1. My city is located on the (Red Sea - Lake Nasser - Nile River - ocean).
2. All the electricity in my city comes from a (solar - wind - water - fossil) energy.
3. The new homes have solar panels on their (walls - roofs - doors - gardens).
4. There are (orange trees - apple trees - lemon trees - palm trees) around the houses.

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box: (3Ms)

dry - Drought - water shortage - danger

❶ .... happens where there is not enough rain for a long time. When this happens, rivers and lakes become dry. Farmers cannot grow food and nature is in ❷ .... When people do not have all the water that they need, we say that there is a ❸ ....

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below: (5Ms)

Every morning, Hamdy goes to work by train. As he has a long journey, he always buys a newspaper which helps him to make the time pass more quickly. On Monday morning, he looked at the sports page. He wanted to read a report on an important football match. The report was so interesting that he forgot to get off at his station. He got off at the next station and had to wait a long time for a train going back. Of course he arrived very late. His boss was very angry when he knew the story and told him that work is more important than football.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Hamdy is interested in (reports - work - football - drawing).
2. Hamdy was carried (one station - two stations - three stations - four stations) by mistake.

3. Hamdy reads a (book - newspaper - magazine - story) on his journey to work.

B Answer these questions:

4. How does Hamdy go to work? ....
5. When did this story happen? ....

The Reader (Amir takes action)

4 A Read and write T (True) or F (False): (4Ms)

1. Trucks transported plastic bottles of water in plastic bags. (   )
2. Amir and his friends could make a change. (   )

B Choose the correct answer:

3. Amir does his homework in the (afternoon - morning - evening - night).
4. Using too much plastic is (harming - helping - improving - developing) the birds.

5 Choose the correct answer: (5Ms)

1. Today, we're (talk - talks - talked - talking) about pollution.
2. The sun (is coming - come - comes - was coming) up in the morning.
3. The archaeologists (are digging - dig - dug - were digging) when they found an old box.
4. Going to school on foot is (healthy - healthier - healthier than - healthiest) than going by bus.
5. I don't have any free time today, (so - or - and - but) I am free on the weekend.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

1. with - faster - Ships - engines - steam - could travel.
   ....
2. on - you - school - time - Do - get to?
   .... ?
3. can – websites – access – How – people?
   .... ?

7 Write a paragraph of (40) words using the following guiding element: (6Ms)

'A visit to the museum'

Ideas to help you:

(last week - museum - history - artifacts - statues - tools - tourists - photos)



....

....

....

....

Revision Test 2



Total /30

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: (4Ms)





نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (85) آخر الكتاب.

① In the past, people used smoke (signs - signals - notes - fires) to send messages.

② We send (electronic - electric - fire - bird) messages today.

③ A/An (blog - vlog - presentation - email) is a digital form of a letter.

④ You must have an email (website - form - keyboard - account) to send emails.

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box: (3Ms)

environment - greener - gasoline - transportation

The problem with transportation that uses ❶ .... is that it burns fossil fuels, and these are bad for the ❷ .... So today, people are developing cleaner forms of ❸ .... like electric cars. There are even electric buses that use some solar energy from solar panels on their roofs. Engineers are designing greener airplanes and ships, too.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below: (5Ms)

Man is dreaming of traveling through time. He wishes to travel into the past to know what happened long ago. Also, he wishes to travel into the future to find out about what will happen. People think that inventing something like a time machine may help them to do so. But until now, man can't do that except in his dreams. While we are asleep, we can travel into the past or the future. But dreams are not usually true. They may be happy or frightening.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. A (rocket - plane - spaceship - time machine) may help people to travel through time.
2. The only available means of traveling through time now is (planes - the time machine - dreams - ships).
3. While we are (sailing - flying - asleep - driving), we can travel into the past or the future.

B Answer these questions:

4. Why does man wish to travel through time?
   ....
5. What may our dreams be like?
   ....

The Reader (Amir takes action)

4 A Read and write T (True) or F (False): (4Ms)

1. Grandma doesn't like seagulls and thinks they are ugly. (   )
2. Amir didn't want to take action. (   )

B Choose the correct answer:

3. The seagull had (two - three - four - five) babies.
4. Amir took (notes - roofs - rooms - clothes) on his tablet.

5 Choose the correct answer: (5Ms)

1. I can make this meal (easily - easy - quick - careful).
2. What does he (ate - eat - eats - eating) for lunch?
3. He will have a party if he (will win - win - wins - doesn't win) the first prize.

4. Everyone (can't - should - shouldn't - mustn't) recycle their plastic bottles.
5. I (have - had - was having - were having) dinner when dad came back home.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

1. you - What - for - do - your account - use?
   ....?
2. shouldn't - by hand - your - write - You - story.
   ....
3. island – How – this – get to – you – did?
   ....?

7 Write an email of (40) words to your friend Heba: (6Ms)

Tell her about the means of communication today and in the past. What electronic devices do you have at home and in your school? Which one is your favorite? Your email address is engy@school.net. Your friend's email address is heba@hotmail.com.

From:
To:
Subject:
....
....
....
....

Revision Test 3

Total 30

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: (4Ms)





نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (85) آخر الكتاب.

1. A country's heritage is an important part of its (identity - geography - traditions - monuments).
2. The ancient Egyptians developed (industry - agriculture - trade - selling)

3) People in ancient Egypt built many amazing (hotels - museums - rivers - temples).

4) The ancient Egyptians developed some of the first (clocks - calendars - watches - machines).

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box: (3Ms)

interested - reports - club - projects

As a fourth-grade student, I like to write stories and ❶ .... about things that I think are interesting. I write for my projects and for fun. I don't have time to write in the morning, but I do have time to write after school. Some of my friends are also ❷ .... in writing after school. So, that's why I think that an after-school ❸ .... is a perfect idea.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below: (5Ms)

The teacher's job at school is a very difficult one. It may be harder than any other job. The teacher should help every student in the class to get the most of what is explained. My uncle Magdy is a computer teacher. He helps his students to use the different programs of computer. He also helps them how to surf the internet. He explains lessons to his students in a simple way. All of them love him very much.

A Choose the correct answer:

1) The teacher should be (impatient - helpful - lazy - careless).

2) Any other job is (easier - harder - better - shorter) than the teacher's job.

3) My uncle Magdy is a (math - computer - science - PE) teacher.

B Answer these questions:

4) What is a teacher's job like? ....

5) What does Mr. Magdy help his students to do? ....

The Reader (Shipwrecks)

4 A Read and write T (True) or F (False): (4Ms)

1) Thônis - Heracleion was a very old city. ( )

2) A volcano destroyed the temple of Amun. ( )

B Choose the correct answer:

③ A (boat - ship - sail - port - coast) is a large piece of cloth that makes a ship move in the wind.

④ There are storms, reefs, and strong currents in the Red Sea, which can make it (safe - nice - easy - dangerous). Sometimes ships hit the reefs and sink.

5 Choose the correct answer: (5Ms)

① I can't write short stories (and - or - but - so) articles.

② Cars are (expensive - more expensive - the most expensive - the least expensive) than bikes.

③ I think our team (win - wins - will win - won) tomorrow.

④ Did she (help - helps - helped - helping) at home last weekend?

⑤ My grandpa often (wear - wears - doesn't wear - is wearing) galabeya.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

① environment - do - in - What - live - you?

.... ?

② important - was - Egypt - in - Bread - ancient.

....

③ are - in protecting - our - Trees - planet - important.

....

7 Write a paragraph of (40) words using the following guiding element: (6Ms)

Ideas to help you: 'Reading'

(book - best friend - read - free time - lots of information - present - past - future - should - read - anytime - anywhere)

....

....

....

....



Revision Test 4




1 Listen and choose the correct answer: (4Ms)




نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (85) آخر الكتاب.

1. The Pyramids are in (Cairo - Giza - Luxor - Aswan).
2. Visitors often like to learn about Egyptian (schools - students - teachers - traditions).
3. Egyptian people are famous for welcoming (visitors - temples - hosts - countries).
4. You can eat delicious (sights - people - drinks - food) in Egypt.

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box: (3Ms)

fertile - seasons - Agriculture - flood

❶ .... is an important part of Egypt's heritage. The Nile used to ❷ .... every year, making the soil more fertile. This is why ancient Egyptians could farm the land and it led to a growth in civilization. There were three ❸ .... of farming in ancient Egypt, which were all connected to the Nile.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below: (5Ms)

One day, the rabbit asked the tortoise to have a race to the river. The tortoise knows well that it's very slow, but it said, "All right". So the rabbit began to run very fast. The tortoise crawled along behind him very slowly. On the way, the rabbit thought, "Ha, ha. I'll win very easily. I'll just stop for a little rest". So the rabbit stopped and went to sleep. But the tortoise didn't stop and it slowly passed the sleeping rabbit. So the tortoise arrived at the river first and won the race.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. A tortoise is (faster than - slower than - as slow as - as not slow as) a rabbit.
2. This story teaches us not to be (proud - active - fast - clever).



③ The rabbit stopped for a little (drink - lunch - rest - dinner).

B Answer these questions:

④ What did the rabbit ask the tortoise to do?

....

⑤ Why did the tortoise win the race at last?

....

The Reader (Amir takes action)

4 A Read and write T (True) or F (False): (4Ms)

① People are using too much plastic. (   )

② Dalia doesn't know how to help Amir. (   )

B Choose the correct answer:

③ The (bag - garbage - litter - water) is important for all of us.

④ There was a plastic (bottle - plant - bag - nest) around the seagull's leg.

5 Choose the correct answer: (5Ms)

① Scientists are (finding - found - find - finds) new ways to travel and to use fuels.

② My uncle always (drive - drives - was driving - is driving) second hand cars.

③ Farmers (grow - grew - grows - are growing) different crops in ancient Egypt.

④ It is bad for the environment to burn fossil fuels, (but - because - or - so) we should stop doing it.

⑤ Tigers are (faster - fastest - fast - the fastest) than zebras.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

① results in - change - Burning - fuels - fossil - climate.

....

② go - by car - school - Do - to - you?

....?

③ recipes – her – get – does – How – Grandma?

....?

7 Write an email of (40) words to your friend Amal: (6Ms)

Tell her about your favorite meal for lunch. What do you need to buy to make the recipe? How can you cook it? Is it delicious or not? Your name is Nada and your email address is nada@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is amal@school.net.

From:
To:
Subject:
....
....
....
....
....

Revision Test 5

Total 30



1 Listen and choose the correct answer: (4Ms)



نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (86) آخر الكتاب.

1. Trees, plants and flowers grow when there's a lot of (rain - wind - storm - sun).
2. The temperature is (hot - cold - windy - snowy) in the rainforest environment.
3. Sometimes there are beaches with sand in the (rainforest - polar - coastal - rural) environment.
4. Sometimes there are (seas - fields - deserts - swamps) in the coastal environment.

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box: (3Ms)

meal - generous - chicken - traditional

A ❶ .... Egyptian meal is served with people sitting together around a table. A typical ❷ .... has rice, a kind of vegetable stew, soup, stuffed vegetables, and meat or chicken. Egyptians are very ❸ .... and are very happy when you ask for more food. This means you enjoyed their delicious meal!

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below: (5Ms)

Coffee is the most favorite drink in many countries today. Farmers grow coffee in different parts of the world. Coffee grew first in Ethiopia. People discovered it there more than 1000 years ago. After that, Arab travelers took the coffee plant to Egypt and other Arab countries. Then the people in Turkey learnt about coffee. The first coffee shop in London was opened in 1652.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. The underlined word it refers to (Ethiopia - coffee - the world - tea).
2. People discovered coffee more than one (hundred - thousand - million - billion) years ago.
3. Coffee is the most favorite (food - crop - plant - drink) in many countries today.

B Answer these questions:

4. Where did coffee grow first? ....
5. Who took coffee to Egypt? ....

The Reader (Amir takes action)

4 A Read and write T (True) or F (False): (4Ms)

1. Amir's grandma volunteered to help. (   )

② We can't use biodegradable bags. (   )

B Choose the correct answer:

③ Amir took the laundry up to the (garden - Nile - roof - ground).

④ Amir wanted to take (money - action - photo - message).

5 Choose the correct answer: (5Ms)

① Heba should (eating - eats - ate - eat) all her sandwiches.

② The leaders had a conference, (but - or - and - so) they couldn't agree on anything.

③ Football is (more - less than - the most - the least) popular than handball.

④ Mom (is cleaning - cleaned - cleans - was cleaning) the house when dad came home.

⑤ If he (has - have - had - will have) shorter showers, he'll save a lot of water.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

① from - fuels - What - made - fossil - are?

➥ ....?

② takes - hour - an - school - to - The trip.

➥ ....

③ must – We – all – change – climate – slow.

➥ ....

7 Write a paragraph of (40) words using the following guiding element: (6Ms)

Ideas to help you: 'A trip to the zoo'

(trip - zoo - family - car - animals - birds - photos - lunch - happy)

....

....

....

....



Revision Test 6



1 Listen and choose the correct answer: (4Ms)



نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (86) آخر الكتاب.

1. In my city, all transportation is now more (dangerous - steam - careless - ecological).
2. Electric cars don't have any (engines - drivers - wheels - seats).
3. Air will be cleaner if we use (coal - electric - gasoline - oil) vehicles.
4. We also have buses that use power from (oxygen - carbon dioxide - hydrogen - nitrogen) gas.

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box: (3Ms)

resources - pollution - environment - renewable

We help to protect our environment. There are kinds of energy we can use which are ❶ .... They don't run out. We can get renewable energy from natural ❷ .... such as the wind, the sun, water, and heat inside the Earth. These kinds of energy don't make ❸ .... and, on the long run, they are better.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below: (5Ms)

Soha and Omar have traveled to different places in Egypt. They have been to Al-Fayoum where they visited Wadi El-Rayyan and a famous temple. They have also been to the Red Sea at Hurghada. There, they enjoyed the beach, the camel rides and the boat trips. Soha and Omar haven't been to the North Coast yet. They hope they will go there next summer. They will go there by bus.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Soha and Omar hope to visit (the North Coast - Hurghada - Wadi El-Rayyan - Sharm El-Sheikh).
2. Soha and Omar will go to the North Coast by (car - bus - train - plane).
3. Soha and Omar have traveled to different places in (France - England - Egypt - America).



B Answer these questions:

4) Which places did Soha and Omar visit? ➥ ....

5) What did they enjoy during their visit to Hurghada? ➥ ....

The Reader (Shipwrecks)

4 A Read and write T (True) or F (False): (4Ms)

1) The Red Sea allows ships to travel to Europe through the Suez Canal. (   )

2) The ship is the biggest and most exciting thing that the divers found. (   )

B Choose the correct answer:

3) Thônis - Heracleion was the largest (station - port - mall - market).

4) People come from all over the world to go wreck (swimming - diving - surfing - fishing) in the Red Sea.

5 Choose the correct answer: (5Ms)

1) What are you (do - doing - does - did), Tamer?

2) He doesn't (use - uses - is using - used) buses. He has a car.

3) Faten was (visit - visits - visited - visiting) the museum yesterday.

4) He goes to school (on - by - at - in) foot.

5) The green bike dress is (more - most - the most - the least) expensive than the black bike.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

1) in - beaches - erode - The waves - the sea - can.

➥ ....

2) I - a - account - Can - social media - get?

➥ .... ?

3) there – of – Are – traffic – a lot – lights?

➥ .... ?

7 Write an email of (40) words to your friend Mariam: (6Ms)

Tell her about the book you read about energy. Explain the difference between the renewable and non-renewable energies. Tell her about your favorite energy and what can you use it for. Your email address is esraa@school.net. Your friend's email address is mariam@gmail.com.

From:
To:
Subject:
....
....
....
....

Revision Test 7

Total /30

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: (4Ms)





نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (86) آخر الكتاب.

1. On a vlog, people post (photos - videos - paintings - texts).
2. A blog belongs to (family - family - a team - one person).
3. A vlog is a personal (website - message - email - World Wide Web).
4. On a blog, people post (videos - podcasts - written texts - clips).

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box: (3Ms)

environment - mountainous - survive - weather

The ❶ .... environment is a type of environments. It can be difficult for people to live and travel in this high environment. They are very beautiful places, but they can be cold, with lots of rain or snow, and the ❷ .... can change quickly. The animals and plants that live here have to find special ways to ❸ ....

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below: (5Ms)

Last week, Samar and her friends went on a school trip to Cairo and Giza by bus. In the early morning her father took her to school where she caught the bus. They reached Cairo at nine o'clock. First, they visited the museum and enjoyed seeing many statues. Then, they visited the zoo and saw different animals. They had lunch there and took many pictures. After that, they visited the Pyramids. They came back home at ten o'clock. They were very happy.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. They went to Cairo and Giza by (car - train - bus - ship).
2. They had lunch at the (Pyramids - zoo - museum - street).
3. In the early morning Samar's (mother - father - brother - sister) took her to school.

B Answer these questions:

4. How long did the trip take?
   ....
5. What did the students see in the zoo?
   ....

The Reader (Amir takes action)

4 A Read and write T (True) or F (False): (4Ms)

1. Amir's grandma volunteered to help. ( )
2. Amir and his friends couldn't make a change. ( )

B Choose the correct answer:

3. Amir wanted to take (acting - action - photo - message).
4. Amir saw the seagull in her (nest - bed - leg - head).

5 Choose the correct answer: (5Ms)

1. (Are - Is - Did - Does) Ehab study math yesterday?
2. There's a newspaper, (so - or - and - but) there isn't a magazine.
3. Doing sports is (good - better - better than - the best) than watching them.
4. My friends and I (will play - played - play - plays) football next Friday.
5. Are you (come - came - comes - coming) with us?

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

1. is - The - populated - rural - sparsely - environment.

   ✎ ....

2. make - you - What - to - would - like?

   ✎ .... ?

3. lasts – days – four – for – Eid Al-Adha.

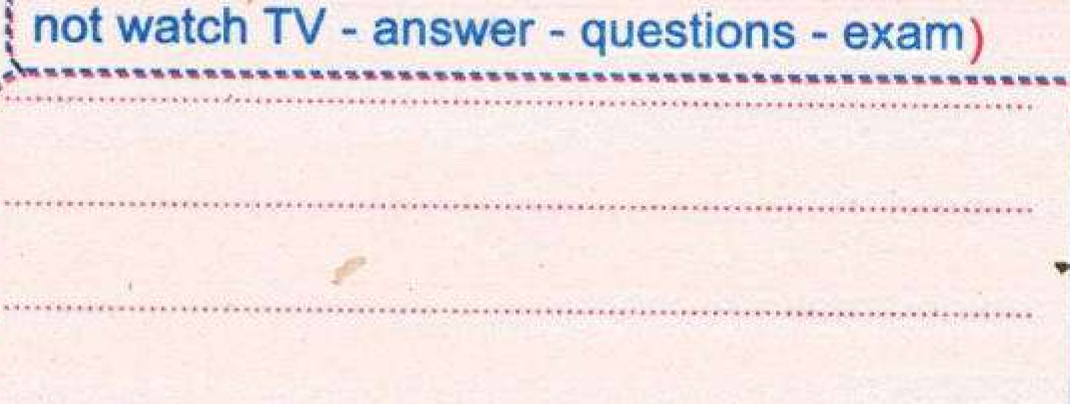
   ✎ ....

7 Write a paragraph of (40) words using the following guiding element: (6Ms)

'How you get ready for the final exam'

Ideas to help you:

(study - hard - revise - lessons - not waste - time - not watch TV - answer - questions - exam)





Part 3

Listening Scripts





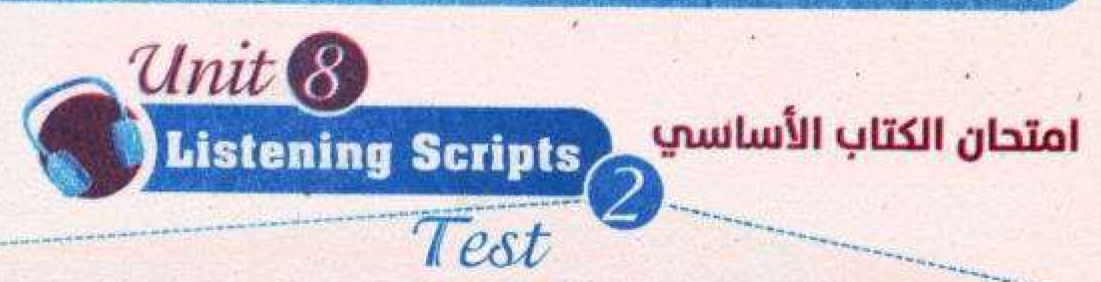
امتحان الكتاب الأساسي

We help to protect our environment. There are kinds of energy we can use which are renewable. They don't run out. We can get renewable energy from natural resources such as the wind, the sun, water, and heat inside the Earth. These kinds of energy don't make pollution, and, on the long run, they are better.



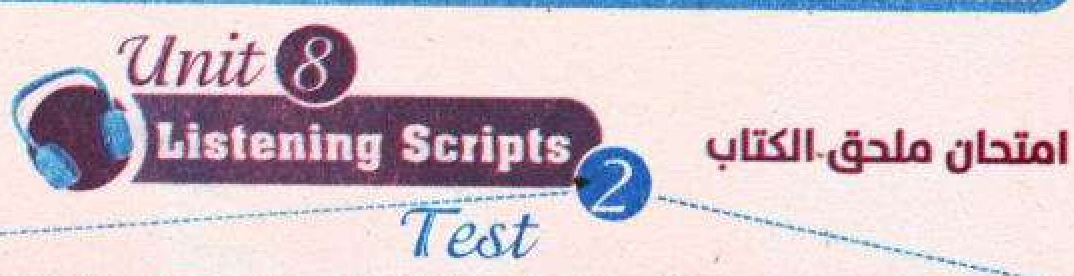
امتحان ملحق الكتاب

People have used hydroelectricity for a very long time. Hydroelectricity means using the energy from moving water to move machines or generate electricity. The Ancient Egyptians and Greeks used the energy in moving water to turn the waterwheels. The waterwheels could move machines and these machines helped with both farming and making food.



امتحان الكتاب الأساسي

Near Aswan, you can see the temples of Abu Simble. Outside the temples, there are some very big statues of Ramses II and his wife Nefertari. Twice a year, people celebrate the Abu Simble Sun Festival there, on February 22nd. On these days, light from the sun at sunrise shines all the way inside the main temple, to the room inside. There are four statues inside the temple.



امتحان ملحق الكتاب

Visitors often like to learn about Egyptian traditions before they come. Egyptian people are famous for welcoming visitors with food and drink, and for inviting guests to their home. If you are invited to an Egyptian family's home, it's a good idea to bring a present, for example chocolates or sweets. However, the host usually doesn't open the present at the time when they get it.



امتحان الكتاب الأساسي

Archaeologists have found lots of artifacts such as tools, pottery, vases, and masks. These can tell us about how people lived in ancient Egypt. For example, we know that ancient Egyptians used lots of pottery. They made pottery vases from clay, and they sometimes decorated them. They used them to hold water and food. They also made small pots for oil or perfume.



امتحان ملحق الكتاب

Luxor is full of different monuments from ancient Egypt. Many tourists visit Luxor from a Nile River cruise. They can see the Temple of Karnak and the Valley of the Kings. Ancient Egyptians buried their kings and queens here for thousands of years. You can see lots of paintings and engravings in the temples. There are lots of other amazing things to see in Egypt.



امتحان الكتاب الأساسي

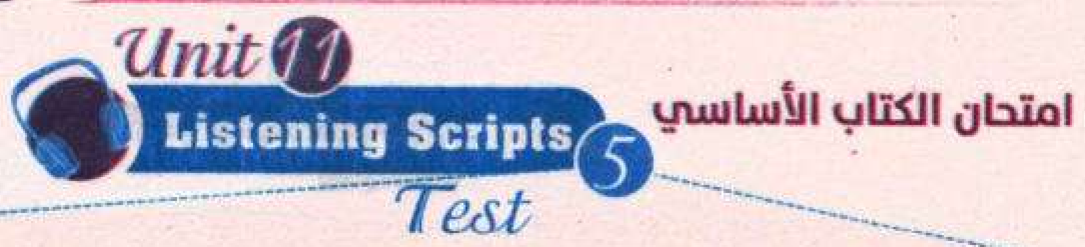
Hello! My name is Amira. I think that the school should create an after school writers' club. Don't you think this is a good idea? As a fourth-grade student, I like to write stories and reports about things that I think are interesting. I write for my projects and for fun. I don't have time to write in the morning, but I do have time to write after school.



امتحان ملحق الكتاب

An email is a digital form of a letter. We send these electronic messages to people using electronic devices. You must have an email account to send these kinds of messages. An instant message (or IM) is a message that you can send on a social media platform. It is a private message so no one else can see it except the person you send it to.





امتحان الكتاب الأساسي

I love my city but every morning we have to sit in a traffic jam on my way to school. The cars and buses stop, and we can't move. The trip to school sometimes takes us an hour! The traffic lights are often red and that makes the traffic even worse. We leave home very early so I can make it to school on time. I can't make the trip on foot because my school is too far to walk to.



امتحان ملحق الكتاب

There is a great new ferry system that moves people up and down the river. The new ecological boats use both wind power and electric energy. The ferry can also use the new canals. The residents can use the ferry system to get around the town. Personally, I think it is very important to protect our waterways. If we use greener boats, we can do that. These ecological boats are quieter than other boats too.



امتحان الكتاب الأساسي

Climate change affects everyone living on our planet, so we need to try to slow it by working together. Nations are now making plans to work on this problem. We can recycle paper, plastic, and glass at home, but what can nations do? Last week, leaders from every country in the world met for the United Nations Climate Change Conference. They talked about what they can do, but this was not the first time they met. In fact, it was their 26th meeting.



امتحان ملحق الكتاب

On December 12th, 1995, world leaders had a very important meeting. 196 parties signed the Paris Agreement. The parties agreed to reduce global warming to less than 2 degrees Celsius. To do this, countries agreed to start reducing greenhouse gases immediately. This year at COP26, leaders signed a new document: the Glasgow Climate Pact. They also decided to stop using coal, a fossil fuel. Burning coal creates 40% of carbon dioxide emissions every year, so people must stop using it.



My city is located on the Nile River. There are new homes, schools, and a hospital. There is also a large park where people can go for walks and play sports. All the electricity in my city comes from a solar energy farm in the desert. The new homes have solar panels on their roofs, too. There are palm trees around the houses to help them stay cooler.



These are different ways to send messages from one place to another place. In the past, people used smoke signals or birds to send messages to each other. Today, we use technology like electronic devices to help us send messages. An email is a digital form of a letter. We send these electronic messages to people using electronic devices. You must have an email account to send these kinds of messages



A country's heritage is an important part of its identity. All countries have their own heritage, and it comes from its history and traditions. Heritage includes art, buildings, and objects from the past, or things like food, music, and dancing. People in ancient Egypt built many amazing temples and monuments, and this is an important part of our heritage. They also developed agriculture and some of the first calendars.



Egypt is a fantastic country to visit! There is so much to see, such as the Pyramids of Giza, the old Luxor Temple, the Red Sea, and of course the River Nile. In all parts of the country, you can see amazing sights, eat delicious food, and meet friendly people. Visitors often like to learn about Egyptian traditions before they come. Egyptian people are famous for welcoming visitors with food and drink, and for inviting guests to their home.







There are lots of trees, plants, and flowers in the rainforest environment. Lots of animals live in these places. For example, there are insects, birds, reptiles, and mammals. It often rains and the temperature is hot. The coastal environment is where the land is next to the sea. In some places there are beaches with sand, and sometimes there are swamps and forests. The Nile Delta is an example, and so is the Red Sea.



In my city, all transportation is now more ecological. There are electric cars, but they don't have any drivers because they are driverless. I am sure that the air will be cleaner if we use electric vehicles. We also have buses that use power from hydrogen gas. From what I know, hydrogen vehicles don't produce any dangerous gases. They only produce warm air and water vapor. You can ride your bike all around the city on the bike paths.



A blog is a special kind of website. It usually belongs to one person who posts information there regularly for others to read. There are blogs about many different topics like sports or cooking.
A vlog is similar to a blog because it is a personal website where people post information for others. The difference is that on a vlog, people post videos they make instead of written texts.





Part 4

Answer Key

- The set Book
- Final Revision
- Revision Tests

Answer Key

Part 1 The set Book

Unit (7)

Lesson 1

1 Read and complete the text:
1- metropolitan 2- densely 3- buildings

2 Read and complete the text:
1- environment 2- survive 3- continent

3 Read and complete the dialogue:
1- environments 2- urban 3- coastal

4 Choose the correct word:
1- rainforest 2- mountainous
3- coastal 4- urban
5- desert 6- polar
7- rural 8- continent
9- sparsely populated 10- swamps
11- survive 12- densely populated

5 Read and answer the questions:
1- coastal 2- rain 3- Next to the sea.
4- It often rains and the temperature is hot.

6 Order the words:
1- It often rains in the rainforest environment.
2- The rural environment is sparsely populated.
3- What environment do you live in?
4- It is very dry in the desert.
5- Desert can be hot or cold.
6- The urban environment is densely populated.

6 Write a paragraph of (40) words:
I live in the coastal environment. It has many beaches with sand and sometimes there are swamps and forests. I like my environment, but sometimes it is too cold in winter. In my environment there are lots of plants and animals. I like it very much.

Lesson 2

1 Read and complete the text:
1- picking 2- wearing 3- putting

2 Choose the correct answer: (Vocab)
1- Water pollution 2- Carbon dioxide
3- Climate change 4- Fuel 5- Air pollution
6- cleaning 7- listening

3 Choose the correct word: (Grammar)
1- am 2- is 3- are
4- is 5- are 6- is
7- talking 8- is happening
9- trying 10- is
11- is throwing 12- finding
13- is calling 14- doing
15- Are 16- is raining

4 Write in the present continuous:
1- I am walking to school.
2- He's waiting for the bus.
3- I am using recycled plastic.
4- We are learning about climate change.
5- They are driving an electric car at the moment.
6- Hana is watching a TV program today.
7- I am reading an article about the environment.
8- Tarek is listening to a podcast now.

5 Order the words:
1. We burn fuel to make heat.
2. Carbon dioxide can be dangerous.
3. Sarah is walking to school today.
4. Hana is watching a TV program.
5. Adel is waiting for the bus.
6. What are you doing now?
7. She is collecting plastic bags.
8. Is she listening to a podcast ?

6 Write an email:
From: malak@yahoo.com
To: manar@school.com
Subject: the podcast I listened to yesterday
Dear Manar,
How are you? I want to tell you about the podcast I listened to yesterday. It was about pollution. Pollution can damage the environment. Air pollution is caused by the things that people do, such as driving cars and trucks, or making things in factories. Air pollution is dangerous. To solve this problem, we can walk, cycle or use public transportation instead of using cars. See you soon.
Yours,
Malak



1 Read and complete the text:
1- fuels 2- burned 3- remains



2 Read and complete the text:
1- fossil 2- Renewable 3- tidal

3 Choose the correct word:
1- fossil fuels 2- non-renewable 3- solar
4- pollution 5- released 6- tidal
7- resources 8- geothermal 9- renewable
10- wind energy 11- machine to make energy
12- make 13- up and down 14- keep
15- the level of the sea gets higher or lower.

4 Read and answer the questions:
1- solar 2- turbines
3- There are large farms with lots of solar panels that can make clean electricity.
4- We can use tidal energy from the moving water to make electricity.

5 Order to make correct sentences:
1- The renewable energy doesn't make pollution.
2- A coastal environment can get a lot of wind.
3- What are fossil fuels made from?
4- Wind and wave turbines work by movement.
5- Fossil fuels are burned in factories.

6 Read and choose, a, b, or c:
1- (b) 2- (c) 3- (a) 4- (c)

7 Write an email:
From: esraa@yahoo.com
To: manar@school.net
Subject: renewable and non-renewable energy
Dear Manar,
How are you? There are many types of environments in our country, and we can use different natural resources in different places. For example, in the desert, there are large farms with lots of solar panels that can make clean electricity. A coastal environment can get a lot of wind, so some places have a lot of wind turbines in the sea, close to the coast. In some places, we can use tidal energy from the moving water to make electricity. We also use some non-renewable energies like oil, gas and coal. But renewable energies are much better.
See you soon.
Yours,
Esraa

Lesson 4

1 Read and complete the text:
1- Hydroelectricity 2- electricity
3- waterwheels

2 Read and complete the text:
1- springs 2- underground
3- electricity

3 Read and complete the dialogue:
1- Aswan 2- finish 3- electricity

4 Choose the correct word:
1- country 2- springs
3- volcanoes 4- steam
5- hydroelectricity 6- generator
7- location 8- flooding

5 Order to make correct sentences:
1- Iceland has more than 600 hot springs.
2- There is a lot of hot water underground.
3- We can use hydroelectricity to generate electricity.
4- The High Dam was finished in 1971.
5- The dam has twelve large turbines.

6 Read and answer the questions:
1- hydroelectricity
2- five
3- They are 73 kilometers.
4- It is used for an industrial metal plant.

7 Write a paragraph:
The High Dam
Aswan is a beautiful city. It has a very big dam, which is the High Dam. It uses water from the Nile to generate electricity. The Dam has twelve large turbines inside. It means using the energy form moving water to move turbines and generate electricity. The dam is very important because it generates more than 10 billion kilowatt hours of electricity a year.

Lessons 5 6

1 Read and complete the conversation:
1- I disagree 2- I'm not sure 3- I agree

2 Choose the correct word:
1- plant 2- planet 3- protect 4- absorb
5- heart 6- off 7- garbage 8- waste

3 Complete the dialogue with:
1- environment 2- renewable 3- plant

4 Write the numbers:
a- 10.000 (2) b- 1.000.000 (4)
c- 100. 000.000 (6) d- 1000 (1)
e- 1.000.000.000 (7) f- 100.000 (3)
g- 10. 000. 000 (5)

5 Order the words:
1. How many trees will Egypt plant?
2. Forests can absorb carbon dioxide.
3. Forests make the air cleaner .
4. What can we do to help the environment?
5. We should plant more trees.
6. Solar energy is cleaner than fossil fuels.
7. We should use fewer fossil fuels.
8. Turn off lights and don't waste electricity.

6 Complete the dialogue:
1- recycle 2- garbage 3- electricity

7 Write a paragraph:
How can we make our town a better place?
Our town is the place we live in, so we should make it the best place. We can plant more trees to make more green spaces. We shouldn't drop garbage to keep the town clean. I think the most important thing to help is to turn off lights and not waste electricity. We shouldn't use a lot of cars. We can cycle to have less traffic. We can also build more places to play and do sports.

Unit (7) Test (1)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:
1- rural 2- quiet 3- urban
4- densely populated

2 Listen and complete:
1- environment 2- Renewable
3- natural 4- pollution

3 Read and complete the text:
1- springs 2- steam 3- turbines

4 Read and answer the questions:
1- polar 2- trees
3- Not many people live there.
4- It is cold and windy.

6 Choose the correct answer:
1- are talking 2- is 3- cooking 4- helping

7 Order to make correct sentences:
1- Why does Egypt plant a lot of trees?
2- It is important to recycle plastic.

8 Write a paragraph:
Energy
There are different kinds of energy. There is a renewable energy that doesn't run out. We can get renewable energy from the natural resources such as wind, the sun and the heat inside the Earth. These kinds of energy don't make pollution, and on the long run, they are better. On the other hand, there is a non-renewable energy like oil, coal and gas. They are harmful to the environment.

Unit (8)

Lesson 1

1 Choose the correct words:
1- celebrate 2- festival 3- prayers 4-grateful
5- sunrise 6- fairground 7- sacrifice
8- lanterns 9- pilgrimage 10- festival
11- comes up in the morning
12- goes down at night

2 Read and complete the dialogue:
1- Sham El-Nessim 2- spring 3- sunrise

3 Read and complete the text:
1- prayers 2- feast 3- pilgrimage

4 Read and complete the text:
1- lantern 2- electric 3- bright

5 Order the words:
1. I love celebrating Sham El-Nessim with my family.
2. People paint and decorate eggs at Sham El-Nessim.
3. Eid Al-Adha is an important Islamic festival.
4. Muslims go to the Hajj pilgrimage in Zu Elhijja.
5. How do you make a lantern for Ramadan?

6 Write a paragraph:
My favorite festival
My favorite festival is Sham El-Nessim. We celebrate it for the start of spring. The weather is usually sunny and warm. We

usually wear colored clothes for the festival. Lots of people go with their families to meet friends in parks, gardens or beaches. We eat lots of nice food like the boiled eggs and salted fish.

Lesson 2

1 Read and complete the text:
1- dish 2- sauce 3- digest

2 Read and complete the dialogue:
1- dish 2- fish 3- delicious

3 Choose the correct word:
1- always 2- usually 3- sometimes 4- never
5- often 6- always eat 7- often make
8- always has 9- never has 10- easy
11- easily 12- good 13- well 14- carefully
15. careful 16. dish 17. recipe 18. meals

4 Read and answer the questions:
1- evening 2- fatta 3- Fatta 4- Kunafa

5 Order the words:
1- You have different meals in your cook book.
2- How does her Grandma get recipes?
3- Bread was important in ancient Egypt.
4- What would you like to make?
5- We always eat beans with bread.

6 Write a paragraph:

What I have for breakfast

My favorite dish for breakfast is Ful Medames. It is a common dish in Egypt. This dish uses beans cooked with lemon juice, garlic, onion, and herbs. We always eat it with bread. I usually eat it with salad and cheese. Ful Medames never has any meat in it. It is so delicious.

Lesson 3

1 Choose the correct word:
1- comes up 2- wears 3- wake up
4- is celebrating 5- visit 6- eat
7- takes 8- goes 9- doesn't 10- don't
11- use 12- eat 13- Does 14- Do
15- are getting 16- makes 17- travel
18- is 19- is helping 20- play

2 Complete the text:
1- is wearing 2- wears 3- is 4- is celebrating
5- is helping 6- eat 7- are making

3 Read and choose the correct answer:
1- is helping him 2- works
3- Are you waiting 4- have
5- Does your aunt Salwa speak
6- usually wear 7- am wearing
8- do you usually wear

4 Order the words:
1. The galabeya has long sleeves.
2. Sandals are a type of shoe.
3. What are they wearing now?
4. White is a good color to wear in hot weather.
5. Hana is wearing a blue dress.
6. What do you wear on special days?

5 Complete the text:
1- lives 2- is celebrating
3- is wearing 4- goes
5- are sitting 6- is giving
7- is carrying 8- makes 9- give

6 Write an email:

From: hana@gmail.com
To: laura@yahoo.com
Subject: the traditional clothes in my country

Dear Laura,

How are you? There are many traditional clothes in our country. In some parts of Egypt, it is traditional for men and women to wear the galabeya, which is long and loose, with long sleeves. In some cities, men and women often wear more modern clothes, such as trousers and shirts, or dresses and skirts, too. My favorite clothes are a dress and new shoes. I like to wear them on special days like Eid Al-Fitr. It is important to look beautiful. See you soon.

Yours,
Hana



Lesson 4

1 Read and complete the text:
1- temples 2- statues 3- Festival

2 Read and complete the dialogue:
1- visit 2- Pyramids 3- Temple

3 Choose the correct word:
1- sights 2- Visitors 3- invited
4- generous 5- guests 6- statue
7- for 8- Temples
9- hosts 10- dark



4 Read and answer the questions:

1- food 2- Giza

3- They like to learn about Egyptian traditions.

4- They are famous for welcoming visitors with food and drink, and for inviting guests to their home.

5 Order the words:

1- Egypt is a fantastic country to visit.

2- There is so much to see.

3- You can meet friendly people in Egypt.

4- Visitors like to learn about Egyptian traditions.

5- Egyptian people are famous for welcoming visitors.

6- Some Egyptian festivals have traditional food.

7- There are four statues inside the temple.

8- The sun never shines on the statue of Ptah.

6 Write a tourist brochure:

Hello. Egypt is a fantastic country to visit. There is so much to see, such as the pyramids of Giza, the old Luxor Temple, the Red Sea and the River Nile. You can see amazing sights, eat delicious food, and meet friendly people. You can have traditional food and enjoy some Egyptian festivals, too. Eid Al-Fitr is one of them. At Eid Al-Fitr, people eat special cookies called kahk and do lots of happy things.

Lessons 5 6

1 Read and complete the text:

1- sailor 2- storm 3- island

2 Choose the correct answer:

1. sank 2. sailor 3. island
4. patient 5. successful 6. tale
7. wrecked 8. journey 9. servant
10. frightened

3 Order the words:

1. How did you get to this island?
2. The man traveled with many other sailors.
3. Why was the important man worried?
4. I went on a journey for the King.
5. How long was the servant on the island?
6. I will send you many presents.
7. What is the moral of the story?

4 Read and complete the table:

Setting: an island in the sea

A plot: a servant goes on a journey, but he is shipwrecked and meets a strange snake

Conflict: the servant wants to go home but he can't

Resolution: He is now safe

5 Choose and make into a story:

Omar and Noha are a brother and sister. Every year, they celebrate Sham El-Nessim. Sham El-Nessim is an important festival. It is for the start of spring. Lots of people go with their families to meet their friends in parks, gardens or beaches. People eat colored eggs and salted fish to celebrate. Last Sham El-Nessim, Omar and Noha wanted to decorate eggs, but they were very sad, because they didn't have any paint. Luckily, some of their friends in the park had more paint. They took it and were happy at the end.

6 Write an email:

From: youssef@school.net
To: younes@hotmail.com
Subject: the story I read in the library

Dear Younes,

How are you? I want to tell you about the story I read in the library last week. The title of the story is the tale of the shipwrecked sailor. It was about a King who asked an important man to leave Egypt for a special job. The man traveled with many other sailors, but he wasn't successful. My favorite character in it was the servant. He was a sailor too. You should read it. The story was interesting. See you soon.

Yours,
Youssef

Unit (8) Test (2)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

1- Aswan 2- twice
3- four 4- February

2 Listen and complete:

1- traditional 2- chicken
3- generous 4- food

3 Read and complete the dialogue:
1- share 2- recipes 3- delicious

4 Read and answer the questions:
1- four 2- sheep 3- Meat and fatta.
4- People wear their best clothes.

6 Choose the correct answer:
1- wear 2- am talking
3- celebrates 4- eat

7 Order the words:
1- Ancient Egyptians often wore beautiful jewelry.
2- What are you doing now, Heba?

8 Write an email:
From: ahmed@hotmail.com
To: tom@yahoo.com
Subject: Eid Al-Adha
Dear Tom,
How are you? I want to tell you about Eid Al-Adha in Egypt. Eid Al-Adha is a very important Islamic festival. It usually lasts for four days. It celebrates the time when Ibrahim (peace be upon him) listened to God in a dream. Eid Al-Adha is during the month of Zu Elhijja when Muslims go to the Hajj pilgrimage. During Eid Al-Adha, we go to the mosque for prayers and we are grateful for all the good things in our lives. We wear our best clothes for the celebrations and we visit our family and friends. We give each other presents and we have a feast together. At Eid Al-Adha, many people sacrifice a sheep and eat some of its meat in a traditional dish called fatta. Write to me you soon.
Yours,
Ahmed

Unit (9)

Lesson 1

1 Read and complete the text:
1- heritage 2- traditions 3- objects

2 Read and complete the dialogue:
1- heritage 2- Nile 3- fertile

3 Choose the correct word:
1. heritage 2. past 3. exploring
4. flood 5. connected 6. harvesting
7. calendar 8. civilization 9. museums
10. Archaeologists

4 Read and complete the text:
1- flooded 2- June to September
3- growing 4- October to February
5- crops 6- March to May

5 Read the text and then answer:
1- temples 2- calendars
3- Because it is a part of a country's identity.
4- Heritage includes art, buildings and objects from the past, or things like food, music and dancing.

6 Order the words:
1. I'm very interested in Egypt's heritage.
2. What do farmers grow in Egypt?
3. I like visiting museums with my parents.
4. Ancient Egyptians developed a system of writing.
5. Which sites would you like to visit?
6. The farming seasons were connected to the Nile.

7 Write an email:
From: adel@school.net
To: jack@hotmail.com
Subject: Egypt's heritage
Dear Jack,
How are you? All countries have their own heritage, and it comes from its history and traditions. People in ancient Egypt built many amazing temples and monuments, and this is an important part of our heritage. I'm very interested in Egypt's heritage and I enjoy learning about it. I visit museums with my parents to learn about the things people did in the past. Agriculture is an important part of Egypt's heritage, too. The Nile used to flood every year, making the soil more fertile. This is why ancient Egyptians could farm the land and it led to a growth in civilization. Write to me soon.
Yours,
Adel

Lesson 2

1 Read and complete the text:
1- box 2- counters 3- first

Answer Key

2 Read and complete the text:

1- museum 2- artifacts 3- ordinary

3 Choose the correct word:

1- grew 2- enjoyed 3- learned
4- came 5- played 6- didn't
7- do 8- go 9- Did
10- help 11- see 12- were
13- was 14- was 15- were
16- were 17- was 18- visiting
19- wearing 20- were digging
21- was studying 22- was making
23- found 24- stopped 25- were taking

4 Read and complete the text:

1- were looking 2- was reading
3- learned 4- found
5- turned on 6- saw 7- was wearing
8- was sitting 9- was playing

5 Read and choose the correct word:

1. The box had beautiful pictures on the side.
2. Sara was in the museum with her dad.
3. What did Sara see in the museum?
4. It looks like an old senet game.
5. Senet is the world's oldest board game.

6 Complete the sentences:

1- First 2- Next 3- Then 4- Finally

7 Write an email:

From: reem@yahoo.com
To: sarah@gmail.com
Subject: my visit to the museum
Dear Sarah,

How are you? I want to tell you about my visit to the museum last week. I went to the museum with my family. There were lots of very old things. I stopped in front of a long wooden box. It was the senet game. Senet is the world's oldest board game. Lots of people used to play senet in Ancient Egypt. We enjoyed our time there. Everything was interesting. See you soon.

Yours,
Reem

Lesson 3

1 Read and complete the text:

1- clay 2- food 3- oil

2 Read and complete the text:

1- tombs 2- Builders 3- stone

3 Read and complete the dialogue:

1- cruise 2- Luxor 3- Temple

4 Choose the correct answer:

1. sites 2. archaeologists
3. clay 4. vases 5. perfume
6. tombs 7. Roman Theatre
8. cruise 9. Valley of the Kings
10. buried

5 Order the words:

1. The Pyramids and the Sphinx are in Giza.
2. How do many tourists travel to Luxor?
3. Saqqara is one of the biggest sites in Egypt.
4. Many tourists visit Luxor from a Nile River cruise.
5. Where can you see engravings?
6. What would you like to visit?

6 Write a paragraph:

Alexandria

Alexandria is one of the biggest cities in Egypt. I live in Alexandria. It used to be the capital city of Egypt. There are lots of things to see in this port city, including a Roman theater, the old town, and Qaitbay citadel. It had the first library of Alexandria, which is famous all over the world. I love my city Alexandria very much.

Lesson 4

1 Read and complete the text:

1- Day 2- design 3- show
4- exhibition 5- bar chart

2 Read and complete the dialogue:

1- project 2- design 3- games

3 Read again and complete:

1- horizontal - x-axis
2- vertical - y-axis

4 Order the words:

1. Adam was doing his school project.
2. What do you have to do?
3. What are you going to put in your museum?
4. Which exhibition had the most visitors?



5 Write an email:

From: adam@gmail.com
To: amgad@school.net
Subject: my school project
Dear Amgad,

How are you? I want to tell you about my school project about the International Museum Day. I am doing my school project with my friends. We have to design a new museum and say what is in it. There are many different exhibitions that show different things. We have to show which the most popular exhibition is. We are going to put a room about art, and one about games in our museum. See you soon.

Yours,
Adam

Lessons 5 6

1 Read and complete the text:

1- boat 2- tomb 3- ancient

2 Read and complete the dialogue:

1- statue 2- old 3- limestone

3 Order the words:

1. What is it made of?
2. This mask has traveled to other countries.
3. Where is the statue from?
4. How old is the mask?
5. This is the largest statue in Egypt.
6. Which artifact is the oldest?

4 Write a report:

Archaeologists were working in the desert when they found an amazing site.
This is a very old city and nobody knew it was there. They found it yesterday. It is in Giza. They found lots of artifacts and statues. It will be a treasure for our country. Tourists will come to see it soon.

5 Write a paragraph:

Pharaoh Khufu's solar boat

Pharaoh Khufu's solar boat is an amazing boat. Archaeologists found it in King Khufu's tomb. It is a bout 4,600 years old. It's made of wood. It is very big. It is 42 meters long. It is located in Giza. Egyptians and tourists like to visit it. It is a great discovery.

Unit (9) Test (3)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

1- monuments 2- cruise
3- buried 4- engravings

2 Listen and complete:

1- Agriculture 2- flood
3- seasons 4- Nile

3 Read and complete the text:

1- Archaeologists 2- monuments
3- civilizations

4 Read and answer the questions:

1- heritage 2- museums
3- They learned by exploring historical sites at places like Abu Simbel, Luxor and Giza.
4- They developed a system of writing.

6 Choose the correct answer:

1- decorated 2- was
3- drinking 4- were exploring

7 Order to make correct sentences:

1- You can see engravings in the temples.
2- Which library is famous all over the world?

8 Write a paragraph:

Tutankhamun's mask

Tutankhamun tomb is very famous. It is in Luxor in the Valley of the Kings. Archaeologists found his amazing mask in his tomb. Tutankhamen's mask is made of gold. It is over 3,000 years old. It is very big. It is 54 cm tall. Luxor has a lot of monuments. Egyptians and tourists like to visit Luxor.

Unit (10)

Lesson 1

1 Read and complete the text:

1- communication 2- signals 3- electronic

2 Read and complete the dialogue:

1- messages 2- birds 3- technology

3 Choose the correct answer:

1. electronic devices 2. vlog
3. blog 4. email 5. website
6. presentation 7. electronic device
8. communication

4 Read the following text:

1- messages 2- account

3- They used smoke signals or birds to send messages to each other.

4- Today, people use technology like electronic devices to help us send messages.

5 Order the words:

1. Why do people give presentations?
2. We use electronic devices to send messages.
3. Where can you send an instant message?
4. A blog is a special kind of website.
5. How can people access websites?

6 Write a paragraph:

The means of communication I use

There are different kinds of communications on the internet. They are Facebook, Twitter, Instagram, WhatsApp and Telegram. Each one of us uses the means that he likes.

For me, I use Facebook to share my posts and see my friends' posts daily. I also use Instagram to share my photos with my friends. And of course I use WhatsApp to send messages to my friends.

Lesson 2

1 Read and complete the text:

1- backpack 2- adventure 3- newspaper

2 Choose the correct answer: (Vocab)

1. writer 2. Touch typing 3. feet
4. break 5. hand

3 Complete the conversation:

1- should 2- should 3- should
4- shouldn't 5- should 6- shouldn't

4 Choose the correct answer: (Structure)

1- should 2- should 3- shouldn't
4- should 5- shouldn't 6- shouldn't

5 What you should and shouldn't do:

1- shouldn't 2- should
3- should 4- should
5- shouldn't 6- should
7- should 8- shouldn't
9- shouldn't 10- should

6 Order the words:

1- You should choose a title for your story.
2- You shouldn't copy another person's work.
3- You should check your spelling and grammar.
4- You should ask a friend to read your story.
5- You shouldn't write your story by hand.
6- You should put your story on the school website.

7 Write an email:

From: rania@yahoo.com
To: radwa@yahoo.com
Subject: how to write a story

Dear Radwa,

How are you? I want to tell you how to write a story. You shouldn't write your story by hand. You should use a writing program. You should try to touch type. You should check your spelling. You shouldn't have any spelling or grammar mistakes. You should ask a grown-up to check the spelling and grammar for you. You should check your work. You shouldn't forget the punctuation. You should ask a friend to read your story before you publish it. See you soon.

Yours,
Rania

Lesson 3

1 Read and complete the text:

1- set 2- signed 3- comments

2 Read and complete the dialogue:

1- account 2- online 3- hobby

3 Read and complete the text:

1- social media 2- photos 3- private
4- comments 5- video 6- posted

4 Order the words:

1- He talked about his favorite hobby.
2- What do you use for your account?
3- Someone made fun of Youssef's clothes.
4- Can I get a social media account?
5- Only your friends can see your videos.
6- Do you think social media is bad?
7- We need to make your page private.

5 Write a text of (50) words:

Social Media

Social media plays an important role in our life. There are different types of social Media like Facebook, Instagram, YouTube, WhatsApp and Twitter.
They have good things and bad things. You can share your photos and write your opinions freely, but you may have bad comments. You can make your page private. So social media is good only if we use it well.

Lesson 4

1 Read and complete the text:

1- reports 2- projects 3- club

2 Choose the correct answer:

1. but 2. or 3. and 4. but
5. and 6. and 7. or 8. or

3 Circle the correct answer:

1- or 2- ? 3- at
4- but 5- , 6- and

4 Write the missing mark or word:

1- in - ? 2- , - , 3- or - ?
4- at - in - . 5- but - .

5 Read the letter and answer:

1- He wants to open a social media account for the fourth grade students.
2- They write about life in the fourth grade.
3- Create games, puzzles, and art work.
4- He likes to contact fourth-grade students in different countries.
5- They would learn about different cultures and how to use the internet safely.

6 Order the words:

1. I like to write short stories and reports.
2. Amira writes for her projects and for fun.
3. My friends are interested in writing.
4. Amira is in the fourth grade.
5. I don't have any free time today.
6. She likes poetry and fiction.

7 Write a letter to the editor:

Dear Editor,
I am writing because I think that the school should create a new club to join with my classmates.
Don't you think this is a good idea?
As a fourth-grade student, I like to play football at the club to be fit and for fun. There are lots of other clubs like the games club, the science club and the cooking club, currently, there is no club for doing sports and it is so important for us to be fit. Don't you agree?
Sincerely yours,
Malak Ehab
4th grade

Lessons 5 6

1 Read and complete the text:

1- health 2- airplanes 3- fossil

2 Read and complete the dialogue:

1- pollution 2- power plants 3- burn

3 Choose the correct answer:

1. invented 2. Air 3. pollution
4. factories 5. towers 6. Greening
7. summer 8. absorb 9. shade
10. oxygen 11. warm

4 Read and answer the questions:

1- It is created by airplanes, traffic, factories and power plants. When we burn fossil fuels and use strong chemicals.
2- They help to clean gases and pollution produced by factories and industry.
3- Greening is growing a wall of plants on the side of a building.
4- The plants absorb carbon dioxide and they produce oxygen. They also catch dust and other harmful pollution.
5- In hot countries, the green walls provide shade and help to cool the air. The cool air stops the buildings from getting too hot in summer.
6- The plants provide homes for bees, insects and birds.

5 Make a presentation to your class:

A new social media platform for kids

Good morning, everyone. Today I'm going to talk about a new social media platform for kids. It is called "YouTube kids".
The users of this platform will be over 13 years old. Let's start with the topics for this platform. We will talk about how to be a good student in the school. All videos will be about good students. We will share pictures about this topic. There will be a



short time for games and competitions.
Now, let's look at the rules. You should be over thirteen years. Your parents should accept the rules of the platform.
To finish "YouTube Kids" is a new social media platform and it will be interesting.
Thank you very much.
Are there any questions?

Unit (10) Test (4)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:
1- devices 2- private 3- email 4- account

2 Listen and complete:
1- reports 2- projects 3- interested 4- club

3 Read and complete the dialogue:
1- story 2- touch type 3- publish

4 Read and answer the questions:
1- one person 2- website
3- A blog is a special kind of website. It usually belongs to one person.
4- A blog belongs to one person who posts information for others to read.
On a vlog, people post videos they make instead of written texts.

6 Choose the correct answer:
1- should 2- but 3- speak 4- or

7 Order to make correct sentences:
1-What problems does air pollution cause?
2- You shouldn't write your story by hand.

8 Write an email:
From: hany@school.net
To: ramy@hotmail.com
Subject: using social media
Dear Ramy,
How are you? I want to tell you my opinion about using social media..
I bought a new smartphone yesterday.
It is so important for me. I use it for calling my friends and my family.
There are different kinds of social media that I can use. I can use Facebook to write my opinions and share photos. I can also use WhatsApp for chatting.
There are lots of good things on my phone.
The only bad thing is that it wastes much of my time. See you soon.
Yours,
Hany

Unit (11)

Lesson 1

1 Read and complete the dialogue:
1- bus 2- traffic jam 3- trip

2 Read and complete the text:
1- transportation 2- traffic 3- destination

3 Read and answer the questions:
1- four 2- traffic jam
3- It takes about an hour.
4- Because my school is too far to walk to.

4 Choose the correct word:
1- public 2- jam 3- trip 4- light 5- destination 6- on 7- by 8- in
9- on 10- on 11- by 12- by

5 Order to make correct sentences:
1- Cities are exciting places to live.
2- Do you go to school by car?
3- The trip to school takes an hour.
4- Do you get to school on time?
5- I can't make the trip on foot.

6 Write an email:
From: walid@school.net
To: wael@yahoo.com
Subject: the traffic in the neighborhood
Dear Wael,
How are you? I love my city but every morning we have to sit in a traffic jam on my way to school. The cars and buses stop, and we can't move. The trip to school sometimes takes us an hour! The traffic lights are often red and that makes the traffic even worse. We leave home very early, so I can make it to school on time. I can't make the trip on foot because my school is too far to walk to. What about the traffic in your neighborhood? Write to me soon.
Yours,
Walid

Lesson 2

1 Read and complete the dialogue:
1- environment 2- green 3- parks

2 Choose the correct answer:
1- recycling bins 2- Green spaces
3- residents 4- reduce 5- garbage
6- reuse 7- recycle 8- volunteers

3 Choose the correct negative form:
1- unhealthy 2- dislike
3- disconnect 4- unfriendly
5- unhappy 6- disagree
7- unpopular 8- dishonest

4 Choose the correct word: (Grammar)
1-strong 2- healthier 3- the most
4- heavier than 5- bigger 6- more
7- less 8- the most 9- the least 10- better
11- more expensive 12- greenest
13- worst 14- the best 15- cleaner

5 Order to make correct sentences:
1- Cairo is busier than Damietta.
2- The Sahara desert is the biggest in the world.
3- A gold medal is better than a silver medal.
4- Solar energy is more ecological than fossil fuels.
5- Tutankhamun is the most famous pharaoh in the world.

6 Write an email:
From: ali@yahoo.com
To: ahmed@gmail.com
Subject: keeping our environment clean
Dear Ahmed,

How are you? I want to tell you what you have learned to keep your environment clean. I learned a lot about creating a cleaner environment. It's important to have green spaces in a city. The air is cleaner there. People are happier when they have green spaces. So, we need more parks and trees in our cities. If we need to water these green spaces, we can recycle water. One of the best things we can do is to use recycling bins for our glass, paper, plastic, and metal. And I learned that in some places, people volunteer to pick up garbage in parks. See you soon.

Yours,
Ali

Lesson 3

1 Read and complete the text:
1- boats 2- wagons 3- goods

2 Read and complete the dialogue:
1- gasoline 2- electric 3- solar

3 Choose the correct answer:
1. animals 2. airplane 3. subway
4. carts 5. wagons 6. boats
7. canoes 8. train 9. rocket
10. streetcar 11. airplanes

4 Order to make correct sentences:
1- Ships with steam engine could travel faster.
2- The first steam train was in Wales.
3- The subway in London opened in 1863.
4- People are developing cleaner forms of transportation.
5- Engineers are designing greener airplanes and ships.
6- There are electric buses that use solar energy.

5 Read and answer the questions:
1- Because all the major cities were along the River Nile. 2- Papyrus and rope.
3- It was used for traveling short distances.
4- From wood. 5- To catch the wind.
6- To make the boats move and control the direction.

Lesson 4

1 Read and complete the text:
1- electricity 2- solar 3- fossil

2 Read and complete the text:
1- green spaces 2- trees
3- solar panels 4- recycling bins
5- bike paths 6- residents
7- traffic jams 8- transportation

3 Choose the correct answer:
1. roof 2. canal 3. gas
4. waterway 5. louder 6. water vapor

4 Order the words:
1. Parks are important for everyone.
2. The new homes have solar panels on their roofs.
3. There are palm trees around the houses.
4. Solar energy is better than burning fossil fuels.
5. It's very important to protect our waterways.
6. The air will be cleaner if we use electric vehicles.
7. Hydrogen vehicles produce warm air and water vapor.
8. You can ride your bike on the bike paths.

5 Read and answer the questions:

1- Nile River 2- roofs

3- The electricity comes from a solar energy farm in the desert.

4- They help houses to stay cooler.

6 Write a paragraph:

My Ideal city

My city is located on the sea. There are new buildings, schools, hospitals and parks. I believe that parks are important for everyone. There are recycling bins in the parks and streets, so people can recycle their plastic bottles.

All the electricity in my city comes from a wind energy farm next to the sea.

Lessons 5 6

1 Read and complete the dialogue:

1- advantages 2- underground 3-expensive

2 Choose the correct answer:

1. streetcar 2. disadvantage 3. cab
4. subway 5. ferry 6. advantage

3 Order the words:

1. How do you get to school every day?
2. You can travel on water by ferry.
3. I go to school by car.
4. She gets exercise on the way to school.
5. Which types of transport do you use?

4 Write an email:

From: nour@yahoo.com
To: malak@hotmail.com
Subject: the types of transportation

Dear Malak,

How are you? I want to tell you about the types of transportation that people use in our country. People can use a car, a cap, a train, a subway and an airplane for long distances. All this transportation is now more ecological. There are electric cabs, but they don't have any drivers. I am sure that the air will be cleaner if we use electric vehicles. We also have buses that use power from hydrogen gas. I like the subway because it is fast and comfortable. My city is wonderful. See you soon.

Yours,
Nour

Unit (11) Test (5)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

1- jam 2- trip 3- worse 4- on foot

2 Listen and complete:

1- gasoline 2- environment
3- transportation 4- greener

3 Read and complete the dialogue:

1- environment 2- spaces 3- paths

4 Read and answer the questions:

1 - ecological 2- drivers

3- Warm air and water vapor.

4- We can ride bikes all around the city on the bike paths.

6 Choose the correct answer:

1- larger 2- more 3- happiest 4- the least

7 Order to make correct sentences:

1- What animals do people use for transportation?

2- The ferry can carry a lot of people.

8 Write a paragraph:

There are different forms of transportation in my city. I go to school by bus. I like it because I see my classmates every day. My sister goes to school on foot because her school is next to our house. My mother goes to work by taxi. My father goes to work in his car.

Unit (12)

Lesson 1

1 Read and complete the text:

1- erosion 2- drought
3- water shortage 4- flood 5- landslide

2 Read and complete the dialogue:

1- drought 2- affect 3- shortage

3 Choose the correct answer

1. Erosion 2. currents 3. erode
4. fossil fuels 5. Climate
6. dry 7. Farmers 8. shortage

4 Order the words:

1- The waves in the sea can erode beaches.
2- How can erosion affect humans?
3- Burning fossil fuels results in climate change.
4- What can we do to slow down erosion?

5- Climate change causes sea levels to rise.

Lesson 2

1 Read and complete the text:
1- ecofriendly 2- electric 3- environment

2 Read and complete the dialogue:
1- shortage 2- washing 3- reuse

3 Read and complete the text:
1- plant 2- will be 3- are
4- will look 5- live 6- will feel

4 Choose the correct word:
1- use / will be 2- will exercise / have
3- melt / will rise 4- won't help / use
5- rains / will be 6- won't use / cares
7- does not rain / won't have
8- rise / will be 9- won't save / burn
10- will be / don't use 11- cut / will get

5 Choose the correct word:
1- will win 2- will help 3- will play
4- will go 5- cause 6- won't 7- won't
8- will 9- come 10- buy 11- Will 12- want
13- goes 14- will save 15- will help
16- don't throw 17- won't get up
18- doesn't come 19- Will 20- has
21- be 22- wins

6 Order the words:
1. The drought will cause a water shortage.
2. Will you go shopping this afternoon?
3. I won't go to the beach on Friday.
4. Will Tarek buy an electric car?
5. If it rains a lot, there will be a flood.

7 Write an email:
From: adel@hotmail.com
To: omar@school.net
Subject: a project to help the environment
Dear Omar,
How are you? I want to tell you about a project I want to do to help the environment. We can help the environment by planting trees. If we plant more trees in our cities, the air will be cleaner. Planting trees can make the air, the streets and the buildings cool. We should also create more green spaces. See you soon.
Yours,
Adel

Lesson 3

1 Read and complete the text:
1- affects 2- plans 3- climate

2 Choose the correct answer:
1. pact 2. conference 3. party
4. treaty 5. headline 6. lead-in
7. caption 8. body

3 Choose the correct answer:
1- but 2- and 3- or 4- so 5- so 6- and
7- or 8- but 9- and 10- but 11- or 12- so
13- and 14- so 15- but 16- or 17- so
18- and 19- but 20- and

Lessons 4 5 6

1 Read and complete the text:
1- chickpeas 2- dessert 3- dish

2 Read and complete the dialogue:
1- healthier 2- environment 3- remember

3 Read and complete the dialogue:
1- eating 2- main course 3- dessert

4 Order the words:
1. Which foods come from plants?
2. Which foods do you often eat?
3. What is your favorite food?
4. What are the best Egyptian dishes?
5. Which food comes from Egypt?
6. How can we shop more responsibly?
7. How can countries work to reduce climate change?

5 Write an email:
From: jana@gmail.com
To: huda@gmail.com
Subject: my favorite meal
Dear Huda,
How are you? I want to tell you about my favorite meal. My favorite meal is koshari. It's made with rice, lentils, chickpeas, pasta, tomatoes, and onions. It's healthier than a burger. We can have it with salad. We can buy it from a restaurant. We can also make it at home. My favorite dessert is ice cream. I think koshari is a wonderful dish. See you soon.
Yours,
Jana

Answer Key

Unit (12) Test (6)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:
1- slow 2- plans 3- recycle 4- Conference

2 Listen and complete:
1- Drought 2- dry 3- danger 4-water shortage

3 Read and complete the text:
1- agreement 2- global
3- greenhouse gases

4 Read and answer the questions:
1- erode 2- climate change
3- When rock and soil is moved from one place to another by water, wind, or flows.
4- By heavy agriculture and burning fossil fuels.

6 Choose the correct answer:
1- so 2- will reduce 3- go 4- writes

7 Order to make correct sentences:
1- What did the leaders agree to do?
2- We need to slow down climate change.

8 Write a paragraph:

Global warming

Global warming is a very serious problem that the whole world faces. It's the rising of the temperature of Earth. This causes very dangerous problems like ice melting, forest fires, erosion, drought and food shortage. We should find a solution to this problem and we can do this by reducing the emission of carbon dioxide and the other bad gases into the atmosphere.

Part 2 Final Revision

Unit (7)

Unit (7) Revision

1 Read and complete the text:
1- rural 2- animals 3- sparsely

2 Read and complete the text:
1- reduce 2- transportation 3- cleaner

3 Read and complete the text:
1- desert 2- solar 3- electricity

4 Read and complete the text:
1- generate 2- location 3- dam

5 Read and complete the text:
1- Antarctic 2- windy 3- trees

6 Read and complete the text:
1- emissions 2- climate 3- atmosphere

7 Read and complete the dialogue:
1- podcast 2- air pollution 3- chemicals

8 Choose the correct:
1- mountainous 2- rural 3- rainforest
4- urban 5- desert 6- polar 7- coastal
8- sparsely populated 9- Water pollution
10- Fuel 11- Air pollution 12-Carbon dioxide
13- Climate change 14- Emissions
15-hydroelectricity 16-springs 17-volcanoes
18- non-renewable 19- Renewable energy
20- tidal energy 21- solar energy
22- wind turbines 23- off 24- thousand

9 Choose the correct:
1- is 2- is 3- are 4- is
5- are 6- are 7- am 8- is
9- heating 10- traveling 11- burning
12- are 13- Is 14- coming

10 Order the words:
1- Lots of animals live in the rainforest environment.
2- There are swamps in the coastal environment.
3- The animals find clever ways to survive.
4- Most people live in the urban environment.
5- It's difficult to travel in the mountainous environment.
6- What can I do to help the environment?

7- They are helping to stop pollution.
8- We get energy from natural renewable resources.
9- We get tidal energy from the moving water.
10- The wind or water make turbines move.
11- It's very hot under the ground.
12- Why are fossil fuels non-renewable?
13- Steam comes up and moves turbines.
14- Its electricity comes from renewable sources.
15- Forests can absorb carbon dioxide.
16- Trees are important in protecting our planet.

Unit (7) Test (1) الكتاب الأساسي

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:
1- rural 2- quiet 3- urban
4- densely populated

2 Read and complete the text:
1- springs 2- steam 3- turbines

3 Read and answer the questions:
1- polar 2- trees 3- animals
4- Not many people live there.
5- It is cold and windy.

5 Choose the correct answer:
1- are talking 2- is 3- cooking
4- helping 5- Is

6 Order to make correct sentences:
1- Why does Egypt plant a lot of trees?
2- It is important to recycle plastic.
3- We get tidal energy from moving water.

7 Write a paragraph:

Energy

There are different kinds of energy. There is a renewable energy that doesn't run out. We can get renewable energy from the natural resources such as wind, the sun and the heat inside the Earth. These kinds of energy don't make pollution, and on the long run, they are better. On the other hand, there is a non-renewable energy like oil, coal and gas. They are harmful to the environment.

Unit (7) Test (1) ملحق الكتاب

1 Listen and circle:
1- hydroelectricity 2- moving
3- waterwheels 4- electricity

2 Read and complete:
1- generate 2- flooding 3- turbines

3 Read then answer:
1- non-renewable 2- run out 3- coal
4- The remains of very old plants and animals.
5- A lot of carbon dioxide is released into the atmosphere.

5 Choose:
1- are 2- is happening 3- singing
4- Are 5- is washing

6 Order the words:
1- How many trees will Egypt plant?
2- Coal, gas and oil are fossil fuels.
3- The animals find clever ways to survive.

7 Write an email:

From: amr@yahoo.com
To: kareem@school.net
Subject: my favorite environment
Dear kareem,
I am happy to write to you this email. How are you? And how is your family? My favorite environment is the rural environment. There aren't many houses or buildings here, so this place often has more animals and plants. Not many people live in this environment. It can have lots of different kinds of weather but it's a quiet place to live. What's your favorite environment?
That's for all.
yours,
Amr

Unit (8)

Unit (8) Revision

1 Read and complete the text:
1- celebrating 2- spring 3- sunrise

2 Read and complete the text:
1- pyramids 2- Nile 3- sights

3 Read and complete the text:
1- beef 2- cooked 3- spices

4 Read and complete the text:
1- festival 2- traditional 3- decorate

5 **Read and complete the text:**
1- traditions 2- guests 3- host

6 **Read and complete the dialogue:**
1- sandals 2- leather 3- linen

7 **Choose the correct:**
1- sunrise 2- fairground 3- sacrifice
4- celebrate 5- festival 6- Sunset
7- prayers 8- grateful 9- Lanterns 10- feast
11- pilgrimage 12- hosts 13- recipe
14- dish 15- meals 16- sights 17- generous
18- Guests 19- invite 20- for

8 **Choose the correct:**
1- easy 2- easily 3- lives 4- go 5- makes
6- gives 7- doesn't 8- don't 9- play
10- wear 11- Does 12- Do 13- wears
14- are talking 15- celebrates 16- eat
17- is celebrating 18- is helping
19- eat 20- are making

9 **Order the words:**
1- The festival is for the start of spring
2- The ancient Egyptians celebrated Sham El-Nessim.
3- The weather is usually warm and sunny.
4- I always wake up at sunrise.
5- We eat nice food and play games.
6-There are fairgrounds with rides for children.
7- Eid Al-Adha lasts for four days.
8- We give out meat to our family.
9- We go to mosque for prayers.
10- Why do people make lanterns for Ramadan?
11- How do you celebrate Eid Al-Adha?
12- How does Grandma get her recipes?
13- Can you make all these recipes?
14- This dish never has any meat.
15- Fattah has layers of rice and bread.
16- Which dish doesn't have any meat?
17- Why did ancient Egyptians wear white clothes?
18- You can see amazing sights in Egypt?
19- What are you wearing today?
20- What do you wear for sports?
21- Egyptian people are famous for inviting guests.
22- People bake special cookies called kahk.
23- The man traveled with many other sailors.
24- I went on a journey for the king.
25- How did you get to this island?

10 **Write an email:**
From: amria@gmail.com
To: walaa@gmail.com
Subject: my trip
Dear walaa,
How are you? And you family? I miss you so much. I'm writing to tell you about my trip to Luxor and Aswan. I traveled to Luxor and Aswan last week. I traveled with my family by bus. Egypt is a fantastic country to visit! There is so much to see, such as the old Luxor Temple and the temples of Abu Simbel. I really enjoyed my time. See you soon.
yours,
Amrira.

Unit (8) Test (2) الكتاب الأساسي

1 **Listen and circle the correct answer:**
1- Aswan 2- twice
3- four 4- February

2 **Read and complete the dialogue:**
1- share 2- recipes 3- delicious

3 **Read and answer the questions:**
1- four 2- sheep 3- meat
4- Meat and fatta.
5- People wear their best clothes.

5 **Choose the correct answer:**
1- wear 2- am talking
3- celebrates 4- eat 5- easily

6 **Order the words:**
1- Ancient Egyptians often wore beautiful jewelry.
2- What are you doing now, Heba?
3- I always wake up at sunrise.

7 **Write an email:**
From: ahmed@hotmail.com
To: tom@yahoo.com
Subject: Eid Al-Adha
Dear Tom,
How are you? I want to tell you about Eid Al-Adha in Egypt. Eid Al-Adha is a very important Islamic festival. It usually lasts for four days. It celebrates the time when Ibrahim (peace be upon him) listened to God in a dream. Eid Al-Adha is during the month of Zu Elhijja when Muslims go to the Hajj pilgrimage. During

Eid Al-Adha, we go to the mosque for prayers and we are grateful for all the good things in our lives. We wear our best clothes for the celebrations and we visit our family and friends. We give each other presents and we have a feast together. At Eid Al-Adha, many people sacrifice a sheep and eat some of its meat in a traditional dish called fatta. Write to me you soon.

Yours,

Ahmed

Unit (8) Test (2) ملحق الكتاب

1 Listen and circle:

1- traditions 2- famous 3- present 4- host

2 Read and complete the dialogue:

1- pyramids 2- sights 3- generous

3 Read then answer:

1- family 2- spring 3- Monday

4- They celebrated it as a festival of creation and new life.

5- The weather is usually sunny and warm.

5 Choose the correct answer:

1- never 2- visit 3- often make

4- Does 5- well

6 Order the words:

1- What do you wear on special days?

2- You can meet friendly people in Egypt.

3- How did you get to this island?

7 Write a text of (50) words:

Eid Al-Adha is an Islamic festival.
It lasts for four days. At Eid Al-Adha, many people sacrifice a sheep and eat some of its meat in a traditional dish called fatta. We go to the mosque for prayers and we are grateful for all the good things in our lives. Eid Al-Adha is during the month of Zu-Elhijje when Muslims go to the Hajj pilgrimage. At Eid Al-Adha we visit our families and our friends. We give them presents too.

Unit (9)

Unit (9) Revision

1 Read and complete the text:

1- civilization 2- historical 3- museums

2 Read and complete the text:

1- Sphinx 2- Archaeologists 3- Carved

3 Read and complete the text:

1- heritage 2- flood 3- fertile

4 Read and complete the text:

1- mask 2- gold 3- valley

5 Read and complete the text:

1- capital 2- theatre 3- library

6 Choose the correct:

1- traditions 2- harvesting 3- monuments
4- developed 5- Heritage 6- historical
7- museums 8- civilizations 9- fields
10- growing 11- flooded 12- fertile
13- clay 14- flooding 15- site 16- carved
17- engravings 18- artifacts
19- tools 20- vases

7 Choose the correct:

1- used 2- wore 3- played 4- found
5- buried 6- flooded 7- made 8- didn't
9- do 10- go 11- Did 12- buy 13- see
14- was 15- were 16- were 17- was
18- was 19- were 20- were digging
21- was having 22- were writing

8 Order the words:

1- All countries have their own heritage.
2- Ancient Egyptians built amazing temples and monuments.
3- The Nile used to flood every year.
4- What would you like to visit?
5- Agriculture is an important part of Egypt's heritage.
6- There were three of farming seasons.
7- What do you have to do?
8- Farmers planted lots of different crops.
9- Heritage includes objects from the past.
10- I'm very proud of my heritage.
11- What is the Sphinx made of?
12- Farmers cut the crops and stored them.
13- Heritage comes from history and traditions.
14- My dad made me a game.
15- Which places in Egypt have a lot of agriculture?
16- The goats over a hill were waking a way.
17- Sara was in the museum with her mom.
18- They were looking at Egyptian artifacts.
19- Lots of people used to play senet.
20- We have to design a new museum.

21- There are many different exhibitions.
22- Lots of tourists visit Egypt every year.
23- Ancient Egyptians used lots of pottery.
24- They made pottery vases from clay.
25- Alexandria used to be the capital city of Egypt.

Unit (9) Test (3) الكتاب الأساسي

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:
1- monuments 2- cruise
3- buried 4- engravings

2 Read and complete the text:
1- Archaeologists 2- monuments
3- civilizations

3 Read and answer the questions:
1- heritage 2- museums 3- heritage
4- They learned by exploring historical sites at places like Abu Simbel, Luxor and Giza.
5- They developed a system of writing.

5 Choose the correct answer:
1- decorated 2- was 3- drinking
4- were exploring 2- eat

6 Order to make correct sentences:
1- You can see engravings in the temples.
2- Which library is famous all over the world?
3- Alexandria used to be the capital city of Egypt.

7 Write a paragraph:

Tutankhamun's mask

Tutankhamun tomb is very famous. It is in Luxor in the Valley of the Kings. Archaeologists found his amazing mask in his tomb. Tutankhamen's mask is made of gold. It is over 3,000 years old. It is very big. It is 54 cm tall. Luxor has a lot of monuments. Egyptians and tourists like to visit Luxor.

Unit (9) Test (3) ملحق الكتاب

1 Listen and circle:
1- Archaeologists 2- pottery
3- pots 4- clay

2 Read and complete:
1- stone 2- languages 3- Egypt

3 Read then answer:
1- four thousand 2- simpler 3- Tourists
4- Because of amazing archaeological sites.
5- tourists want to see the large monument, pyramids, and temples.

5 Choose the correct:
1- grew 2- watch 3- riding
4- were walking 5- didn't.

6 Order the words:
1- I'm interested in Egypt's heritage.
2- What do farmers grow in Egypt?
3- Senet is the world's oldest board game.

7 Write a text of (50) words:
Agriculture is an important part of Egypt's heritage. The Nile used to flood every year, making the soil more fertile. There were three seasons of farming in ancient Egypt. In the flooding season, the fields were full of water. In the growing season, farmers grow their crops. In the harvesting season, farmers cut the crops and stored them safely before the Nile flooded again. The ancient Egyptians were clever farmers.

Unit (10)

Unit (10) Revision

1 Read and complete the text:
1- digital 2- messages 3- account

2 Read and complete the text:
1- page 2- access 3- smatphones

3 Read and complete the text:
1- vlogs 2- reliable 3- material

4 Read and complete the text:
1- blog 2- information 3- texts

5 Read and complete the text:
1- signed 2- nasty 3- private

6 Read and complete the text:
1- vacuum 2- clean 3- breathe

7 Read and complete the dialogue:
1- serious 2- factories 3- fuels

8 Choose the correct:
1- vlog 2- touch type 3- presentation
4- websites 5- email 6- sign in
7- blog 8- device 9- account
10- social media 11- private 12- comments



13- posted 14- straight 15- break
16- backpack 17- newspaper
18- publish 19- signs into 20- sign up

9 Choose the correct:
1- should 2- shouldn't 3- should 4-shouldn't
5- should 6- should 7- shouldn't 8- should
9- shouldn't 10- go 11- eat 12- but 13- or
14- and 15- in 16- or 17- but 18- in

10 Order the words:
1- An instant message is a private message.
2- A website is a home page on the internet. 3- A blog belongs to one person.
4- Why do people give presentations?
5- You can ask the school to publish it.
6- What means of transportation do you use? 7- A vlog is similar to a blog.
8- How can people access websites?
9- He was working on a new story.
10- What dose Adam love to do?
11- Adam hand his notebook to his mom.
12- Do you want to read my new story?
13- We're learning how to type at school.
14- How does Youssef's mom help him?
15- His mom was in the kitchen.
16- I like to write stories and reports.
17- Do you use any social media platforms?

Unit (10) Test (4) الكتاب الأساسي

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:
1- devices 2- private 3- email 4- account

2 Read and complete the dialogue:
1- story 2- touch type 3- publish

3 Read and answer the questions:
1- one person 2- website 3- similar
4- A blog is a special kind of website. It usually belongs to one person.
5- A blog belongs to one person who posts information for others to read.
On a vlog, people post videos they make instead of written texts.

5 Choose the correct answer:
1- should 2- but 3- speak 4- or 5- shouldn't

6 Order to make correct sentences:
1-What problems does air pollution cause?
2- You shouldn't write your story by hand.
3- How does Youssef's mom help him?

7 Write an email:
From: hany@school.net
To: ramy@hotmail.com
Subject: using social media
Dear Ramy,
How are you? I want to tell you my opinion about using social media..
I bought a new smartphone yesterday. It is so important for me. I use it for calling my friends and my family.
There are different kinds of social media that I can use. I can use Facebook to write my opinions and share photos. I can also use WhatsApp for chatting.
There are lots of good things on my phone. The only bad thing is that it wastes much of my time. See you soon.
Yours,
Hany

Unit (10) Test (6) ملحق الكتاب

1 Listen and complete:
1- writer 2- four 3- stories 4- morning

2 Read and complete:
1- sign up 2- account 3- cyberfriends

3 Read then answer:
1- watching TV 2- different 3- TV
4- sports, computers, the internet, drawing, reading and collecting stamps. There also watching TV and listening to radio.
5- To know what is happening all over the world.

5 Choose the correct answer:
1- should 2- or 3- shouldn't 4- in 5- come

6 Order the words:
1- An after school club is a perfect idea.
2- What problems does air pollution cause?
3- We use electronic devices to send messages.

7 Write a text of (50) words:
The computer is an important invention. You can use it in many different fields. You can study your lessons, play games and get any information you want. You can use the internet and sign up for a social media account. On the internet we can post videos and make cyberfriends. We can learn a lot about different cultures.



Answer Key

Unit (11)

Unit (11) Revision

1 Read and complete the text:
1- traffic 2- trip 3- lights

2 Read and complete the text:
1- spaces 2- trees 3- recycle

3 Read and complete the text:
1- gasoline 2- easier 3- street cars

4 Read and complete the text:
1- burns 2- environment 3- electric

5 Read and complete the text:
1- skiff 2- papyrus 3- fishing

6 Read and complete the text:
1- electric 2- driverless 3- vehicles

7 Read and complete the text:
1- bikes 2- advantage 3- wet

8 Read and complete the text:
1- transportation 2- wagons 3- boats
4- airplanes 5- roof 6- canal
7-water vapor 8- waterway 9-green spaces
10- trees 11- solar panels 12- bins
13- bike paths 14- residents
15- traffic jams 16- transportation
17- streetcar 18- ferry 19- subway 20- cab

9 Read and complete the text:
1- by 2- on 3- by 4- on 5- by 6- on 7- to
8- In 9- than 10- oldest 11- faster
12- less difficult 13- the best
14- the most famous 15- worse 16- more
17- better than 18- smaller
19- worst 20- the least

10 Order the words:
1- Many cities have a big problem nowadays.
2- We have to sit in a traffic jam.
3- The traffic lights are often red.
4- I can't make the trip on foot.
5- We have good public transportation.
6- Are there a lot of traffic lights?
7- You must wear your seat belt.
8- Did you go to the science museum?
9- It's important to have green spaces.
10- We need more parks and trees.
11- What can residents do to help?
12- People volunteer to pick up garbage.
13- The invention of the steam engine changed transportation.
14- My city is located on the Nile River.
15- There are palm trees around the houses.
16- Solar energy is better than fossil fuels.
17- The ferry can use the new canals.
18- This is more ecological transportation now.
19- Hydrogen vehicles don't produce dangerous gases.

Unit (11) Test (5) الكتاب الأساسي

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:
1- jam 2- trip 3- worse 4- on foot

2 Read and complete the dialogue:
1- environment 2- spaces 3- paths

3 Read and answer the questions:
1- ecological 2- drivers 3- cleaner
4- Warm air and water vapor.
5- We can ride bikes all around the city on the bike paths.

5 Choose the correct answer:
1- larger 2- more 3- happiest
4- the least 5- by

6 Order to make correct sentences:
1- What animals do people use for transportation?
2- The ferry can carry a lot of people.
3- What can residents do to help?

7 Write a paragraph:
There are different forms of transportation in my city. I go to school by bus. I like it because I see my classmates every day. My sister goes to school on foot because her school is next to our house. My mother goes to work by taxi. My father goes to work in his car.

Unit (11) Test (5) ملحق الكتاب

1 Listen and circle:
1- ferry 2- ecological
3- residents 4- waterways

2 Read and complete:
1- transportation 2- continent 3- rockets

3 Read the following then answer:
1- mules 2- water 3- Farmers
4- Walking, running and swimming.
5- people used small wagons and carts.

5 Choose the correct:
1- the biggest 2- by 3- the cleverest
4- more 5- worse

6 Order the words:
1- Do you go to school on foot ?
2- It's important to protect our waterways.
3- Which types of transport do you use?

7 Write an email:
From: kaream@school.com
To: kamal@school.com
Subject: the land transportation
Dear kamal,
I am happy to send you this email. I am writing to tell you about the land transportation new. There are electric cabs but they don't have any drivers because they are driverless if we use electric vehicles, the air will be cleaner. We also have hydrogen vehicles. They don't produce any dangerous gases. They only produce warm air and water vapor.
That's all for now.
Best wishes
Kareem

Unit (12)

Unit (12) Revision

1 Read and complete the text:
1- agriculture 2- change 3- erosion

2 Read and complete the text:
1- water 2- dry 3- shortage

3 Read and complete the text:
1- shortage 2- reuse 3- showers

4 Read and complete the dialogue:
1- order 2- appetizer 3- course

5 Read and complete the text:
1- natural 2- rocks 3- flows

6 Choose the correct:
1- erosion 2- drought 3- glacier
4- atmosphere 5- flood 6- landslide
7- water shortage 8- tsunami
9- eco-friendly 10- agreement

7 Choose the correct:
1- will help 2- won't go 3- come 4- visit
5- will 6- will find 7- reuses 8- has
9- won't waste 10- will help 11- won't rain
12- will lose 13- is 14- and 15- but
16- or 17- so 18- and 19- so 20- but

8 Order the words:
1- Wind can cause to erode the land.
2- Erosion is a natural process.
3- Will you go shopping this afternoon?
4- Climate change affects our planet.
5- World leaders had an important meeting.
6- Countries agreed to start reducing greenhouse gases.
7- They decided to stop using coal.
8- We must all slow climate change.

Unit (12) Test (6) الكتاب الأساسي

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:
1- slow 2- plans 3- recycle 4- Conference

2 Read and complete the text:
1- agreement 2- global
3- greenhouse gases

3 Read and answer the questions:
1- erode 2- climate change 3- process
4- When rock and soil is moved from one place to another by water, wind, or flows.
5- By heavy agriculture and burning fossil fuels.

5 Choose the correct answer:
1- so 2- will reduce 3- go 4- writes 5- but

6 Order to make correct sentences:
1- What did the leaders agree to do?
2- We need to slow down climate change.
3- Will you go shopping this afternoon?

7 Write a paragraph:

Global warming

Global warming is a very serious problem that the whole world faces. It's the rising of the temperature of Earth. This causes very dangerous problems like ice melting, forest fires, erosion, drought and food shortage. We should find a solution to this problem and we can do this by reducing the emission of carbon dioxide and the other bad gases into the atmosphere.

Unit (12) Test (6) ملحق الكتاب

1 Listen and circle:
1- meeting 2- global warming
3- document 4- coal

2 Read and complete:
1- transportation 2- electric 3-Agreement

3 Read then answer:
1- four 2- windy 3- Winter
4- Fall isn't too hot and it isn't too cold.
5- On holidays, people don't go to work. They have rest and have fun. Some go to farms; some go to the beach and some stay at home.

5 Choose the correct:
1- don't burn 2- will travel
3- so 4- won't save 5- but

6 Order the words:
1- Car companies will make more electric vehicles.
2- Will they stop using fossil fuels?
3- What can we do to slow down erosion?

7 Write a text of (50) words:
Water is very important for all of us, not only for humans, but also for animals and plants. Farmers use water to water the plants to grow and we can eat them. Animals won't be alive without drinking water. If there is a water shortage, rivers and lakes will become dry. Farmers cannot grow food and nature will be in danger. So we should save water to help ourselves and help all the living things in our planet.

Part 3 Revision Tests

Revision Test (1)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:
1- Nile River 2- solar 3- roofs 4- palm trees

2 Read and complete:
1- Drought 2- danger 3- water shortage

3 Read then answer:
1- football 2- one station 3- newspaper
4- By train 5- On Monday morning

5 Choose the correct:
1- talking 2- comes 3- were digging
4- healthier 5- but

6 Order the words:
1- Ships with steam engines could travel faster. 2- Do you get to school on time?
3- How can people access websites?

7 Write a text of (50) words:
Last week, I went to the museum.
I went with my family. We went by car. We saw a lot of artifacts, statues and tools. We saw a long wooden box. It looked like an old senet game. I wondered who used to play with it. We took photos with a lot of tourists there. We had fun there and learned a lot of new things, too.

Revision Test (2)

1 Listen and circle:
1- signals 2- electronic 3- email 4- account

2 Read and complete:
1- gasoline 2- environment 3-transportation

3 Read then answer:
1- time machine 2- dreams 3- asleep
4- To know what happened long ago or to find out what will happen.
5- They may be happy or frightening.

5 Choose the correct:
1- easily 2- eat 3- wins
4- should 5- was having

6 Order the words:
1- What do you use your account for?
2- You shouldn't write your story by hand.
3- How did you get to this island?

7 Write an email:

From: engy@school.com
To: heb@hotmail.com
Subject: the means of communication
Dear Heba,
How are you? I'm writing to tell you about the means of communication today and in the past in the past, people used smoke signals or birds to send messages to each other. Today, we use technology like electronic devices to help us send messages. I can access websites from different electronic devices like smart phones, tablets, and laptops.

Revision Test (3)

1 Listen and circle:
1- identity 2- agriculture
3- temples 4- calendars

2 Read and complete:
1- reports 2- interested 3- club

3 Read then answer:
1- helpful 2- easier 3- computer
3- It is very difficult one.
4- He helps them to use the different programs of computer, how to surf the internet and he explains lessons to his student in a simple way.

5 Choose the correct:
1- or 2- more expensive
3- will win 4- help 5- wears

6 Order the words:
1- What environment do you live in?
2- Bread was important in ancient Egypt.
3- Trees are important in protecting our planet.

7 Write a text of (50) words:
Reading is very important. The book is the best friend to you. You should read a lot when you have free time. You can read different books. You can read books about the past or the future. You will find a lot of information in books. You should read books anytime and anywhere.

Revision Test (4)

1 Listen and circle:
1- Giza 2- traditions 3- visitors 4- food

2 Read and complete:
1- Agriculture 2- flood 3- seasons

3 Read then answer:
1- slower than 2- proud 3- rest
3- To have a race
4- Because the rabbit slept and the tortoise arrived at the river first.

5 Choose the correct:
1- finding 2- drives 3- grew 4- so 5- faster

6 Order the words:
1- Burning fossil fuel results in climate change. 2- Do you go to school by car?
3- How does Grandma get her recipes?

7 Write an email:
From: nada@yahoo.com
To: amal@school.net
Subject: my favorite meal
Dear Nada,
I am pleased to send you this email. How are you? I am writing to tell you about my favorite meal for lunch. It is Hawawshi. It is made with bread and beef or lamb. Meat is cooked with onion, herbs, and spices. The bread is pressed together around the meat and cooked. We sometimes eat it with salad. Hawawshi is a delicious dish. What's your favorite meal?
Best wishes,
Nada

Revision Test (5)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:
1- rain 2- hot 3- coastal 4- swamps

2 Read and complete:
1- traditional 2- meal 3- generous

3 Read then answer:
1- coffee 2- thousand 3- drink
3- In Ethiopia 4- Arab travelers

5 Choose the correct:
1- eat 2-but 3- more 4-was cleaning 5- has

6 Order the words:
1- What are fossil fuels made from?
2- The trip to school takes an hour.
3- We all must slow climate change.

7 Write a text of (50) words:
Yesterday I went to the zoo. I went with my family. We went by bus. We saw different animals. I fed the birds. My brother fed the giraffe. My parents fed the monkeys. We had lunch there. We had pasta and meat balls. We drank orange juice. We took lovely photos. We were very happy.

Revision Test (6)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:
1- ecological 2- drivers
3- electric 4- hydrogen

2 Read and complete:
1- renewable 2- resources 3- pollution

3 Read then answer:
1- the North coast 2- bus 3- Egypt
3- Al Fayoum, Wadi El Rayan and famous temple. 4- They enjoyed the beach, the camel rides and the boat trips.

5 Choose the correct:
1- doing 2- use 3- visiting 4- on 5- more

6 Order the words:
1- The waves in the sea can erode beaches.
2- Can I get a social media account?
3- Are there a lot of traffic lights?

7 Write an email:
From: esraa@ school.net
To: mariam@gmail. net
Subject: energy
Dear Mariam,
I miss you so much. I'm writing to tell you about energy. Fossil fuels are things like coal, gas and oil. They are non-renewable. When they run out, we can't find or make more of them. We can get renewable energy from natural resources such as the wind, the sun, water and heat inside the earth. They don't run out. I prefer to use solar energy from the sun to make clean electricity. that's all for now.
See you soon.
Best wishes,
Esraa.

Revision Test (7)

1 Listen and circle:
1- videos 2- one person
3- website 4- written texts

2 Read and complete:
1- mountainous 2- weather 3- survive

3 Read then answer:
1- bus 2- zoo 3- father
4- The trip took one day.
5- The students saw different animals.

5 Choose the correct:
1- Did 2- but 3- better
4- will play 5- coming

6 Order the words:
1-The rural environment is sparsely populated. 2- What do you like to make?
3- Eid Al-Adha lasts for four days.

7 Write a text of (50) words:
Getting ready for the final exam makes me feel excited. I have to study harder. I revise all my last lessons. I don't waste my time at all. I don't watch TV. I answer all the questions in my books. My mother always helps me to do my best in all the exams.